MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 46

The Service of Ladies

Ulrich von Liechtenstein

Frauendienst

The Service of Ladies

Part One: The First Lady and the Journey of Venus

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

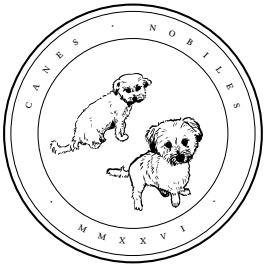


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 46 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Ulrich's von Liechtenstein Frauendienst, herausgegeben von Reinhold Bechstein, Deutsche Dichtungen des Mittelalters 6–7 (Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1888), strophes 1–746

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The strophes are numbered as Lachmann and Bechstein number them, the number in the outer margin; the songs keep Bechstein's Roman numerals, the Büchlein are cited by their own lines, and the letters by his letters. The reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Boy and His Lady 7
II · The Knighting and the Niece 24
III · The Harelip 43
IV · The Cutting 56
V · Tongue-Tied 71
VI · The First Plea 85
VII · The First Little Book 95
VIII · The Lady's Answer 119
IX · The Parley at Friesach 131

X · The Green Knight 149
XI · The Tournament at Friesach 167
XII · The Princes Reconciled 185
XIII · Praise from Kin 210
XIV · The Wounded Finger 223
XV · The New Messenger 238
XVI · The Journey to Rome 259
XVII · The Finger Doubted 274
XVIII · The Finger Sent 290
XIX · The Venus Journey Planned 310
XX · Venus Rides Out 332
XXI · Treviso 355
XXII · Sacile, Gemona, and Chiusa 376
XXIII · The Unknown Lady's Gift 396
XXIV · The Monk Unhorsed 419
XXV · The Wendish Woman 439
XXVI · The Roses in the Bath 459

Ulrich praises good women and begins his tale. As a child he hears the wise say that no man wins worth unless he serves good women, and he resolves to serve them all his life. At twelve he chooses a high-born lady of great virtue and serves her as a page for nearly five years, bringing her flowers and secretly drinking the water she has washed her hands in. His father takes him away and gives him to the margrave Heinrich of Austria, who teaches him to speak to women, ride, and compose letters.

Frowen dienst.
Ladies' service.

Den guoten wîben sî genigen 1
To-the good women be bowed

von mir, swie sî mich doch verzigen
from me, however they me yet denied

nâch dienest ofte ir lônes hânt.
after service often their reward have.

her, waz si tugent doch begânt!
lord, what they virtue yet do!

der werlde heil gar an in stât.
the world's salvation wholly on them stands.

ich wæn, got niht sô guotes hât
I think, God not so good-a-thing has

als ein guot wîp. daz ist alsô:
as a good woman. that is so:

des stât ir lop von schulden hô.
therefore stands their praise by rights high.

2 Man muoz mirs jehen, wan ez ist wâr,
One must to-me-it grant, for it is true,

daz wîbes güete niemen gar
that woman's goodness no-one wholly

volloben an ein ende mac.
fully-praise to an end may.

ir lop sich breitet als der tac.
their praise itself spreads as the day.

wâ endet sich der sunnen schîn?
where ends itself the sun's shine?

swer mir daz ûf die triwe sîn
whoever me that on the faithfulness his

kan gesagen, dem muoz ich jehen,
can tell, to-him must I grant,

daz er vil verre hab gesehen.
that he very far have seen.

3 Ir schîn durchliuhtet elliu lant:
Their shine through-shines all lands:

dâ von ist mir vil unbekant
there from is to-me very unknown

ir schînes sprunc, ir schînes ort.
their shine's spring, their shine's place.

sich endent sanfter elliu wort,
themselves end more-gently all words,

und swindent lîhter elliu jâr,
and vanish more-lightly all years,

ê daz der wîbe güete gar
before that the women's goodness wholly

und ouch ir hôhe werdekeit
and also their high worthiness

mit worten werde gar volseit.
with words be wholly fully-said.

Wie sol man des vol ze ende komen, 4
How shall one of-it fully to end come,

des ende nimmer wirt vernomen
whose end never is perceived

und daz für wâr niht endes hât?
and that for true no end has?

alsô diu werlt nu gar zergât,
so-that the world now wholly perishes,

dannoch ist der wîbe brîs
still is the women's praise

ze himel und in paradîs;
in heaven and in paradise;

dâ von mîn sin und mîn gedanc
there from my mind and my thought

in lop ze sprechen ist ze kranc.
in praise to speak is too weak.

Wîp sint reine, wîp sint guot, 5
Women are pure, women are good,

wîp sint schœne und wol gemuot,
women are beautiful and well spirited,

wîp sint guot für senediu leit,
women are good for longing sorrows,

wîp die füegent werdecheit,
women they bring worthiness,

wîp die machent werden man.
women they make worthy men.

wol im, der daz verdienen kan,
well him, who that earn can,

daz sî im bietent vriundes gruoz!
that they him offer friend's greeting!

dem wirt vil maniger sorgen puoz.
to-him is very many-a sorrow's remedy.

6 Wîp sint hôher sælden rîch.
Women are of-high blisses rich.

den engeln nie niht sô gelîch
to-the angels never anything so like

wart alsam ir schœner lîp.
was as their beautiful person.

ein tugentrîche reine wîp,
a virtue-rich pure woman,

diu sich vor wandel hât behuot,
who herself from blemish has guarded,

diu hât für wâr wol engels muot:
she has for true well angel's spirit:

ir lîp hât ouch wol engels schîn:
her person has also well angel's shine:

daz nim ich ûf die triwe mîn.
that take I on the faithfulness mine.

7 Nâch disem lob sô heb ich an
After this praise so begin I on

ein mære, als ich beste kan.
a tale, as I best can.

in gotes namen ich ez hebe
in God's name I it begin

und wünsche des, daz er iu gebe
and wish of-it, that he you give

gein mir sô zühterîchen muot,
toward me so courtesy-rich spirit,

daz ez iuch alle dunke guot.
that it you all seem good.

sô wirt mîn arbeit niht verlorn.
so is my labor not lost.

ich hab daz liegen dran versworn.
I have the lying therein forsworn.

Dô ich ein cleinez kindel was, 8
When I a little child was,

dô hôrt ich ofte, daz man las,
then heard I often, that one read,

und hôrt ouch die wîsen sagen,
and heard also the wise say,

daz niemen wol bî sînen tagen
that no-one well in his days

erwerben möhte werdecheit,
win might worthiness,

wan der ze dienest wær bereit
except who to service were ready

guoten wîben sunder wanc:
to-good women without wavering:

die heten hôhen habedanc.
they had high thanks.

Die wîsen hôrt ich sprechen sô, 9
The wise heard I speak so,

daz niemen wære rehte frô
that no-one were rightly glad

noch in der werlte wolgemuot,
nor in the world well-spirited,

wan der ein reine vrowen guot,
except who a pure lady good,

diu wol von tugenden hiez ein wîp,
who well for virtues was-called a woman,

hete liep als sîn selbes lîp:
had dear as his own person:

daz heten alle die getân,
that had all those done,

die gern êre wolden hân.
who gladly honor would have.

10 Dô ich daz hôrt, ich was ein kint
When I that heard, I was a child

und tump, als noch die jungen sint,
and foolish, as still the young are,

sô tump, daz ich die gerten reit;
so foolish, that I the rods rode;

und gedâht doch in der tumpheit:
and thought yet in the foolishness:

„sît daz diu reinen süezen wîp
„since that the pure sweet women

sô hôhe tiurent mannes lîp,
so highly ennoble man's person,

sô wil ich dienen immer mê
so will I serve ever more

den vrowen, swie so ez mir ergê.
the ladies, however so it to-me befall.

11 Lîp, guot, muot und dar zuo daz leben
Person, goods, spirit and there to the life

wil ich den vrowen allez geben
will I to-the ladies all give

und dienen, als ich beste kan.
and serve, as I best can.

und wird ich immer ze einem man,
and (if)-become I ever to a man,

mîn dienst muoz an in geligen,
my service must on them lie,

dâ mit verderben oder gesigen:
there with perish or triumph:

ich wil in immer dienend sîn."
I will them ever serving be."

sus riet mir daz herze mîn.
thus counseled me the heart mine.

In den gedanken, daz ist wâr, 12
In the thoughts, that is true,

wuohs ich unz in daz zwelfte jâr.
grew I until into the twelfth year.

ich gedâhte her, ich gedâhte hin
I thought hither, I thought thither

nâch mînes jungen herzen sin.
after my young heart's mind.

mit vrâge fuor ich durch diu lant:
with asking went I through the lands:

swâ iemen werde vrowen vant,
wherever anyone worthy ladies found,

der site, der lîp, der muot, der tugent
the manner, the person, the spirit, the virtue

erfuor ich gar in mîner jugent.
learned I wholly in my youth.

Swer lop von guoten wîben sprach, 13
Whoever praise of good women spoke,

dem sleich ich allez smielend nâch.
to-him crept I always smiling after.

ir lop daz tet mir alsô wol,
their praise that did me so well,

daz ich dâ von wart vreuden vol.
that I there from became of-joys full.

mir tet vil manic wîser munt
to-me made very many-a wise mouth

ir lop und ouch ir êre kunt:
their praise and also their honor known:

sie lobten jene, sie lobten die,
they praised that-one, they praised this-one,

sie lobten dort, sie lobten hie.
they praised there, they praised here.

14 Ir aller lobes vernam ich vil:
Of-them all's praise heard I much:

von einer ich doch sagen wil.
of one I yet tell will.

der lop was in die hœhe komen:
whose praise was into the height come:

ir lop sich heten an genomen
her praise themselves had on taken

die besten gar über elliu lant.
the best wholly over all lands.

swem rehte wart ir tugent bekant,
to-whom rightly became her virtue known,

und kunde der iht tugende spehen,
and could he anything of-virtue espy,

der muost ir hôher tugende jehen.
he must her high virtue grant.

15 Si was zer besten ûz erkorn,
She was as-the best out chosen,

si was von hôher art geborn,
she was of high kind born,

sî was schœne, sî was guot,
she was beautiful, she was good,

sî was reiniclich gemuot,
she was purely spirited,

sî was kiusche, senfte gar,
she was chaste, gentle wholly,

sî was minneclîch gevar:
she was lovely colored:

von ir vil tugende wart vernomen:
of her much virtue was perceived:

si was an tugenden gar volcomen.
she was in virtues wholly perfect.

Man lobt si hôhe, daz was reht. 16
One praised her highly, that was right.

ich was der selben vrowen kneht
I was the same lady's servant

vil nâch unz in daz fünfte jâr.
very nearly until into the fifth year.

daz ich iu sage, daz ist wâr.
that I you tell, that is true.

mîn ougen kunden nie ersehen
my eyes could never see

an ir unwîpheit noch erspehen:
in her unwomanliness nor espy:

si was ouch ze allen zîten guot,
she was also at all times good,

in wîbes zühten wol gemuot.
in woman's courtesies well spirited.

Dô sprach mîn herze wider mich: 17
Then spoke my heart to me:

«guot vriunt, geselle, wil du dich
«good friend, companion, wilt thou thyself

für eigen einer vrowen geben
for own-property to-a lady give

und ir ze dienest immer leben,
and her to service ever live,

daz sol disiu vrowe sîn:
that shall this lady be:

daz rât ich ûf die triwe mîn.
that counsel I on the faithfulness mine.

diu ist gar alles wandels vrî:
she is wholly of-all blemish free:

der sül wir sîn mit triwen bî.»
her shall we be with faithfulness by.»

18 «Ich volge dir, herze, swes du wil.
«I follow thee, heart, whatever thou wilt.

doch ist uns beiden gar ze vil,
yet is to-us both wholly too much,

daz wir ir dienen umb den solt,
that we her serve for the pay,

den man von guoten wîben holt.
which one from good women fetches.

jâ ist diu guote vrowe mîn
yes is the good lady mine

vil hôher denn wir beidiu sîn,
very higher than we both are,

si ist ze hôhe gar uns geborn:
she is too high wholly to-us born:

des mac der dienst werden vlorn.»
therefore may the service be lost.»

19 «Swîc, lîp, und hœre, ich wil dir sagen:
«Be-silent, body, and hear, I will thee tell:

ez wart nie wîp bî iemens tagen
it was never woman in anyone's days

sô hôch, sô rîch noch alsô wert,
so high, so rich nor so worthy,

ist daz ein edel ritter gert
(if)-is that a noble knight desires

ir ze dienen sîne zît,
her to serve his time,

sô daz er herze, lîp, guot gît
so that he heart, person, goods gives

in ir dienest, als er sol:
into her service, as he shall:

im müge an ir gelingen wol.»
him may with her succeed well.»

«Herze, ich swer dir einen eit 20
«Heart, I swear thee an oath

ûf alle mîne sælicheit,
on all my blessedness,

daz sî mir ist für elliu wîp
that she to-me is before all women

und lieber danne mîn selbes lîp.
and dearer than my own person.

ûf den minneclîchen wân,
on the lovely hope,

den ich gein ir vil guoten hân,
which I toward her very good have,

sô wil ich hiut und immer mê
so will I today and ever more

ir dienen, swie so ez mir ergê.»
her serve, however so it to-me befall.»

Dô sich bewac herze unde lîp 21
When itself resolved heart and body

ze werben umb daz werde wîp,
to woo for the worthy woman,

dô gie ich für die guoten stân
then went I before the good-one stand

und sach si minneclîchen an.
and looked her lovingly at.

ich gedâht: «wol mich, sol sî daz sîn,
I thought: «well to-me, shall she that be,

diu werde süeze vrowe mîn,
the worthy sweet lady mine,

bî der ich immer mêr muoz wesen,
by whom I ever more must be,

bî ir verderben oder genesen.»
by her perish or be-saved.»

22 Ich gedâht: «waz sol ich dienen ir,
I thought: «what shall I serve her,

daz sich rehte füege mir,
that itself rightly suit me,

für vil manic edel kint,
before very many-a noble child,

die bî ir hie in dienest sint?
who by her here in service are?

der dienet ir lîht einez baz:
of-them serves her perhaps one better:

sô wirt mîn vrowe mir gehaz.
so becomes my lady to-me hostile.

nu enweiz ich, waz ich anders tuo:
now not-know I, what I else do:

ich dien ir spât, ich dien ir fruo.
I serve her late, I serve her early.

23 Ir mac wol einez dienen mê:
Her may well one serve more:

ich wæn, dem doch sîn herze iht stê
I think, to-whom yet his heart anything stands

gein ir, alsam daz mîne stât,
toward her, as the mine stands,

und wæn si ouch iht sô liebe hât,
and think she also anything so dear has,

als ich si in mînem herzen hân.
as I her in my heart have.

des einen wil ich in vor gân
of-the one will I them before go

und allen leuten mîniu jâr.
and all people my years.

daz weiz ich endelîchen wâr.»
that know I truly true.»

Einez ofte mir geschach. 24
One-thing often to-me happened.

swenne ich iht schœner pluomen brach
whenever I any beautiful flowers broke

des sumers, sô daz solde sîn,
of-the summer, so that should be,

die truog ich sâ der vrowen mîn.
those carried I at-once to-the lady mine.

nam sî die in ir wîze hant,
took she them in her white hand,

sô wart mir freuden vil bekant:
so became to-me of-joys much known:

ich gedâht: «dâ dû si grîffest an,
I thought: «there thou them touchedst on,

dâ hân ich in alsam getân.»
there have I them likewise done.»

Mîn vreude was vil ofte grôz, 25
My joy was very often great,

swenne ich kom, dâ man wazer gôz
whenever I came, where one water poured

der herzenlieben vrowen mîn
to-the heart-dear lady mine

ûf ir vil wîzen hendelîn.
upon her very white little-hands.

daz wazer, dâ mit sî sich twuoc,
the water, there with she herself washed,

verholn ich daz von danne truoc:
secretly I that from thence carried:

vor liebe ich ez gar ûz tranc.
for love I it wholly out drank.

dâ von sô wart mîn trûren cranc.
there from so became my sadness weak.

26 Kintlîch ich ir diente vil,
Childishly I her served much,

daz ich nu hie verswîgen wil.
which I now here keep-silent will.

swaz sô ein kint gedienen mac,
whatever so a child serve may,

daz dient ich ir unz ûf den tac,
that served I her until to the day,

daz mich mîn vater von ir nam.
that me my father from her took.

dâ wart mir senlîch trûren zam:
then became to-me longing sadness suited:

mir wart der minne kraft bekant
to-me became the love's power known

in mînem herzen sâ zehant.
in my heart at-once forthwith.

27 Mîn lîp der schiet von danne sâ:
My body it parted from thence at-once:

daz herze mîn beleib aldâ,
the heart mine remained there,

daz wolde mit mir danne niht.
that would with me thence not.

daz was ein wunderlîch geschiht,
that was a wondrous happening,

daz man den lîp von danne treip
that one the body from thence drove

und daz mîn herze aldâ beleip:
and that my heart there remained:

daz was bî ir naht unde tac,
that was by her night and day,

daz ez vil selten ruowe pflac.
that it very seldom rest kept.

Swâ sô mîn lîp reit oder gie, 28
Wherever so my body rode or went,

mîn herze daz kom von ir nie:
my heart it came from her never:

ez wære tac, ez wære naht,
it were day, it were night,

mîn liebe hete gein ir die maht,
my love had toward her the might,

daz ich si ze allen zîten sach.
that I her at all times saw.

von herzenliebe daz geschach.
from heart-love that happened.

swie verre ich was, ir liehter schîn
however far I was, her bright shine

schein nahtes in daz herze mîn.
shone at-night into the heart mine.

Ich wil dâ von niht sprechen mê: 29
I will there of not speak more:

mir was von gedanken wê.
to-me was from thoughts woe.

in disen dingen daz ergie,
in these things that happened,

daz man mich einem herren lie:
that one me to-a lord left:

der was vil hôher tugende rîch.
who was of-very high virtue rich.

der hiez der margrâve Heinrîch:
he was-called the margrave Heinrich:

von Œsterrîch was er genant,
of Austria was he named,

von sînen tugenden wît erkant.
for his virtues widely known.

30 Er was der vrowen dienestman,
He was the ladies' vassal,

mit rehten triuwen undertân:
with right faithfulness subject:

er was in holt, er sprach in wol,
he was to-them devoted, he spoke them well,

alsô ein ieslîch ritter sol.
as a each knight shall.

er was milte, er was guot,
he was generous, he was good,

er was küene, hôch gemuot,
he was bold, high spirited,

mit tumpen tump, mit wîsen wîs:
with fools foolish, with wise wise:

dâ von sô het er lobes prîs.
there from so had he praise's prize.

31 Er het umb êre ungemach,
He had for honor discomfort,

sîn munt nie bœsez wort gesprach,
his mouth never evil word spoke,

er was blîde, er was palt,
he was cheerful, he was bold,

sîn zuht diu was manicvalt,
his courtesy that was manifold,

er was stæte, er was getriu,
he was steadfast, he was faithful,

den vriunden sleht, niht iteniu,
to-the friends straight, not changeable,

er minnet got von herzen gar;
he loved God from heart wholly;

sus lebt der fürste sîniu jâr.
thus lived the prince his years.

Der selbe werde herre mîn 32
The same worthy lord mine

sagt mir daz ûf die triwe sîn:
told me that on the faithfulness his:

swer werdeclîche wolde leben,
whoever worthily would live,

der solde sich für eigen geben
he should himself for own-property give

einer reinen vrowen guot;
to-a pure lady good;

dâ von sô würd er hôchgemuot.
there from so would-become he high-spirited.

er sprach: «ez wart nie werder man,
he spoke: «it was never worthier man,

er wære den vrowen undertân.»
unless-he were to-the ladies subject.»

Er sagt mir in mîner jugent 33
He told me in my youth

vor vil der sînen süezen tugent:
before many of-the his sweet virtue:

er lêrt mich sprechen wider diu wîp,
he taught me speak toward the women,

ûf örsen rîten mînen lîp,
on horses ride my person,

an prieven tihten süeziu wort.
in letters compose sweet words.

er jach, ez wær der tugend hort,
he declared, it were the virtue's hoard,

«ez tiuret junges mannes lîp,
«it ennobles young man's person,

der suoze sprichet wider diu wîp.
who sweetly speaks toward the women.

34 Süeziu wort mit werken wâr
Sweet words with deeds true

sint guot gein werden wîben gar.
are good toward worthy women wholly.

du solt für wâr gelauben mir,
thou shalt for true believe me,

daz nimmer kan gelingen dir
that never can succeed thee

an guoten wîben, wil du in
with good women, (if)-wilt thou them

liegen, schmeichen: dêst ein sin,
lie, flatter: that-is a sense,

der dir gein wîben selten frumt
which thee toward women seldom profits

und dir für wâr ze schaden kumt.»
and thee for true to harm comes.»

II · THE KNIGHTING AND THE NIECE

After four years Ulrich's father dies and he goes home to Styria, where he tourneys three years as a squire. He is knighted at the wedding of Duke Leopold's daughter in Vienna, where he sees his lady but cannot speak to her. He tourneys all summer and pines through the winter. His niece, whose husband is his host, tells him that his lady has asked about him and has bidden her learn whom he serves. When he names the lady herself, she warns him that the lady is too high for him. He answers that he will serve her or die, and she promises to tell the lady of his love and takes her his songs. Song I follows.

35 Swaz er mir sagt, und het ich daz
Whatever he me told, and had I that

ervollet mit den wercken baz,
fulfilled with the deeds better,

ich wære werder, denne ich pin.
I were worthier, than I am.

bî im gie mîner jâre hin
by him went of-my years thither

vieriu mit seneclîcher nôt.
four with longing distress.

indes lac mîn vater tôt:
meanwhile lay my father dead:

dô muost ich heim, als maniger tuot,
then must I home, as many-a-one does,

dem sîne vordern lâzent guot.
to-whom his forebears leave goods.

Mir gab urloup der herre mîn 36
Me gave leave the lord mine

alsô, daz al diu tugende sîn
so, that all the virtue his

an mir vil volleclîchen schein.
on me very fully shone.

dô reit ich gegen Liehtenstein
then rode I toward Liechtenstein

hin heim sâ in daz Stîrelant,
thither home at-once into the Styrian-land,

dâ ich vil turnirens vant
where I much tourneying found

von knehten. daz was dô der sit:
by servants. that was then the custom:

si lernten riterschaft dâ mit.
they learned chivalry there with.

37 Dô ich dâ turniren vant,
When I there tourneying found,

des underwant ich mich zehant
of-it undertook I myself forthwith

durch die vil lieben vrowen mîn.
for the very dear lady mine.

ich gedâht: «wil ich ir ze dienste sîn,
I thought: «(if)-will I her to service be,

daz muoz mit riterschaft geschehen:
that must with chivalry happen:

man muoz mich under helme sehen
one must me under helmet see

ir ze dienest mîne tage.
her to service my days.

got geb, daz ich ir gunst bejage!
God grant, that I her favor win!

38 Und sol mir immer prîs geschehen,
And (if)-shall to-me ever prize happen,

des muoz ich ir ze prîse jehen:
of-it must I her to praise grant:

wan er wirt durch sî bejaget.
for it is through her won.

ouch bin ich des vil unverzaget,
also am I of-it very undaunted,

swaz vrowen gnâde sî genant,
whatever ladies' grace be named,

ez müg an ir mîn dientiu hant
it may with her my serving hand

bî mînen jugentlîchen tagen
in my youthful days

noch vil sæliclîch bejagen.»
yet very blissfully win.»

Dô fuor ich turniren knehtes wîs, 39
Then went I tourneying servant's way,

durch lernen und durch knehtes prîs,
for learning and for servant's prize,

allenthalben reht driu jâr.
everywhere right three years.

dô wart ich ritter, daz ist wâr.
then became I knight, that is true.

ze Wiene ze einer hôchzît,
at Vienna at a wedding-feast,

daz ich dâ vor noch immer sît
that I there before nor ever since

sô schœne hôchzît nie gesach.
so beautiful wedding-feast never saw.

dâ was von dringen ungemach.
there was from crowding discomfort.

Der fürst Liupolt ûz Œsterîch 40
The prince Leopold out-of Austria

gap dâ sîn tohter minneclîch
gave there his daughter lovely

von Sahsen einem fürsten wert:
of Saxony to-a prince worthy:

der het ir ze einer konen begert.
who had her to a wife desired.

diu hôhzît wart sô schœne dâ,
the wedding-feast became so beautiful there,

daz ich sît niender anderswâ
that I since nowhere elsewhere

sô schœne hôchzît hab gesehen:
so beautiful wedding-feast have seen:

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen.
of-it must I from the truth grant.

41 Dâ gap der edel fürste wert
There gave the noble prince worthy

wol drithalphundert knappen swert:
well two-and-a-half-hundred squires sword:

daz was fürstenlîch getân.
that was princely done.

grâven, vrîen, dienestman,
counts, barons, vassals,

wol tûsent rittern oder mêr,
well thousand knights or more,

den gab der edel fürste hêr
to-them gave the noble prince lordly

silber, golt, ros unde kleit
silver, gold, horses and clothes

durch sîne hôhe werdecheit.
for his high worthiness.

42 Fünf tûsent ritter oder baz
Five thousand knights or better

des werden fürsten brôt dâ az.
the worthy prince's bread there ate.

dâ was puhurt, tanzes vil
there was buhurt, dancing much

und ander vil manic ritters spil.
and other very many-a knight's game.

dâ was diu herzoginne rîch
there was the duchess mighty

und ir tohter minneclîch
and her daughter lovely

und ander vil manic vrowe guot:
and other very many-a lady good:

die gâben uns dâ hôhen muot.
who gave us there high spirit.

Dâ was ouch mîner freuden schîn, 43
There was also of-my joys' shine,

diu reine, süeze vrowe mîn.
the pure, sweet lady mine.

die tugentrîchen ich dâ sach,
the virtue-rich-one I there saw,

doch sô, daz ich nie wort gesprach
yet so, that I never word spoke

wider sî ze der hôchzît:
to her at the wedding-feast:

des was ich trûric lange sît.
of-it was I sad long since.

die merker liezen ez niht geschehen:
the watchers let it not happen:

ich meid ez durch ir kranckez spehen.
I avoided it for their paltry spying.

Dô sî mich under schilde sach, 44
When she me under shield saw,

diu reine, guote, süeze sprach
the pure, good, sweet-one spoke

wider einen mînen vriund alsô:
toward a my friend thus:

«dêswâr ich pin des harte vrô,
«truly I am of-it very glad,

daz her Uolrîch ist ritter hie
that sir Ulrich is knight here

warden. dô man mir den lie
become. then one me him left

ze knehte, dô was er vil klein.
as servant, then was he very small.

ich meine den von Liehtenstein.»
I mean the of Liechtenstein.»

45 Dô mîn vriunt daz sagte mir,
When my friend that told me,

daz mîn ritterschaft was ir
that my knighthood was to-her

liep, des freut mîn herze sich,
dear, of-it rejoiced my heart itself,

und gedâht alsô: «waz ob si dich
and thought thus: «what if she thee

mit willen wil ze ritter hân?»
with will will as knight have?»

der selbe tumbe hôher wân
the same foolish high hope

der was süeze, der was guot
that was sweet, that was good

und machte mich vil hôchgemuot.
and made me very high-spirited.

46 Diu hôchzît nam ende dô.
The wedding-feast took end then.

von danne schiet vil maniger vrô
from thence parted very many-a-one glad

allenthalben in diu lant.
everywhere into the lands.

turniren huob man alzehant
tourneying began one forthwith

durch die vrowen dort unde hie:
for the ladies there and here:

der versaz ich einen nie,
of-them missed I one never,

ich wolde dâ ze in allen sîn
I would there with them all be

durch die vil lieben vrowen mîn.
for the very dear lady mine.

Mir wart daz turniren kunt 47
To-me became the tourneying known

des einen sumers wol zwelf stunt.
of-the one summer well twelve times.

man sach mich ouch tiustirens wern
one saw me also jousting grant

vil manigen ritter mit den spern,
very many-a knight with the spears,

des lîp het ganzes mannes kraft
whose body had whole man's strength

und ouch wol konde ritterschaft,
and also well knew chivalry,

daz mir den sumer nie misselanc.
that to-me the summer never failed.

des sagt ich mîner vrowen danc.
for-it said I to-my lady thanks.

Der sumer mit vreuden ende nam: 48
The summer with joys end took:

sâ der kalte winder quam.
at-once the cold winter came.

dô muost ich minnesiecher man
then must I love-sick man

durch nôt daz turniren lân:
through need the tourneying leave:

wan ich vant sîn leider niht.
for I found of-it alas not.

des het mit mir vil trûrens pfliht.
of-it had with me much of-sadness duty.

senlîch trûren was mir bî:
longing sadness was to-me by:

des wart mîn herze selten vrî.
therefore became my heart seldom free.

49 Mîn trûren und mîn senedez clagen
My sadness and my longing lament

muost mîn lîp verholne tragen:
must my person secretly carry:

des was ich ofte vil ungemuot.
of-it was I often very ill-spirited.

mîn vrowe was alsô behuot,
my lady was so guarded,

daz ich ir nie ze keiner stunt
that I her never at any hour

mohte gemachen rehte kunt,
might make rightly known,

daz sî mir was für elliu wîp
that she to-me was before all women

und lieber dann mîn selbes lîp.
and dearer than my own person.

50 Mich lie si leider niemen sehen:
Me let her alas no-one see:

dâ von sô kunde des niht geschehen,
there from so could it not happen,

daz ich ir sagt den willen mîn.
that I her told the will mine.

dâ von sô muos ich trûric sîn
there from so must I sad be

reht als ein minne unsælic man.
right as a love unblessed man.

ich enmoht ouch niht die boten hân,
I might also not the messengers have,

die daz rehte sagten ir,
who that rightly told her,

daz sî sô herzenliep wær mir.
that she so heart-dear were to-me.

Ich wil iu kürzelichen sagen 51
I will you briefly tell

und die wârheit niht verdagen.
and the truth not conceal.

si west sîn niht als umb ein hâr,
she knew of-it not as about a hair,

daz ich ir diente mîniu jâr.
that I her served my years.

des muost ich durch nôt trûrens pflegen,
therefore must I through need sadness keep,

mich oft in sorgen nider legen,
me often in sorrows down lay,

in hôhen sôrgen fruo ûf stên,
in high sorrows early up stand,

in sorgen sitzen unde gên.
in sorrows sit and go.

Ich leit von sorgen ungemach; 52
I suffered from sorrows discomfort;

nu hœret, waz mir dô geschach:
now hear, what to-me then happened:

ich kom ûf ein burc geriten.
I came onto a castle ridden.

der wirt mich dâ nâch vriundes siten
the host me there after friend's custom

nâch sînen êren wol enpfie:
after his honors well received:

sîn wîp, mîn niftel, ouch des niht lie,
his wife, my niece, also it not omitted,

si sprach: «vil lieber neve mîn,
she spoke: «very dear nephew mine,

dû solt willekomen sîn!»
thou shalt welcome be!»

53 Min niftel nam mich bî der hant
My niece took me by the hand

und wîste mich von dan zehant
and led me from thence forthwith

sitzen, dâ uns niemen sach.
to-sit, where us no-one saw.

nu hœret, wie diu guote sprach:
now hear, how the good-one spoke:

«mir ist vil liebe dran geschehen,
«to-me is very dear thereon happened,

neve, daz ich dich hân gesehen.
nephew, that I thee have seen.

nu sag an, wie gehabestu dich?
now tell on, how farest-thou thyself?

und bistu vrô, des vreu ich mich.»
and art-thou glad, of-it rejoice I myself.»

54 Si smielte und sprach: «ich lache dîn.
She smiled and spoke: «I laugh of-thee.

ez sol von dir verswigen sîn:
it shall by thee kept-silent be:

ich wil dir vrowen rede sagen.
I will thee lady's speech tell.

ich was bî vil kürzlîchen tagen
I was in very few days

gevaren zuo der vrowen mîn.
gone to the lady mine.

sî und ich gedâhten dîn.
she and I thought of-thee.

si vrâgte, waz du wærest mir:
she asked, what thou wert to-me:

daz dû mir pist, daz sagt ich ir.
that thou to-me art, that told I her.

Sie sprach: «mir ist von im gesaget 55
She spoke: «to-me is of him said

…
(lacuna)

er spreche von uns vrowen wol,
he speaks of us ladies well,

alsô von rehte ein ritter sol.
as by right a knight shall.

von im ist mir noch mêr geseit,
of him is to-me yet more said,

daz er ze dienste sî bereit
that he to service be ready

einer vrowen sunderlîch.
to-a lady especially.

ob er daz tuot, dêst ritterlîch.»
if he that does, that-is knightly.»

Ich sprach: «ich hân ez ouch vernomen, 56
I spoke: «I have it also heard,

er hab ein vrowen im genomen:
he have a lady to-himself taken:

diu sî im liep alsô der lîp
who be to-him dear as the life

und lieber vil denne elliu wîp.
and dearer much than all women.

und wer diu sî, des weiz ich niht;
and who she be, that know I not;

wan daz er ze allen zîten giht,
except that he at all times declares,

sî sî schœne, sî sî guot,
she be beautiful, she be good,

sî sî reiniclîch gemuot.»
she be purely spirited.»

57 Alzehant dô pat si mich
Forthwith then bade she me

vil vlîziclîchen, daz ich dich
very diligently, that I thee

bæte, daz du nantest mir
should-bid, that thou namedst to-me

die vrowen dîn. daz lobt ich ir;
the lady thine. that promised I her;

und daz ich ir denne saget,
and that I her then told,

wer sie wære, und niht verdaget.
who she were, and not concealed.

daz soltû tuon, neve mîn:
that shalt-thou do, nephew mine:

sag mir ir namen, der vrowen dîn.»
tell me her name, the lady thine.»

58 «Dir ist mîn vrowe ungenant
«To-thee is my lady unnamed

und von mir immer unbekant
and by me ever unknown

und sicherlîchen ungeseit,
and surely untold,

du wellest mir sweren einen eit,
unless-thou will me swear an oath,

daz sî von dir verswigen sî.
that she by thee kept-silent be.

du solt mir loben ouch dâ bî,
thou shalt me promise also there by,

daz dîn süeze redenter munt
that thy sweet speaking mouth

mache mînen dienest kunt.»
make my service known.»

«Ich wil gein ir niht sîn dîn bot: 59
«I will toward her not be thy messenger:

ich swer aber dir des wol bî got
I swear however thee of-it well by God

ûf alle mîne sælicheit,
on all my blessedness,

daz sî von mir ist ungeseit.
that she by me is untold.

ich bin dir vil wol schuldic des:
I am to-thee very well owing of-it:

du solt vil rehte merken wes:
thou shalt very rightly mark of-what:

swâ ich dir iht gedienen kan,
wherever I thee anything serve can,

daz wirt vil willeclîch getân.»
that is very willingly done.»

«Nu nenne ich dir die vrowen mîn 60
«Now name I thee the lady mine

vil verre ûf die genâde dîn.
very far on the grace thine.

du bist bî ir niulîch gewesen,
thou art by her newly been,

mit der mîn freude muoz genesen
with whom my joy must be-saved

und diu für wâr mîn herze hât.
and who for true my heart has.

diu dich mich des vrâgen bat,
who thee me of-it to-ask bade,

wer mîn liebiu vrowe sî,
who my dear lady be,

si ist ez selbe, diu falsches vrî.»
she is it self, who of-falseness free.»

61 «Der red ich niht gelouben wil:
«The speech I not believe will:

friunt, dir wær sîn gar ze vil.
friend, to-thee were of-it wholly too much.

si ist ze hôhe dir geborn.
she is too high for-thee born.

wirt sî sîn inne, ez ist ir zorn:
(if)-becomes she of-it aware, it is her anger:

dîn dienst nimmer dâ vervât.
thy service never there avails.

dâ von ist daz vil wol mîn rât,
there from is that very well my counsel,

und volge mir: daz ist dir guot:
and follow me: that is to-thee good:

nim von ir dienst dînen muot.»
take from her service thy spirit.»

62 «Ez kom ze frum, ez kom ze schaden,
«It come to profit, it come to harm,

ich bin gein ir sô überladen
I am toward her so overladen

mit lieb und ouch mit seneder nôt,
with love and also with longing distress,

daz ich für wâr muoz ligen tôt
that I for true must lie dead

in ir dienest sunder wanc.
in her service without wavering.

ez ist mîn muot und mîn gedanc,
it is my spirit and my thought,

daz ich ir immer dienen wil
that I her ever serve will

mit triwen an mîn endes zil.
with faithfulness to my end's goal.

Ob dû mir gegen ir niht enfrumest 63
If thou me toward her not profitest

und mir niht ze staten kumest,
and me not to aid comest,

sô muoz mîn vreud ein ende hân
so must my joy an end have

und ouch mîn leben schier zergân.
and also my life soon perish.

wil dû mich vor dem tôde nern,
(if)-wilt thou me from the death save,

sô soltu ir von mir des swern,
so shalt-thou her for me of-it swear,

daz sî mir gar âne argen list
that she to-me wholly without evil cunning

diu liebest in mînem herzen ist.»
the dearest in my heart is.»

«Neve, waz sol ich sprechen mê? 64
«Nephew, what shall I speak more?

got gebe, daz ez dir wol ergê,
God grant, that it thee well befall,

sô daz ez si dunke guot!
so that it her seem good!

ich sage ir allen dînen muot:
I tell her all thy spirit:

des wil ich sî verswîgen niht.
of-it will I her keep-silent not.

in kurzen zîten daz geschiht,
in short times that happens,

daz ich endelîche sage
that I truly tell

gein ir dîn senelîche clage.»
toward her thy longing lament.»

65 «Ich nîge dir, vrowe, unz ûf den fuoz.
«I bow thee, lady, down to the foot.

von reht ich immer danken muoz
by right I ever thank must

des, daz dîn vil getriwer munt
for-this, that thy very faithful mouth

wil machen mîner vrowen kunt,
will make to-my lady known,

daz ich ir eigen ritter bin,
that I her own knight am,

sô daz mîn herze, lîp unde sin
so that my heart, body and mind

ir immer mêr ist undertân,
her ever more is subject,

die wîle ich lîp und leben hân.
the while I body and life have.

66 Guot niuwe liet ich von ir hân
Good new songs I of her have

gesungen. des soltû niht lân,
sung. of-it shalt-thou not omit,

du bringest sî ze ôren ir:
thou bringest them to ears her:

und sage schier her wider mir,
and tell soon hither back to-me,

ob si ir gevallen wol.
whether they her please well.

ich lob si immer, als ich sol
I praise her ever, as I shall

und als ich si ie ze loben pflac.
and as I her ever to praise was-wont.

ir güete volloben niemen mac.
her goodness fully-praise no-one may.

Niftel, got gesegen dich!» 67
Niece, God bless thee!»

«vil lieber mâc, sam tuo er dich!»
«very dear kinsman, likewise do he thee!»

«nu lâ mich dir enpfolhen sîn.»
«now let me to-thee commended be.»

«jâ, daz hab ûf die triwe mîn.»
«yes, that have on the faithfulness mine.»

«ich wil mit dînen hulden varn.»
«I will with thy favor go.»

«guot vriunt, nu müez dich got bewarn!»
«good friend, now may thee God keep!»

sus ich von mîner niftel schiet
thus I from my niece parted

und sande hin bî ir diu liet:
and sent thither by her the songs:

I. Daz ist ein tanzwîse, diu êrste.
I. That is a dance-tune, the first.

Wîbes güete niemen mac
Woman's goodness no-one may

volloben an ein ende gar.
fully-praise to an end wholly.

Mîn herz blüet nu mangen tac:
My heart blooms now many-a day:

sie machet mich gar sorgen bar,
she makes me wholly of-sorrows bare,

Swenn ich sie sihe gekleidet stân
Whenever I her see clothed stand

und alsô schœne vor mir gân
and so beautiful before me go

alsam ein engel wol getân.
like an angel well made.

Ein wîp mich des betwungen hât,
A woman me of-it compelled has,

daz ich ir immer dienen muoz,
that I her ever serve must,

Der lîp vil wol ze wunsche stât:
The person very well to wish stands:

ir rôter munt gibt reinen gruoz.
her red mouth gives pure greeting.

Ich hân den wunsch an ir gesehen,
I have the wish in her seen,

daz man ir muoz des besten jehen:
that one her must of-the best grant:

odr ich enkan niht vrouwen spehen.
or I can not ladies espy.

Dîner reine trœst ich mich
Thy purity comfort I myself

noch baz, denn ich gedienet hân.
yet better, than I served have.

Dû bist eine, der wil ich
Thou art alone, whom will I

mit triuwen wesen undertân.
with faithfulness be subject.

Des tages, swenn ich dich sehen sol,
Of-the day, whenever I thee see shall,

sô wart nie manne mêr sô wol,
so was never to-man more so well,

und ist mîn herze freuden vol.
and is my heart of-joys full.

Hôhen muot ich von dir hân:
High spirit I from thee have:

des weiz ich niemen mêre danc.
for-it know I no-one more thanks.

Dû bist guot ân argen wân:
Thou art good without evil suspicion:

ich dien dir immer âne wanc.
I serve thee ever without wavering.

Nu sprich, daz ez dîn wille sî:
Now speak, that it thy will be:

son wird ich nimmer mêre vrî
so become I never more free

und wone dir mit dienste bî.
and dwell thee with service by.

III · THE HARELIP

His niece reports that the lady will not accept his service, that he was once her page, and that his mouth is ill-shaped. Ulrich resolves to have his lip cut and rides to Graz in Styria, where a surgeon promises to do it in May. After a winter of riding to see ladies he sets out for Graz again in spring and meets his lady's servant on the road, who thinks the plan foolish and dangerous.

Sus schied ich hôhes muotes dan 68
Thus parted I of-high spirit thence

und gedâht alsô: «sît daz ich hân
and thought thus: «since that I have

nâch mînem willen ir gesant
after my will her sent

einen boten, der bekant
a messenger, who known

ir tuot al den willen mîn,
her makes all the will mine,

sô wil ich hôhes muotes sîn
so will I of-high spirit be
und wil mîn trûren gar ûf geben
and will my sadness wholly up give
und wil in hôhem muote leben.»
and will in high spirit live.»

69 Mîn wesen was von dann unlanc:
My stay was from thence not-long:
hin wider stuont gar mîn gedanc.
thither back stood wholly my thought.
fünf wochen reit ich vrowen sehen.
five weeks rode I ladies see.
in der zît was daz geschehen,
in the time was that happened,
daz mîn niftel hin und her
that my niece hither and thither
was gevarn nâch mîner ger
was gone after my desire
zuo mîner vrowen und von dan:
to my lady and from thence:
daz wart zehant mir kunt getân.
that was forthwith to-me known made.

70 Des freut ich mich und reit zehant
Of-it rejoiced I myself and rode forthwith
hin, dâ ich mîn niftel vant.
thither, where I my niece found.
diu guot enpfie mich alsô wol,
the good-one received me so well,
als vriunt den vriunt enphâhen sol.
as friend the friend receive shall.

sî sprach: «ich hân dir getân,
she spoke: «I have for-thee done,

daz ich vil pillîch hete lân,
what I very rightly had left,

und daz dich doch vil kleine frumt
and which thee yet very little profits

und lützel dir ze frumen kumt.
and little to-thee to profit comes.

Nu sitze nider her zuo mir: 71
Now sit down hither to me:

sô sag ich endelîchen dir
so tell I truly thee

gar, waz dîn vrowe wider mich
wholly, what thy lady to me

hât geredet und waz ouch ich
has spoken and what also I

wider sî geredet hân.
to her spoken have.

ich hân ir für wâr kunt getân,
I have her for true known made,

daz sî dir ist für elliu wîp
that she to-thee is before all women

und lieber dann dîn selbes lîp.
and dearer than thy own person.

72 Ich sagt ir von dir dannoch mê,
I told her of thee besides more,

dir wære nâch ir hulden wê,
to-thee were after her favor woe,

sô daz du lîp, guot unde leben
so that thou body, goods and life

ir hetest ûf genâde ergeben;
her hadst on grace surrendered;

si wære dîner freuden trôst:
she were thy joy's comfort:

dîn herze nimmer würd erlôst
thy heart never would-be released

von senelîcher minne bant,
from longing love's bond,

dir würd ir wîplîch güete erkant.
unless-to-thee were her womanly goodness known.

73 Ich sprach: «frowe, geloubet daz,
I spoke: «lady, believe that,

nie mannes herze ein wîp besaz
never man's heart a woman possessed

sô rehte gar gewalticlîch.
so right wholly mightily.

und sold er haben elliu rîch,
and should he have all kingdoms,

die gæb er, vrowe, umb iuren gruoz.
those gave he, lady, for your greeting.

sît ich die wârheit sprechen muoz,
since I the truth speak must,

des swuor er mir vil manigen eit
of-it swore he me very many-an oath

ûf alle sîne sælicheit.»
on all his blessedness.»

Ê daz mîn lîp von danne schiet, 74
Before that my person from thence parted,

ich las ir dîniu niuwen liet.
I read her thy new songs.

dô sprach diu reine, wol gemuot:
then spoke the pure, well spirited-one:

«diu liet diu sint ze wâre guot.
«the songs they are in truth good.

ich wil aber mich ir niht an nemen:
I will however myself of-them not on take:

sîn dienst mac mir niht gezemen.
his service may me not befit.

du solt der rede gar gedagen
thou shalt of-the speech wholly be-silent

und mir von im niht mêre sagen.
and me of him not more tell.

Wan wirt dîn neve ein biderb man, 75
But (if)-becomes thy nephew a worthy man,

daz ist ein dinc, des ich im gan.
that is a thing, which I him grant.

des hân ich von den dingen reht:
of-it have I from the things right:

er ist gewesen ê min kneht.
he is been before my servant.

dâ von gan ich im êren wol,
there from grant I him honors well,

dêswâr, als ich von rehte sol:
truly, as I by right shall:

er sol aber solhe rede verbern,
he shall however such speech forgo,

der ich in nimmer wil gewern.
which I him never will grant.

76 Ist daz er sölher tumpheit gert,
(If)-is that he such foolishness desires,

des ist er immer ungewert,
of-it is he ever ungranted,

daz mîn lîp nem den dienest sîn.
that my person take the service his.

daz gienge mir ûf die êre mîn,
that went me on the honor mine,

ouch wærs im weizgot gar ze vil.
also were-it to-him God-knows wholly too much.

durch zuht ich nimêr sprechen wil:
for courtesy I no-more speak will:

ich habs ouch von im guoten rât:
I have-of-it also from him good counsel:

diu rede mich beswæret hât.»
the speech me grieved has.»

77 Dô sprach ich: «vrowe, enzürnet niht!
Then spoke I: «lady, be-angry not!

alsölher dinge vil geschiht,
such things much happens,

daz ein junc man sô hôhe gert,
that a young man so high desires,

des er ist immer ungewert.
which he is ever ungranted.

si werbent hôhe durch hôhen muot.
they woo high for high spirit.

si jehent, ez sî gar ze êren guot,
they declare, it be wholly to honors good,

daz hôch gemuotes ritters lîp
that high spirited knight's person

diene unde werbe umb werdiu wîp.
serve and woo for worthy women.

Ir sît im gar ze hôhe geborn. 78
You are to-him wholly too high born.

nu waz dar umb? er hât erkorn
now what there for? he has chosen

iuch ze frowen sîne zît.
you as lady his time.

ir sît, an der sîn wunne lît,
you are, on whom his delight lies,

ir sît, an der sîn sælde stât,
you are, on whom his bliss stands,

ir sît, diu sînen dienest hât
you are, who his service has

immer mêr gar sunder wanc:
ever more wholly without wavering:

daz ist sîn muot und sîn gedanc.»
that is his spirit and his thought.»

«Nu swîc: der rede sol sîn genuoc! 79
«Now be-silent: of-the speech shall be enough!

nie man sô hôhez lop getruoc,
never man so high praise bore,

und næm mîn lîp den dienest sîn,
and took my person the service his,

er müest es wol getiuret sîn;
he must of-it well ennobled be;

des ich nie willen noch gewan.
of-which I never will yet won.

ja enwart noch nie sô biderb man,
yes was yet never so worthy man,

der wol verdienen möhte mich:
who well earn might me:

dâ von sol ers gelouben sich.
there from shall he-of-it divest himself.

80 Nu lâze aber in sîn gar volkomen
Now let however him be wholly perfect

(des ich von im niht hân vernomen)
(which I of him not have heard)

an aller hande werdecheit:
in all kinds worthiness:

iedoch sô müest wol wesen leit
yet so must well be sorrowful

einem wîbe ze aller stunt
to-a woman at all hours

sîn ungefüege stênter munt.
his ill-shaped standing mouth.

ob ichz mit urloub sprechen sol,
if I-it with leave speak shall,

der stât im übel, daz weistu wol.»
it stands him ill, that knowest-thou well.»

81 Si wolt von dir mit mir niht mêr
She would of thee with me not more

reden. nu ist daz wol mîn ger
speak. now is that well my desire

gein dir und ouch mîn vriundes rât,
toward thee and also my friend's counsel,

sît daz ir muot sô hôhe stât,
since that her spirit so high stands,

daz dû si lâzest dienstes vrî,
that thou her leavest of-service free,

als liep sô dir dîn êre sî.
as dear as to-thee thy honor be.

du solt ir dienest gar ûf geben
thou shalt her service wholly up give

und anders hôhes muotes leben.»
and otherwise of-high spirit live.»

«Niftel, des volg ich dir niht, 82
«Niece, in-that follow I thee not,

daz ich der werden zuoversiht,
that I the worthy confidence,

die ich gein mîner frowen hân,
which I toward my lady have,

durch iemens rât welle ab gestân.
for anyone's counsel will off stand.

des râtes soltu mir niht geben.
the counsel shalt-thou me not give.

ich wil ze dienst ir immer leben:
I will to service her ever live:

von ir sô kan mich nimmer nôt
from her so can me never need

vertrîben wan der grimme tôt.»
drive except the grim death.»

«Sô wil ich niht wesen bot.» 83
«So will I not be messenger.»

«nein, liebiu niftel mîn, durch got,
«no, dear niece mine, for God,

du solt an mir noch niht verzagen.
thou shalt in me yet not despair.

nu hœre mich, ich wil dir sagen:
now hear me, I will thee tell:

ich wil in vil kürzlîcher stunt
I will in very short time

mir heizen snîden mînen munt,
me bid cut my mouth,

swie halt ez mir sül ergên,
however yet it to-me shall go,

sît er si dunket übel stên.
since it her seems ill to-stand.

84 Du solt für wâr gelouben daz,
Thou shalt for true believe that,

ir muoz mîn munt gevallen baz
her must my mouth please better

oder wirs wol tûsentvalt.
or worse well thousandfold.

sît er sô übel ist gestalt,
since it so ill is shaped,

daz in mîn vrowe ungern siht,
that it my lady unwillingly sees,

sô lâz ich des benamen niht,
so leave I it truly not,

ich snîd ez drab, swaz missestât:
I cut it off-there, whatever misbecomes:

in kurzen zîten daz ergât.»
in short times that befalls.»

85 «Mit rehten triuwen sô rât ich,
«With right faithfulness so counsel I,

daz dû sô iht verderbest dich.
that thou so not ruin thyself.

leb, als dich got hab heizen leben,
live, as thee God have bidden live,

und hab, daz er dir hab gegeben,
and have, what he thee have given,

von im vil willeclîch für guot.
from him very willingly for good.

ob dû daz tuost, dêst rehter muot.
if thou that dost, that-is right spirit.

wil dû dich anders, dann er wil,
(if)-wilt thou thyself otherwise, than he wills,

des muotes ist dir al ze vil.»
of-the spirit is to-thee all too much.»

«Niftel, daz dich got gesegen! 86
«Niece, that thee God bless!

wiz, ich hân mich sîn gar bewegen.
know, I have me of-it wholly resolved.

swie mir gelinget oder geschiht,
however to-me succeeds or happens,

des wil ich dich verswîgen niht:
of-it will I thee keep-silent not:

ich enbiut ez endelîchen dir
I announce it truly thee

und bite dich, daz dû ez ir
and bid thee, that thou it her

enbietest durch die triwe dîn,
announcest for the faithfulness thine,

der herzenlieben frowen mîn.»
to-the heart-dear lady mine.»

«Daz lob ich dir ûf mînen eit: 87
«That promise I thee on my oath:

und wiz, neve, ez ist mir leit,
and know, nephew, it is to-me sorrowful,

daz dû sîn niht wil abe gestân.»
that thou of-it not wilt off stand.»

sus reit ich von der guoten dan
thus rode I from the good-one thence

ze Græz sâ in daz Stîrelant,
to Graz at-once into the Styrian-land,

dâ ich vil guote meister vant.
where I very good masters found.

dem besten tet ich alzestunt
to-the best made I forthwith

gar allen mînen willen kunt.
wholly all my will known.

88 Er sprach: «ez ist nu gar enwiht:
He spoke: «it is now wholly nothing:

ich snîd iuch vor dem maien niht.
I cut you before the May not.

kumt ir mir in dem maien her,
(if)-come you to-me in the May hither,

bî mînen triwen ich iuch wer:
by my faithfulness I you grant:

ich mach iu iwern munt alsô,
I make you your mouth so,

daz ir sîn sît von schulden vrô.
that you of-it are by rights glad.

der dinge ich gar ein meister bin:
of-the things I wholly a master am:

ich hân dar zuo vil ganzen sîn.»
I have there to very whole mind.»

89 Dô reit ich aber frowen sehen.
Then rode I again ladies see.

den winder gar daz was geschehen,
the winter wholly that was happened,

biz daz der süeze sumer quam
until that the sweet summer came

und daz der winder ende nam.
and that the winter end took.

dô hôrt ich singen vogelîn:
then heard I sing little-birds:

ich gedâht: «sîn mac zît sîn,
I thought: «of-it may time be,

daz mîn lîp sol ze Græze varn.
that my person shall to Graz go.

got müeze mich aldâ bewarn!»
God may me there keep!»

Sâ reit ich hin in gotes pflege. 90
At-once rode I thither in God's care.

mir widerfuor ûf mînem wege,
to-me befell on my way,

seht, mîner vrowen kneht, den ich
see, my lady's servant, whom I

erkande wol: er bekand ouch mich.
knew well: he knew also me.

er frâgte, wâ ich wolde hin,
he asked, where I would thither,

und war ze den zîten wær mîn sin.
and whither at the times were my mind.

«geselle, daz wil ich dir sagen,
«companion, that will I thee tell,

vremdiu mære niht verdagen.
strange tidings not conceal.

Nu wize, ich pin vil wol gesunt 91
Now know, I am very well healthy

und wil mich machen gerne wunt.
and will me make gladly wounded.

man sol ze Græze snîden mich.»
one shall at Graz cut me.»

der knappe guot der segent sich
the squire good he crossed himself

und sprach: «nu herre, sagt mir wâ.»
and spoke: «now lord, tell me where.»

ich sprach: «geselle mîn, sich, dâ.
I spoke: «companion mine, see, there.

der lefs, der ich drîe hân,
of-the lips, of-which I three have,

der wil ich einen snîden dan.»
of-them will I one cut away.»

92 «Und ist ez wâr, sô helf iu got!
«And (if)-is it true, so help you God!

sô sprich ich wol âne allen spot,
so speak I well without all mockery,

ez ist ein wunderlîch geschiht.
it is a wondrous happening.

sîn weiz, ich wæn, mîn frowe niht:
of-it knows, I think, my lady not:

der wil ich ez sagen durch wunder grôz.
to-her will I it tell for wonder great.

got weiz wol, ir sît sinne blôz,
God knows well, you are of-sense bare,

daz ir iuch wâget sunder nôt:
that you yourself venture without need:

ir müget dâ von geligen tôt.»
you may there from lie dead.»

IV · THE CUTTING

The surgeon cuts Ulrich's lip while the lady's servant looks on, and he endures it without flinching. He lies at Graz for five and a half weeks, starved by the swelling and a stinking green salve. When he is healed his niece tells him that his mouth now pleases and that she has written everything to the lady. He sends Song II through her, and the lady answers the niece with a prose letter asking her to come to the market town near her where the lady will lodge, and saying she would gladly see the niece's nephew too, for his mouth's sake.

93 «Nu sag ez, swem du wil, für wâr:
«Now tell it, to-whomever thou wilt, for true:

ich bin sîn in dem willen gar:
I am of-it in the will wholly:

ez muoz ûf dirre vart geschehen.»
it must on this journey happen.»

«entriwen sô wil ich ez sehen,
«truly so will I it see,

mag ez in iuren hulden sîn;
may it in your favor be;

und wil ouch sagen der vrowen mîn,
and will also tell the lady mine,

daz ir mich welt dâ bî iu hân
that you me will there by you have

ze schowen, wie iu wirt getân.»
to watch, how to-you is done.»

Dô reit ich hin, und reit ouch er, 94
Then rode I thither, and rode also he,

hin ze Græz: dar stuont mîn ger;
thither to Graz: there stood my desire;

dâ ich sâ mînen meister vant.
where I at-once my master found.

der underwant sich mîn zehant.
he undertook himself of-me forthwith.

eins mântagen morgens harte fruo
one Monday's morning very early

greif er mit sînem snîden zuo.
grasped he with his cutting to.

er wolt mich binden, ich wolte niht.
he would me bind, I would not.

er sprach: «dâ von iu schad geschiht.
he spoke: «there from to-you harm happens.

95 Und rüert ir iuch als umb ein hâr,
And (if)-stir you yourself as about a hair,

ir nemt sîn schaden, daz ist wâr.»
you take of-it harm, that is true.»

ich sprach: «daz wirt von mir vermiten.
I spoke: «that is by me avoided.

ich pin dâ her zuo iu geriten
I am there hither to you ridden

vil willeclîchen durch mîn nôt:
very willingly for my need:

und sold ich von iu ligen tôt,
and should I by you lie dead,

dêswâr man siht mich wenken niht,
truly one sees me flinch not,

swie wê sô mir von iu geschiht.»
however woe so to-me by you happens.»

96 Mîn vorhte was ze wâre kranc.
My fear was in truth weak.

ich saz vor im ûf einer banc;
I sat before him on a bench;

er nam ein scharsach in die hant
he took a razor in the hand

und sneit den munt mir alzehant.
and cut the mouth to-me forthwith.

hin ob den cenden er durchsneit,
there above the teeth he cut-through,

daz ich vil senfteclîchen leit.
which I very gently suffered.

daz snîden alsô gar ergie,
the cutting so wholly went,

daz ich dâ von gewancte nie.
that I there from flinched never.

97

Er het mich meisterlîch gesniten:
He had me masterfully cut:

daz het ouch ich manlîch erliten.
that had also I manly endured.

der munt mir alzehant geswal
the mouth to-me forthwith swelled

grôzer vil denn ein sleipal.
greater much than a sling-ball.

der wunden tet er dô ihr reht.
to-the wound did he then its right.

daz sach dô gar mîner vrowen kneht.
that saw then wholly my lady's servant.

er sprach zuo mir: «mügt ir genesen,
he spoke to me: «may you recover,

sô pin ich gerne hie gewesen.
so am I gladly here been.

98

Dô ich nâhste von iu reit,
When I last from you rode,

und daz ich mîner vrowen seit,
and that I to-my lady said,

daz man iuch wolde snîden hie,
that one you would cut here,

daz wolt si mir gelouben nie.
that would she me believe never.

si sprach alsô: «er tuot sîn niht:
she spoke thus: «he does of-it not:

mîn munt für wârheit dir des giht.
my mouth for truth to-thee of-it declares.

ez deuht mich tumplîch gar getân,
it seemed me foolishly wholly done,

wold er sich alsô snîden lân.»
would he himself so cut let.»

99 Nu hab ich ez allez reht gesehen,
Now have I it all rightly seen,

waz an iu wunders ist geschehen:
what on you of-wonder is happened:

nu wil ich hinne von iu varn.
now will I hence from you fare.

der rîche got müez iuch bewarn
the mighty God may you keep

und mache iuch kürzlîch wol gesunt!
and make you shortly well healthy!

ich wil tuon mîner vrowen kunt,
I will make to-my lady known,

daz man den munt iu hât gesniten,
that one the mouth to-you has cut,

und ir daz manlîch habt erliten.»
and you that manly have endured.»

100 «Du solt von mir der vrowen dîn
«Thou shalt from me to-the lady thine

niht sagen wan den dienest mîn:
not tell except the service mine:

ichn getar niht mêr enbieten ir.
I dare not more announce her.

wan swem du wil, dem sag von mir,
but to-whomever thou wilt, to-him tell from me,

swaz hie erliten hât mîn lîp,
whatever here suffered has my person,

daz sî geschehen durch ein wîp,
that be happened for a woman,

diu sprach, mir stüend mîn munt niht wol;
who spoke, to-me stood my mouth not well;

dâ von ich disen smerzen dol.
there from I this pain endure.

Der diene ich alsô mîniu jâr 101
Her serve I thus my years

(daz sag von mir wol offenpâr),
(that tell from me well openly),

swaz sô ir an mir missehaget,
whatever so her in me displeases,

dem ist von mir gar widersaget.
to-that is by me wholly renounced.

geviel ir niht mîn zeswiu hant,
pleased her not my right hand,

ich slüeg si ab bî got zehant.
I struck it off by God forthwith.

ich wil dâ von niht sprechen vil:
I will there of not speak much:

ich wil doch niht, wan daz si wil.»
I will yet nothing, except what she wills.»

Sus reit der knappe von mir dan. 102
Thus rode the squire from me thence.

hie lag ich als ein wunde man
here lay I as a wounded man

wol sehsthalp wochen oder mê.
well five-and-a-half weeks or more.

mir was wol, mir was wê:
to-me was well, to-me was woe:

wê dâ von, mîn lîp was wunt:
woe there from, my body was wounded:

sô was mîn herze wol gesunt.
so was my heart well healthy.

der minne twingen twanc mich sô,
the love's compelling compelled me so,

daz mir was wê, und was doch frô.
that to-me was woe, and was yet glad.

103 Ich was êt vrô, swaz mir geschach.
I was just glad, whatever to-me happened.

von hunger grôzen ungemach
from hunger great discomfort

und ouch von durste den leid ich.
and also from thirst that suffered I.

ich kunde pringen niht in mich.
I could bring not into me.

zend unde munt mir tâten wê.
teeth and mouth to-me did woe.

ein salbe noch grüener denn der klê
a salve yet greener than the clover

streich man mir in mînen munt:
smeared one me into my mouth:

diu stanc alsam ein fûler hunt.
that stank like a foul dog.

104 Dô mich des lîbes nôt betwanc,
When me the body's need compelled,

daz ich az oder daz ich tranc,
that I ate or that I drank,

diu salbe gar dann in mich gie,
the salve wholly then into me went,

dâ von mîn lîp den smac gevie.
there from my body the taste caught.

daz trinken, ezen widerstuont
the drinking, eating repelled

mir: sô tet ich, als die tuont,
me: so did I, as those do,

die vor siechtum ouch ezent niht:
who from sickness also eat not:

des wart mîn lîp vil gar enwiht.
therefore became my body very wholly nothing.

Ich hân iu nû genuoc geseit, 105
I have you now enough said,

wie ich durch mîne frowen sneit
how I for my lady cut

mînen munt: nu sült ir mê
my mouth: now shall you more

hœren, wie ez fürbaz ergê.
hear, how it further befall.

ze Græz ich alsô lange was,
at Graz I so long was,

unz daz mîn lîp vil wol genas:
until that my body very well recovered:

dô rait ich danne sâ zehant
then rode I thence at-once forthwith

mit freuden, dâ ich mîn niftel vant.
with joys, where I my niece found.

Dô mich diu aller verrest sach, 106
When me she of-all farthest saw,

nu sült ir hœren, wie si sprach:
now shall you hear, how she spoke:

«den munt dir niemen mêre sol
«the mouth to-thee no-one more shall

verwîzen: er stât dir nu wol.
reproach: it stands to-thee now well.

sich hât dîn dinc gefüeget sô,
itself has thy thing arranged so,

daz ich sîn pin von herzen frô;
that I of-it am from heart glad;

ouch ist mir endelîch geseit
also is to-me truly said

gar dînes lîbes arebeit.
wholly thy body's labor.

107 Ouch ist daz von mir niht beliben,
Also is that by me not remained,

ich hab ez allez an geschriben,
I have it all on written,

und wil ez senden an die stat,
and will it send to the place,

dâ dîn lîp ie gnâden bat.
where thy person ever for-grace begged.

ich mein die lieben frowen dîn:
I mean the dear lady thine:

der wil ich ûf die triwe mîn
to-her will I on the faithfulness mine

und ouch ûf mîne sælde jehen,
and also on my bliss declare,

daz ez gar von ir ist geschehen,
that it wholly for her is happened,

108 Von einem worte, daz si sprach,
From a word, that she spoke,

diu guote, dô ich si nâhste sach,
the good-one, when I her last saw,

daz ir dîn munt geviele niht.
that her thy mouth pleased not.

mîn brief sol ouch verswîgen niht
my letter shall also keep-silent not

dîn manicfalden arebeit
thy manifold labor

und ouch dîn wernde stætecheit,
and also thy lasting steadfastness,

di dû mit triwen gegen ir hâst,
which thou with faithfulness toward her hast,

und ouch ir nimmer ab gestâst.»
and also from-her never off standest.»

«Niftel mîn, nu lôn dir got, 109
«Niece mine, now reward thee God,

vil süeze wîp, getriwer bot!
very sweet woman, faithful messenger!

dû tuost mir als rehte wol,
thou doest me so right well,

daz ich ez von rehte dienen sol.
that I it by right serve shall.

dû hâst mir sô wol getân,
thou hast me so well done,

daz ich sîn niht verdienen kan.
that I it not earn can.

gein mir dîn herze ie triwe riet.
toward me thy heart ever faithfulness counseled.

ich hab êt aber niwiu liet
I have just however new songs

Gesungen: diu soltû von mir 110
Sung: those shalt-thou from me

durch mînen willen senden ir.
for my will send her.

dô ich ze Græze siech lac,
when I at Graz sick lay,

die wîle ich sî ze rihten pflac.
the while I them to compose was-wont.

ir lop mir ofte sanfte tuot,
her praise me often gently does,

ir lop mir gibt vil hôhen muot,
her praise me gives very high spirit,

ir lop mich ofte machet vrô.
her praise me often makes glad.

nu hœre diu liet! diu sprechent sô:»
now hear the songs! they speak so:»

II. Daz ist diu ander tanzwîse.
II. That is the second dance-tune.

Ichn weiz, waz ich singe
I-not know, what I sing

von der naht: diu gibt mir freude niht.
of the night: it gives me joy not.

Mîn hôhgedinge
My high-hope

der ligt an dem tage: wan er ist licht.
it lies in the day: for it is bright.

Ouch ist sîn schîn
Also is its shine

der vrouwen mîn
to-the lady mine

vil gelîch. dez müez er sælic sin!
very like. therefore may it blessed be!

Er mac von schulden
He may by rights

loben die naht, der sæliclîchen lît.
praise the night, who blissfully lies.

Sô muoz ich dulden
So must I endure

senediu leit: dâ von trag ich ir nît;
longing sorrows: there from bear I her grudge;

Und lobe den tac,
And praise the day,

swenn ich sie mac
whenever I her may

sehen, diu mir wol heilet sorgen slac.
see, who me well heals sorrow's blow.

Den tac ich êre,
The day I honor,

dô ich die vil guoten êrste sach.
when I the very good-one first saw.

Sît immer mêre
Since ever more

gab diu naht mir leit und ungemach.
gave the night me sorrow and discomfort.

Sie ist mir gram
She is to-me hostile

und ich ir sam.
and I to-her likewise.

wol dir tac, vil sælic sî dîn nam!
well thee day, very blessed be thy name!

Sô mich besezzen
When me besieged

nahtes habent die sorge alsam die schar,
at-night have the sorrows like the host,

Des wirt vergezzen
Of-it is forgotten

sâ, sô mir der tac erschînet klâr.
at-once, as to-me the day appears clear.

Sô kumet ein wân,
So comes a hope,

daz ich sül gân,
that I shall go,

die vil schœnen tougen sehen an.
the very beautiful-one secretly look at.

Vil gerne ich wolde
Very gladly I would

loben die naht, ergieng ez immer sô,
praise the night, went it ever so,

Daz ich ir solde
That I her should

nâhen ligen, diu mich nu tuot unvrô.
near lie, who me now makes unglad.

Wer wær ich dan,
Who were I then,

ich sælic man!
I blessed man!

wê, daz mirs diu guote niht engan!
woe, that me-it the good-one not grants!

111 «Liet unde brief send ich ir dar
«Songs and letter send I her thither

und wil ir endelîchen gar
and will her truly wholly

enbieten, swes du hâst verjehen,
announce, whatever thou hast declared,

und daz ich dich hân gesehen.
and that I thee have seen.

ich wil ouch ir daz machen kunt,
I will also her that make known,

daz dir als rehte stât der munt
that to-thee as rightly stands the mouth

für wâr als einem andern man:
for true as to-an other man:

dâ wil ich ir niht liegen an.
there will I her not lie on.

Den brief, den sî her wider mir 112
The letter, which she hither back to-me

sendet, friunt, den wil ich dir
sends, friend, that will I thee

senden, ob er dir ist guot.»
send, if it to-thee is good.»

«jâ, liebiu niftel wol gemuot.
«yes, dear niece well spirited.

dîn bot mich vindet bî der Muor.»
thy messenger me finds by the Mur.»

mit sölher rede ich von ir fuor
with such speech I from her went

vrô unde hôhes muotes hein,
glad and of-high spirit home,

den rehten wec gein Liehtenstein.
the right way toward Liechtenstein.

Sâ dô ich von danne quam, 113
At-once when I from thence came,

liet unde brief mîn niftel nam
songs and letter my niece took

und sand diu willeclîch zehant
and sent them willingly forthwith

hin, dâ man mîn vrowen vant.
thither, where one my lady found.

der bot unlange bî ir was:
the messenger not-long by her was:

wan sâ dô sî den brief gelas
for at-once when she the letter read

und ouch diu liet, dô schreip si wider,
and also the songs, then wrote she back,

seht, einen brief, der gefreut mich sider.
see, a letter, which gladdened me since.

114 Dô der brief kom der nifteln mîn,
When the letter came to-the niece mine,

zehant dô muost ein bot ûf sîn:
forthwith then must a messenger up be:

bî dem sô sande sî in mir.
by him so sent she it to-me.

des neig ich willeclîchen ir.
for-it bowed I willingly to-her.

der brief, der tet mîn herze vrô,
the letter, it made my heart glad,

mîn muot der stuont von schulden hô.
my spirit it stood by rights high.

sô gern ich ê nie brief gesach.
so gladly I before never letter saw.

nu sült ir hœren, wie er sprach:
now shall you hear, how it spoke:

A Mîn huld und ouch den dienest mîn enbiut ich dir vil willeclîchen
My favor and also the service mine announce I thee very willingly

und tuon dir kunt, daz ich mich hebe von dem nâhsten mântage
and make thee known, that I me lift from the next Monday

von dem hûse, dâ ich alzan ûf bin, und var hinze dem hûse,
from the house, where I now upon am, and go to the house,

als du wol weist, und bin über naht in dem market, der bî dir
as thou well knowest, and am over night in the market, which by thee

lît. Nu bit ich dich, daz du des iht lâst, du komest dar zuo
lies. Now bid I thee, that thou it not omittest, thou comest there to

mir: sô wil ich dir alles des antwürten, des du mir enboten
me: so will I thee all of-that answer, which thou me announced

hâst. wil ouch dîn neve dar komen, den sihe ich gern: durch
hast. (if)-will also thy nephew there come, him see I gladly: for

sînen munt, wie im der stê, und durch anders niht.
his mouth, how to-him it stands, and for else nothing.

Ulrich rides to his lady and sees her at Mass, and his niece tells him he may speak with her on the road. Five times he rides up beside her and five times his tongue fails him, while his heart scolds him for a coward. At evening he holds the stirrup for the ladies; she mocks his weakness and secretly pulls out a lock of his hair. He laments that his own cowardice has lost him his lady.

Aventiur wie der herre Uolrîch mit sîner vrowen wart êrst
Adventure how the lord Ulrich with his lady became first

redehaft.
speech-able.

Dô mir der brief gelesen wart, 115
When to-me the letter read was,

ich huob mich zuo ir an di vart.
I raised myself to her on the journey.

mir was vil liebe dran geschehen,
to-me was very dear thereon happened,

daz ich die guoten solde sehen.
that I the good-one should see.

ich reit zuo ir vil hôchgemuot:
I rode to her very high-spirited:

dô was si leider sô behuot,
then was she alas so guarded,

daz ich si den âbent nie gesach,
that I her the evening never saw,

dar an vil leide mir geschach.
there on very sorrowful to-me happened.

116 Mîn lîp entslief des nahtes nie.
My body fell-asleep of-the night never.

des morgens, dô diu sunne ûf gie,
of-the morning, when the sun up went,

dô stuont ich ûf und gie zehant
then stood I up and went forthwith

hin, dâ ich ir gesinde vant,
thither, where I her household found,

ritter und vil manigen kneht.
knights and very many-a servant.

die gruozt ich wol: daz was mîn reht.
them greeted I well: that was my right.

ir danken daz was zühterîch
their thanking that was courtesy-rich

und ir gebærde minneclîch.
and their bearing lovely.

117 Dar nâch vil schiere was unlanc,
There after very soon was not-long,

ir caplân eine messe sanc,
her chaplain a mass sang,

dâ mir vil liebe von geschach,
there to-me very dear from happened,

wan ich dô mîne vrowen sach.
for I then my lady saw.

mit grôzen vorhten ich dar gie,
with great fears I thither went,

dô mich diu tugentrîch enpfie.
when me the virtue-rich-one received.

dô sî mich sach, diu guot mir neic;
when she me saw, the good-one to-me bowed;

den gruoz mit worten sî versweic.
the greeting with words she kept-silent.

Diu messe gar ze kurz mir was. 118
The mass wholly too short to-me was.

swaz man dâ sanc oder las,
whatever one there sang or read,

des vernam ich alles niht:
of-it heard I all nothing:

mir tet sô wol diu angesiht
to-me did so well the sight

an daz vil reine süeze wîp,
of the very pure sweet woman,

daz lützel hôrte dâ mîn lîp,
that little heard there my person,

swaz man dâ sanc oder swaz man sprach:
whatever one there sang or whatever one spoke:

ich was êt wan der sî an sach.
I was just except who her at looked.

Diu messe kurzlîch endet sich. 119
The mass shortly ended itself.

alzehant dô hiez man mich
forthwith then bade one me

und ander man gar alle ûz gên:
and other men wholly all out go:

man lie uns dâ niht langer stên.
one let us there not longer stand.

mîn vrowe enbeiz und reit zehant:
my lady breakfasted and rode forthwith:

ich gie hin, dâ ich mîne niftel vant.
I went thither, where I my niece found.

diu lachet und sach mich güetlîch an:
she laughed and looked me kindly at:

si sprach: «du bist ein sælic man.
she spoke: «thou art a blessed man.

120 Mîn vrowe hât erloubet dir,
My lady has permitted thee,

daz du hiut selbe solt mit ir
that thou today self shalt with her

reden, swaz dich dunket guot.
speak, whatever thee seems good.

si ist gein dir niht ungemuot.
she is toward thee not ill-spirited.

du solt zuo ir hiut ûf dem wege
thou shalt to her today on the way

rîten, sô ez sich füegen mege,
ride, so it itself fit may,

und rede mit ir, swaz du wil,
and speak with her, whatever thou wilt,

und mach ez iedoch niht ze vil.»
and make it yet not too much.»

121 Des was ich vrô und vil gemeit:
Of-it was I glad and very joyful:

zehant ich nâch der werden reit.
forthwith I after the worthy-one rode.

dô ich si vor mir rîten sach,
when I her before me ride saw,

daz herze mîn ûz freuden sprach:
the heart mine out-of joys spoke:

«nu dar! nu soltu reden mit ir
«now on! now shalt-thou speak with her

allez, daz gevalle dir.
all, that please thee.

si rîtet vor dir sunder huot:
she rides before thee without guard:

rede mit ir, swaz dich dunke guot.»
speak with her, whatever thee seem good.»

Sâ rait ich paltlîch zuo ir dar. 122
At-once rode I boldly to her thither.

dô sî mîn bî ir wart gewar,
when she of-me by her became aware,

si kêrt sich von mir umbe hin;
she turned herself from me around thither;

dâ von sô zaghaft wart mîn sin,
there from so faint-hearted became my mind,

daz mir erstumbet an der stunt
that to-me grew-dumb at the hour

diu zunge mîn und ouch der munt,
the tongue mine and also the mouth,

und mir daz houbet nider seic:
and to-me the head down sank:

mîn lîp reht als ein stumbe sweic.
my body right as a mute-one was-silent.

Ein ander riter zuo ir reit; 123
An other knight to her rode;

dô habt ich ûf und was verzeit,
then halted I up and was disheartened,

in vorhten reit ich hinten nâch.
in fears rode I behind after.

daz herze mîn ôt aber sprach:
the heart mine just again spoke:

«jâ, dû vil gar verzagter lîp,
«yes, thou very wholly faint-hearted body,

und fürhtestû ein sô guot wîp?
and fearest-thou a so good woman?

si het dir weizgot niht getân.
she had thee God-knows nothing done.

wê, daz dîn munt niht reden kan!
woe, that thy mouth not speak can!

124 Lîp, nu hœre, waz ich sage!
Body, now hear, what I say!

wil dû mit worten sîn ein zage,
(if)-wilt thou with words be a coward,

sô kan dir nimmer liep geschehen:
so can to-thee never dear happen:

des wil ich ûf mîn sælde jehen,
of-it will I on my bliss declare,

und scheidestû alsô von ir,
and (if)-partest-thou so from her,

daz si nimmer mêre dir
that she never more to-thee

wirt holt bî allen dînen tagen:
becomes devoted by all thy days:

si muoz dich hân für einen zagen.»
she must thee have for a coward.»

125 Mîn herze vil gestrâfte mich:
My heart much rebuked me:

dâ von ermannet ôt aber ich
there from took-heart just again I

und rait zuo ir. dô daz geschach,
and rode to her. when that happened,

diu reine, süeze mich an sach.
the pure, sweet-one me at looked.

von ir ansehen mîn lîp erschrac,
from her looking my body took-fright,

daz ich êt aber swîgens pflac:
that I just again silence kept:

der Minnen kraft mir alzehant
the Love's power to-me forthwith

den mînen munt zesamen bant.
the my mouth together bound.

Ir sült für wâr gelauben daz, 126
You shall for true believe that,

daz ich niht weste, wâ ich saz.
that I not knew, where I sat.

«lîp», sprach aber daz herze mîn,
«body», spoke again the heart mine,

«daz dû unsælic müezest sîn!
«that thou unblessed may be!

dû bist zwâre ein bœse man,
thou art truly a bad man,

dô sî dich sach sô güetlîch an,
when she thee looked so kindly at,

daz du spræche gegen ir niht:
that thou spokest toward her not:

des muostu immer sîn enwiht.»
of-it must-thou ever be nothing.»

«Sich, herze mîn, got weiz ez wol, 127
«See, heart mine, God knows it well,

swenne ich gein ir iht sprechen sol,
whenever I toward her anything speak shall,

ich weiz niht, wâ von ez geschiht,
I know not, where from it happens,

daz ich ein wort mac sprechen niht.
that I a word may speak not.

mir wirt versperret sô der munt,
to-me becomes locked so the mouth,

daz ich zewâre sâ an der stunt
that I truly at-once at the hour

ein wort her für niht pringen kan.
a word hither forth not bring can.

des pin ich ein unsælic man.»
of-it am I an unblessed man.»

128 «Lîp, du solt gelouben mir,
«Body, thou shalt believe me,

du schaffest grôz unsælde dir.
thou createst great misfortune for-thee.

ich wil dirs ûf min triwe jehen:
I will thee-it on my faithfulness declare:

mir und dir muoz vil wê geschehen
to-me and thee must very woe happen

und nimmer wol deheine stunt,
and never well any hour,

und tuot ir niht dîn bœser munt
and (if)-makes her not thy bad mouth

mit worten kunt den willen mîn:
with words known the will mine:

ez muoz dîn und mîn ende sîn.
it must thy and my end be.

129 Nû sich, dû vil bœser lîp,
Now see, thou very bad body,

vor dir dort rîtet daz werde wîp,
before thee there rides the worthy woman,

vil gar eine, unbehuot:
very wholly alone, unguarded:

wie bistu alsô ungemuot,
how art-thou so ill-spirited,

daz dû niht rîtest zuo ir dar?
that thou not ridest to her thither?

und sag ir dînen willen gar.
and tell her thy will wholly.

nu dar! ez ist für wâr mîn rât.
now on! it is for true my counsel.

dir wirt sîn lîht nimmêre stat.»
to-thee becomes of-it easily never-more occasion.»

Ich rait êt aber zuo ir dar. 130
I rode just again to her thither.

von vorhten was ich ungevar:
from fears was I discolored:

mîn angest was ze sprechen grôz.
my anxiety was to speak great.

daz herze mîn mir mangen stôz
the heart mine me many-a thrust

mit sprüngen stiez an mîne brust:
with leaps pushed on my breast:

ze reden was gar sîn gelust.
to speak was wholly its desire.

ez sprach: «nu sprich, nu sprich, nu sprich,
it spoke: «now speak, now speak, now speak,

sît daz nu niemen irret dich!»
since that now no-one hinders thee!»

Ich tet für wâr wol zehenstunt 131
I did for true well ten-times

gein ir ze sprechen ûf den munt:
toward her to speak up the mouth:

dô was diu zunge mir gelegen,
then was the tongue to-me laid,

si wolde deheines wortes pflegen.
it would of-no word take-care.

ich wil dâ von niht sprechen mê:
I will there of not speak more:

ich schiet ôt aber von ir als ê,
I parted just again from her as before,

daz ich gein ir nie wort gesprach.
that I toward her never word spoke.

des tages mir fünfstunt daz geschach.
of-the day to-me five-times that happened.

132 Diu tageweid ein ende nam.
The day's-journey an end took.

diu reine, süeze, guote quam,
the pure, sweet, good-one came,

dâ sî des nahtes solde sîn.
where she of-the night should be.

des was unvrô daz herze mîn.
of-it was unglad the heart mine.

die vrowen hiez man dô abe heben.
the ladies bade one then down lift.

ich bat mir daz hebîsen geben:
I bade me the stirrup give:

ich huob die vrowen abe vil gar.
I lifted the ladies down very wholly.

ir was vil mangiu drunder clâr.
of-them was very many-a there-under bright.

133 Noch habt si dort, diu valsches vrî,
Yet halted she there, the of-falseness free-one,

ûf ir pferde. ir stuonden bî
upon her horse. her stood by

ritter unde knappen vil:
knights and squires many:

mit den het sî ir schimpfes spil.
with them had she her jest's game.

daz hebîsen ich dar truoc.
the stirrup I thither carried.

si sprach: «ir sît niht starc genuoc:
she spoke: «you are not strong enough:

ir mügt mich abe geheben niht;
you may me down lift not;

ir sît kranc, dar zuo enwiht.»
you are weak, there to worthless.»

Des schimpfes wart gelachet dâ. 134
Of-the jest was laughed there.

dô trat si ûf daz hebîsen sâ.
then stepped she onto the stirrup at-once.

dô sî her von dem satel sleif,
when she hither from the saddle slipped,

bî mînem hâr si mich begreif,
by my hair she me seized,

verholne, daz ez niemen sach.
secretly, that it no-one saw.

diu guot mir einen loc ûz prach.
the good-one to-me a lock out broke.

«daz habet iu, des ir sît verzagt!
«that have you, for-it you are faint-hearted!

mir ist niht wâr von iu gesagt.»
to-me is not true of you said.»

Diu guote zuo ir vrowen gie: 135
The good-one to her ladies went:

mîn lîp der stuont altrûric hie.
my person it stood all-sad here.

ich gedâht: «wê, wie ist mir geschehen!
I thought: «woe, how is to-me happened!

ich muoz des wol von schulden jehen,
I must of-it well by rights declare,

daz nie man alsô bœser wart.
that never man so bad became.

wie hân ich mich gein ir bewart!
how have I myself toward her kept!

si wirt mir nimmer mêre holt:
she becomes to-me never more devoted:

des hât si reht, ich hân ez versolt.»
of-it has she right, I have it deserved.»

136 In den gedanken sô stuond ich.
In the thoughts so stood I.

ein ritter der hiez balde mich
a knight he bade quickly me

varn: man sold die vrowen lân
go: one should the ladies leave

an ir gemach. dô reit ich dan
in their ease. then rode I thence

ze herbergen in die stat.
to lodgings into the town.

got ich vil vlîziclîchen pat,
God I very diligently bade,

daz er mir schiere næm daz leben,
that he me soon took the life,

und swaz er het mir ie gegeben.
and whatever he had me ever given.

137 Abwege ich in ein kamer fuor:
Aside I into a chamber went:

den leuten ich vil tiure swuor,
to-the people I very dearly swore,

ich wære siech. daz was ouch wâr.
I were sick. that was also true.

der lîp mich allenthalben swar:
the body me everywhere ached:

daz herze mîn het michel nôt,
the heart mine had great distress,

ez was vil nâch vor leide tôt.
it was very nearly from sorrow dead.

ich want mich her, ich want mich hin,
I turned me hither, I turned me thither,

ich het verwandelt nâch den sin.
I had changed nearly the mind.

Ich sprach: «ouwê, ouwê, ouwê! 138
I spoke: «alas, alas, alas!

wê, wê mir hiut und immer mê!
woe, woe to-me today and ever more!

ouwê, daz ich ie wart geborn!
alas, that I ever was born!

wie hân ich vreud und êre verlorn!
how have I joy and honor lost!

wie hât unsælde mir vergeben!
how has misfortune me poisoned!

und sold ich tûsent jâr nu leben,
and should I thousand years now live,

ich würde nimmer mêre vrô.
I would-become never more glad.

daz ist mîn reht: nuo sî alsô!
that is my right: now be-it so!

Mîn lîp ist wol unsælden wert: 139
My person is well of-misfortunes worthy:

der pin ich volleclîch gewert.
of-it am I fully granted.

ich muoz nu immer haben leit:
I must now ever have sorrow:

daz leit mîn lîp von schulden treit.
the sorrow my person by rights bears.

swaz leides immer mir geschiht,
whatever of-sorrow ever to-me happens,

des hân ich für übel niht,
that have I for ill not,

wan ichz vil wol verdienet hân:
for I-it very well deserved have:

ich sol von reht unsælde hân.
I shall by right misfortune have.

140 Owê, wê und immer wê!
Alas, woe and ever woe!

zwiu sol ich armer immer mê,
wherefore shall I poor-one ever more,

sît daz ich pin sô gar enwiht,
since that I am so wholly worthless,

daz ich getorste sprechen niht
that I dared speak not

wider mîner vreuden hort
toward my joys' hoard

mînes willen doch ein wort?
of-my will yet a word?

des müez mîn munt unsælic sin
of-it may my mouth unblessed be

immer und diu zunge mîn!
ever and the tongue mine!

141 Mir wære liep, und wær ich tôt,
To-me were dear, and were I dead,

sît daz ich in senelîcher nôt
since that I in longing distress

nu immer mêr belîben muoz.
now ever more remain must.

mir wirdet nimmer sorgen puoz:
to-me becomes never sorrows' remedy:

ich muoz in sorgen immer sîn,
I must in sorrows ever be,

sît daz ich hân die vrowen mîn,
since that I have the lady mine,

die ich ze freuden het erkorn,
whom I to joys had chosen,

von mîner bôsheit sô verlorn.»
through my wickedness so lost.»

VI · THE FIRST PLEA

After a night of lament Ulrich tells a kinsman his heart is aching, and while the kinsman goes for a physician he takes a horse and rides back to his lady, and at last asks her to accept him as her knight. She calls him a child, sends him away, and calls a knight to ride beside her; at Ulrich's word more than six join him. He jousts all summer and unhorses a worthy knight, for which she thanks him. In winter he sends songs and a little book to the lady through his niece, and the messenger tells her it holds a prayer.

Waz welt ir, daz ich mêre sage? 142
What will you, that I more say?

ich was die naht in maniger clage,
I was the night in many-a lament,

unz daz mir kom der ander tac.
until that to-me came the second day.

iezuo ich saz, iezuo ich lac,
now I sat, now I lay,

iezuo ich stuont, iezuo ich gie,
now I stood, now I went,

ich want mich dort, ich want mich hie,
I turned me there, I turned me here,

die hende mîn ich ofte want.
the hands mine I often wrung.

mîner mâge mich einer alsô vant.
of-my kinsmen me one so found.

Der gie des morgens vruo zuo mir: 143
He went in-the morning early to me:

er sprach zuo mir: «waz wirret dir?»
he spoke to me: «what troubles thee?»

ich jach: «mir ist an dem herzen wê,
I declared: «to-me is at the heart woe,

und wirt des ie mê unde mê:
and becomes of-it ever more and more:

ich wæne, ez welle mir presten abe;
I think, it will me break off;

dâ von ich hân dise ungehabe.
there from I have this ill-bearing.

ich mac gesitzen noch gestên:
I may sit nor stand:

mir tuot ôt niht sô wol sô gên.»
to-me does just nothing so well as going.»

144 Er sprach: «ez ist ein arzet hie.»
He spoke: «there is a physician here.»

«den princ mir!» zehant er gie
«him bring me!» forthwith he went

hin nâch dem meister in die stat.
thither after the master into the town.

ein pferd ich mir gewinnen pat
a horse I me get bade

und einen kneht, der mit mir reit.
and a servant, who with me rode.

zehant ich langer dâ niht peit,
forthwith I longer there not waited,

ich ran alsam ein tobender man
I ran like a raging man

hin, dâ ich die guoten hete lân.
thither, where I the good-one had left.

Dô ich dar quam, geloubet daz, 145
When I thither came, believe that,

mîn vrowe dort ûffe ir pferde saz
my lady there upon her horse sat

und reit die strâze gegen mir her
and rode the street toward me hither

nâch mînes seneden herzen ger.
after my longing heart's desire.

nâch vrowen siten sî her reit
after ladies' custom she hither rode

in einer capen wol gecleit.
in a cape well clad.

dô sî mich sach, mir wart genigen:
when she me saw, to-me was bowed:

von mir wart ouch niht mêr geswigen.
by me was also not more kept-silent.

Ich sprach: «gnâde, vrowe mîn: 146
I spoke: «grace, lady mine:

ir sült durch got genædic sîn
you shall for God gracious be

mir unde durch die werdicheit,
to-me and for the worthiness,

der got an iuch hât vil geleit.
which God on you has much laid.

gnâde, vrowe gnâderîch:
grace, lady grace-rich:

genâdet mir genædiclîch!
grace me graciously!

ir sît, an der mîn freude lît,
you are, on whom my joy lies,

gar mîner freuden hôchgezît.
wholly of-my joys' high-feast.

147 Ir sült gelouben mir für wâr,
You shall believe me for true,
ich hân iu elliu mîniu jâr
I have you all my years
gedienet, sît der süezen stunt,
served, since the sweet hour,
daz ir alrêst mir wurdet kunt.
that you first to-me became known.
ich bin iu dienstes undertân
I am to-you of-service subject
mit triwen, als ich peste kan:
with faithfulness, as I best can:
mîn dienst ist an iüch geleit
my service is on you laid
mit lûtterlîcher stæticheit.
with pure steadfastness.

148 Vrowe ob al den freuden mîn,
Lady above all the joys mine,
nu lât mich iuren ritter sîn,
now let me your knight be,
sô daz ir dienest erloubet mir.
so that you service permit me.
durch iwer tugent sô sült ir
for your virtue so shall you
gedenken, daz ich nie gewan
consider, that I never won
noch immer mêr gewinnen kan
nor ever more win can
sô liebez niht sô iwern lîp,
so dear nothing as your person,
vil reine, süeze, sælic wîp.
very pure, sweet, blessed woman.

Bedenket mich durch iwer tugent, 149
Consider me for your virtue,

durch iwer hôch gelobte jugent,
for your highly praised youth,

durch iwer hôhe sælicheit,
for your high blessedness,

bedenket mîne stæticheit,
consider my steadfastness,

lât mich geniezen, daz ir sît
let me enjoy, that you are

diu liebestiu mir gar âne strît.
the dearest to-me wholly without strife.

tuot mir, swie iwer genâde sî:
do to-me, however your grace be:

iu ist mîn dienst immer bî.
to-you is my service ever by.

Ich wil durch iuch, vil werdez wîp, 150
I will for you, very worthy woman,

gerne wâgen mînen lîp:
gladly venture my body:

mit ritterlîcher arebeit
with knightly labor

mîn dienst wirt an iuch geleit.
my service is on you laid.

swâ mit ein ritter dienen sol,
where with a knight serve shall,

dâ mit kan ich iu dienen wol.
there with can I you serve well.

ich sol, ich muoz, ich gern wil
I shall, I must, I gladly will

iu dienen an mîn endes zil.»
you serve to my end's goal.»

151 «Swîget! ir sît gar ze kint
«Be-silent! you are wholly too child

und gegen sô hôhen dingen blint.
and toward so high things blind.

ir sült die rede lâzen sîn,
you shall the speech let be,

als lieb iu sîn die hulde mîn,
as dear to-you be the favor mine,

und rîtet von mir palde hin!
and ride from me quickly thither!

iu ist noch gar ze tump der sin;
to-you is still wholly too foolish the mind;

iu mac diu rede ze schaden komen:
to-you may the speech to harm come:

si kan iu nimmer niht gefrumen.»
it can you never anything profit.»

152 «Vil liebiu vrowe, ir habt daz wâr:
«Very dear lady, you have the truth:

ich bin ze tump noch dar zuo gar,
I am too foolish yet there to wholly,

daz ich mit iu sô niht enkan
that I with you so not can

gereden, als ich willen hân.
speak, as I will have.

anders pin ich wol sô wîs,
otherwise am I well so wise,

daz ich behalt wol riters prîs
that I keep well knight's prize

iu ze dienest sunder wanc:
to-you to service without wavering:

dar zuo sô bin ich niht ze kranc.»
there to so am I not too weak.»

«Vart von mir, daz ist mîn rât, 153
«Go from me, that is my counsel,

ob iwer lîp iht sinne hât,
if your person any sense has,

lât mit mir iwer rûnen sîn:
let with me your whispering be:

ir wizet wol, man hüetet mîn.
you know well, one guards me.

hât iemen iwer rede vernomen
(if)-has anyone your speech heard

mit mir, daz mac ze schaden komen.
with me, that may to harm come.

ir sült mich mit gemache lân:
you shall me in peace leave:

dêswâr ir sît ein müelîch man.»
truly you are a troublesome man.»

Diu guote sâ hin umbe sach, 154
The good-one at-once thither around looked,

zuo einem ritter sî dô sprach:
to a knight she then spoke:

«ir sult zuo mir ouch rîten her.
«you shall to me also ride hither.

sol bî mir niemen rîten mêr
(if)-shall by me no-one ride more

niwan ein rîter, daz ist niht guot.
except a knight, that is not good.

seht, daz irz immer mêr getuot.
see, that you-it ever more do.

ez stât iu allen übel an,
it stands you all ill on,

sol mit mir rîten wan ein man.»
(if)-shall with me ride but one man.»

155 Ich sprach: «si hât iu reht geseit:
I spoke: «she has you right said:

ez ist zewâr ein unhübscheit.
it is truly a discourtesy.

ich weiz daz wol, ez missestât,
I know that well, it misbecomes,

daz irs selbander rîten lât.
that you-her by-twos ride let.

nu heizet mêr ritter rîten her,
now bid more knights ride hither,

sît dazs an iuch mîn vrowe ger.»
since that-it of you my lady desires.»

mêr danne sehse ir sâ dar riten,
more than six of-them at-once thither rode,

der sus, der sô, nâch ritters siten.
this-one thus, that-one so, after knights' customs.

156 Mîn rede muost mit ir ein ende hân:
My speech must with her an end have:

ich nam urloup und reit von dan.
I took leave and rode from thence.

ich was von herzen hôch gemuot:
I was from heart high spirited:

mich dûht mîn gelinge wære guot,
me seemed my success were good,

daz ich het mîner vreuden schîn
that I had to-my joys' shine

geseit ein teil den willen mîn.
told a part the will mine.

des was ich inneclîche vrô:
of-it was I inwardly glad:

mîn muot gestuont ê nie sô hô.
my spirit stood before never so high.

Dô suoht ich ritterschaft zehant: 157
Then sought I chivalry forthwith:

swâ man die in dem lande vant,
wherever one it in the land found,

dâ muost man mich zewâre sehen
there must one me truly see

und ouch für einen ritter spehen.
and also for a knight espy.

des sumers mir sô wol geschach,
of-the summer to-me so well happened,

daz ich ze rehter tyoste stach
that I in right joust thrust

einen werden ritter nider:
a worthy knight down:

des dancte mir mîn vrowe sider.
for-it thanked me my lady since.

Ich sagt iu mîner sælden mêr, 158
I told you of-my blisses more,

wan daz ich fürhte, der unde der
except that I fear, this-one and that-one

sô spreche, ich rüeme mich ze vil;
so speaks, I boast myself too much;

dâ von ichs vil verswîgen wil.
there from I-it much keep-silent will.

ich was ôt hôhes muotes rîch:
I was just of-high spirit rich:

den sumer fuor ich ritterlîch,
the summer went I knightly,

reht als ein frowen ritter sol:
right as a lady's knight shall:

des muost mir gelingen wol.
therefore must to-me succeed well.

159 Der winder was ôt aber komen,
The winter was just again come,
der sumer het ouch end genomen.
the summer had also end taken.
dô muost man lâzen ritterschaft:
then must one leave chivalry:
dô tiht ich liet und ein botschaft
then composed I songs and a message
und sant ez sâ der nifteln mîn,
and sent it at-once to-the niece mine,
diu immer sælic müeze sîn.
who ever blessed may be.
diu sand si beidiu balde dar,
she sent them both quickly thither,
dâ ich hin diente mîniu jâr.
where I thither served my years.

160 Der bot wart balde dar gesant.
The messenger was quickly thither sent.
er was der guoten wol bekant:
he was to-the good-one well known:
si hiez in willekomen sîn.
she bade him welcome be.
«gnâde» sprach er, «vrowe mîn!
«grace» spoke he, «lady mine!
ich hân ein büechelîn iu brâht:
I have a little-book you brought:
daz sült ir lesen gegen der naht:
that shall you read toward the night:
dâ stêt an ein vil guot gepet.
there stands on a very good prayer.
vil tugentlîchiu vrowe, sêt!»
very virtuous lady, see!»

Daz püechel sâ diu süeze nam, 161
The little-book at-once the sweet-one took,

als ez ir tugenden wol gezam.
as it her virtues well befitted.

si wânde, dâ stüend an ein gepet:
she thought, there stood on a prayer:

diu reine, guote ez ûf tet,
the pure, good-one it up opened,

si schouwet ez hie, si schouwet ez dort:
she looked-at it here, she looked-at it there:

dâ stuonden an vil süeziu wort.
there stood on very sweet words.

dort unde hie siez gar gesach.
there and here she-it wholly saw.

nu hœret, wie daz püechel sprach!
now hear, how the little-book spoke!

VII · THE FIRST LITTLE BOOK

The poet sends his little book to his lady as his messenger. The book fears her anger, and he answers that she will receive it kindly. It agrees to go and pleads for him, and he begs her grace and vows to serve her with shield and spear.

Hie hebt sich daz êrste büechlîn.
Here begins itself the first little-book.

Dîns gelükes walde got, B1,1
Of-thy fortune rule God,

vil kleinez puoch, getreuwer bot,
very little book, faithful messenger,

daz du sæliclîch gevarst
that thou blissfully farest

unde dîn zuht wol bewarst
and thy courtesy well keepest

mit rede, als man ze hove sol!
with speech, as one at court shall!

und kanstu dâ gepâren wol,
and (if)-canst-thou there behave well,

des hân ich frum, du êre
of-it have I profit, thou honor

âne zwîvel immer mêre.
without doubt ever more.

ze als sæliclîcher arebeit
to so blissful labor

maht du gerne sîn bereit.
mayst thou gladly be ready.

wol dînen spehenden ougen,
well to-thy spying eyes,

der heimlich und der tougen,
the secret and the hidden,

die man dich lât ze hove sehen!
which one thee lets at court see!

und kanstu vrowen rehte spehen,
and (if)-canst-thou ladies rightly espy,

so ist sî, der ich dich hân gesant,
so is she, to-whom I thee have sent,

der immer dienen muoz mîn hant,
whom ever serve must my hand,

diu rein, diu süeze, diu guot genant
the pure, the sweet, the good named

und zer besten ûz erkant,
and as-the best out known,

die ich erkenne über elliu lant:
whom I know over all lands:

des sî vor got mîn sælde pfant.
of-that be before God my bliss pledge.

Owê wan gestörstestû von mir B1,21
Alas why-not daredst-thou from me

genendiclîchen künden ir
boldly make-known her

gruoz und al den dienest mîn!
greeting and all the service mine!

möht ez wol mit fuogen sîn,
might it well with fitness be,

und wær sîn niht ein tail ze vil
and were of-it not a part too much

und über mîner mâze zil,
and over my measure's goal,

sô soldes dû ez der guoten sagen,
so shouldst thou it to-the good-one tell,

wie nâhen ich si hân getragen
how near I her have carried

nu lange in mînem muote
now long in my spirit

(got gebe mirz ze guote!);
(God give me-it to good!);

und wie gar ich für elliu wîp
and how wholly I before all women

daz herze mîn und al den lîp,
the heart mine and all the body,

den muot, die sinne und al mîn leben
the spirit, the senses and all my life

ir ze lêhene hân gegeben;
her to fief have given;

und wie gern ich ir hulden,
and how gladly I her favor,

geruochet sîz verdulden,
(if)-deigns she-it endure,

guot, lîp und êre
goods, body and honor

ze dienest immer kêre,
to service ever turn,

diu mîn herz alrêrst entslôz
who my heart first unlocked

und dar in alrêrste schôz
and there into first shot

die gedanke der minne
the thoughts of-the love

und sêre senede sinne.
and sorely longing senses.

daz tet sî aleine,
that did she alone,

si süeze, si reine,
she sweet, she pure,

si hôhe, si werde,
she high, she worthy,

diu werdest ûf der erde
the worthiest upon the earth

von rehter wîbes werdicheit.
of right woman's worthiness.

daz nim ich wol ûf mînen eit,
that take I well on my oath,

daz sî gar âne argen list
that she wholly without evil cunning

mit manegen werden tugenden ist
with many worthy virtues is

werder, denne ich gesprechen müge
worthier, than I speak may

und mir von ir ze sprechen tüge.
and to-me of her to speak befits.

ouch mahtu wol der guoten sagen
also mayst-thou well to-the good-one tell

und nimmêr dar an verzagen,
and never-more there on despair,

daz ich ûf ir genâde gar
that I on her grace wholly

hôch in freuden vliegend var,
high in joys flying go,

sît der sæliclîchen stunt,
since the blissful hour,

daz ich ir tet ein lützel kunt
that I her made a little known

(doch minner denne ich solde
(yet less than I should

und danne mîn wille wolde)
and than my will would)

mîns gernden willen, den ich trage
of-my desiring will, which I bear

gein ir genâden mange tage;
toward her grace many days;

und daz ich ûf ir genâden gewin
and that I on her grace's gain

ir ritter immer gerne bin.
her knight ever gladly am.

daz mac ir güet erlouben wol,
that may her goodness permit well,

dêswâr, als sî von rehte sol.
truly, as she by right shall.

sît ich von kinde her ir kneht
since I from child hither her servant

bin gewesen, sô hât si reht,
am been, so has she right,

daz sî mich lâze ir ritter sîn.
that she me let her knight be.

ich tuon ir den dienest schîn,
I make her the service shown,

des sich ir prîs niht darf geschamen.
of-which herself her prize not need be-ashamed.

ez muoz in ir vil werden namen
it must in her very worthy name

immer mêre sîn getân,
ever more be done,

swaz dienstes ich gedienen kan.
whatever of-service I serve can.

dar zuo dien ir mîn niwer sanc.
there to serves her my new song.

dunk aber ich si dar zuo kranc
(if)-seem however I her there to weak

von mînen tumben jungen tagen,
from my foolish young days,

daz ich die bürde niht müg getragen,
that I the burden not may bear,

als sî vil guote mir verjach
as she very good-one to-me declared

nâhest, dô ich si jungest sach,
latest, when I her last saw,

durch mînen willen ir doch sage,
for my will her yet tell,

swie tumb ich doch sî der tage,
however foolish I yet be of-the days,

ich sî doch wol sô sinne grîs,
I be yet well so of-sense gray,

daz ich behalt wol ritters prîs,
that I keep well knight's prize,

ob sîs ze dienst geruochen wil.
if she-it to service deign will.

bot, ichn getar dir niht sô vil
messenger, I dare thee not so much

enpfelhen, als ich wolde,
entrust, as I would,

ob ich mit hulden solde,
if I with favor should,

wan reht als ich getrûwe dir.
for right as I trust thee.

und pringestu liebiu mære mir,
and (if)-bringest-thou dear tidings me,

sô stât für wâr mîn freude hô,
so stands for true my joy high,

und pin ouch immer mêre vrô.
and am also ever more glad.

lieber bot, nu wirbe alsô!
dear messenger, now woo so!

«Swaz ir gebiet, daz sî getân. B1,94
«Whatever you command, that be done.

künd ich, als ich willen hân,
could I, as I will have,

iwer botschaft erwerben,
your message achieve,

ich enliez si niht verderben.
I let it not perish.

möht ich si wol volenden,
might I it well complete,

mich möht sîn niht erwenden
me might of-it not turn-away

weiz got kein unmuoze mîn.
knows God no busyness mine.

nu lât in iwern hulden sîn,
now let in your favor be,

daz ich iu mîn angest sage,
that I you my fear tell,

die ich gein disen dingen trage.
which I toward these things bear.

ich weiz wol, wie ez ze hove stât,
I know well, how it at court stands,

dâ frow Melde spehent gât
where lady Telltale spying goes

und nimet ôt aller dinge war.
and takes just of-all things heed.

dâ würd ich ze spote gar:
there would-become I to mockery wholly:

wan ich bin unhovebære.
for I am uncourtly.

ditz ist mîn meistiu swære.
this is my greatest grief.

sô rehte reines wîbes hant,
so right pure woman's hand,

die ir mir ofte vor habt genant,
whom you me often before have named,

wie getorst ich die gereichen an?
how dared I that touch on?

und wære ich als ir ein man
and were I as you a man

(des ich leider niht enpin),
(which I alas not am),

und het ich tûsent manne sin,
and had I thousand men's sense,

ich müest die vart besorgen wol.
I must the journey take-care-of well.

niemen mir daz wîzen sol.
no-one me that reproach shall.

wan zürnet sî die boteschaft,
for (if)-is-angry she at-the message,

si hât den gewalt und ouch di kraft
she has the power and also the strength

(sô wol erkenne ich vrowen zorn),
(so well know I ladies' anger),

daz ich daz leben hân verlorn.
that I the life have lost.

si gepiutet über mich zehant
she commands over me forthwith

in ir zorn, daz ich verbrant
in her anger, that I burned

werde ûf einem rôste.
be on a gridiron.

wer kumt mir dâ ze trôste?
who comes to-me there to comfort?

oder mir geschiht ze lîden
or to-me happens to suffer

von ir ein solhez snîden,
from her a such cutting,

daz nimmer geheilet.
which never healed.

baz dann gevierteilet,
better than quartered,

klein als daz in der sunne vert,
small as that-which in the sun goes,

ist mir vil lîht aldâ beschert.
is to-me very easily there allotted.

sol aber ez mir sô wol ergân
shall however it to-me so well befall

(des ich niht gedingen hân),
(which I not hope have),

daz sî sich zornes mâze
that she herself of-anger moderate

und mich ze rede lâze,
and me to speech let,

als ich ir mîn rede gesage,
when I her my speech tell,

sâ von dem selben tage
at-once from the same day

muoz ich die vinster bûwen.
must I the darkness inhabit.

ich mac des wol getrûwen,
I may of-it well trust,

ez heize lade, ez heize schrîn,
it be-called box, it be-called shrine,

daz ich dâ muoz verslozen sîn
that I there must locked be

als in dem karkære.
as in the prison.

von susgetâner swære
from such-made grief

mag ich wol verderben:
may I well perish:

und daz ich solde werben,
and that I should woo,

daz ist dâ von verdarben gar.»
that is there from perished wholly.»

B1,147 Nein, sô ich immer wol gevar:
No, so I ever well fare:

dîn angest ist gar âne alle nôt.
thy fear is wholly without all need.

wer solde ouch gern in den tôt
who should also gladly into the death

sînen lieben boten senden?
his dear messenger send?

mîn houbt wold ich verpfenden,
my head would I pledge,

het ich wider si missetân
had I against her misdone

(des ich willen nie gewan),
(of-which I will never won),

daz sî ir zuht iht bræche,
that she her courtesy anything broke,

daz si dir iht arges spræche.
that she to-thee anything evil spoke.

dû solt mir gelouben daz:
thou shalt me believe that:

ez wirt dir erboten baz,
it is to-thee offered better,

danne ob du wærst des keisers kint:
than if thou wert the emperor's child:

sô rehte grôz ir tugent sint.
so right great her virtues are.

waz solt dir grœzer êre,
what should to-thee greater honor,

waz woldestu sælden mêre
what wouldst-thou of-blisses more

danne die heinlîch, als dir
than the intimacy, as to-thee

wirt erscheinet von ir?
is shown by her?

und sold ich dir glîch nâhen sîn
and should I to-thee like near be

der lieben, werden vrowen mîn,
to-the dear, worthy lady mine,

dâ für næm ich niht den grâl,
there for took I not the grail,

den der küene, werde Parcifâl
which the bold, worthy Parzival

mit ritterlîcher arebeit
with knightly labor

alsô kumberlîch erstreit.
so toilsomely won-by-fighting.

ich næm die selben wird aldâ
I took the same worth there

für ein küncrîche anderswâ,
before a kingdom elsewhere,

und het für wâr ir minne solt
and had for true her love's pay

lieber denn al der heiden golt;
dearer than all the heathens' gold;

daz aber dû verswîgen solt.
that however thou keep-silent shalt.

B1,175 Owê kundestû verdagen,
Alas couldst-thou be-silent,

ich solde dir noch ein tougen sagen
I should thee yet a secret tell

umb ein wünschen, daz ich hân
about a wishing, that I have

nû vil mange zît getân
now very many-a time done

mit herzen und mit munde
with heart and with mouth

von getriwes herzen grunde.
from faithful heart's ground.

des kund ich mich niht mâzen
of-it could I myself not moderate

noch deheine zît verlâzen,
nor any time leave-off,

sît ich ze boten gedâhte dîn:
since I to messenger thought thee:

ich wunschet, daz ichz du solde sîn.
I wished, that I-it thou should be.

zehant als du kumst aldar,
forthwith as thou comest thither,

und dich ir wîze hande clâr
and thee her white hands bright

beginnent ze wenden
begin to turn

vor güete in mangen enden,
for goodness in many places,

und an dich kêrt dicke
and on thee turns often

ir tougen spilnde plicke
her secretly playing glances

und an dich gewendet ir rôten munt,
and on thee turned her red mouth,

sâ an der selben stunt
at-once at the same hour

wolt ich dar ab ein küssen steln.
would I there off a kiss steal.

daz solt aber du mit triwen heln.
that shouldst however thou with faithfulness hide.

sold ich ez mit heile pringen dan,
should I it with luck bring away,

wer wær ich danne, ich sælic man!
who were I then, I blessed man!

ich wær ôt freuden rîche,
I were just of-joys rich,

den engeln vil gelîche
to-the angels very like

âne zwîvel immer mê.
without doubt ever more.

owê des und immer wê,
alas of-it and ever woe,

daz ich die vart belîben sol:
that I the journey remain shall:

daz tuot mir anders denne wol.
that does me otherwise than well.

doch strîchent âne lougen dar
yet roam without denying thither

mîn herz und all mîn sinne gar
my heart and all my senses wholly

und redent mînes willen vil,
and speak of-my will much,

doch niender über rehtez zil,
yet nowhere over right goal,

wan als ir êren wol gezimt.
but as her honor well befits.

mîn herz im fürbaz niht nimt
my heart to-itself further not takes

deheinen wunsch durch minne rât,
any wish for love's counsel,

wan als ir êren rehte stât.
but as her honor rightly stands.

hât aber mich mîn tumber gedanc
has however me my foolish thought

an steln oder an deheinen kranc
to stealing or to any weakness

verleitet gegen der vrowen mîn,
misled toward the lady mine,

bot, daz sol verswigen sîn
messenger, that shall kept-silent be

und niht ze mære werden brâht,
and not to tidings be brought,

wan ich sîn weiz got nie gedâht.
for I of-it knows God never thought.

mir wær der gedanke alze vil:
to-me were the thought all-too much:

nimmer ich sô tumben wil
never I so foolish-be will

noch mîn fuoge gekrenken,
nor my propriety weaken,

mit wünschen noch mit denken
with wishes nor with thinking

mich nimmer vergâhen
me never be-hasty

in ir heinlîch ze nâhen
into her intimacy to near

âne urloup vrävellîch.
without leave boldly.

«Herre, ist sî sô tugentrîch, B1,224
«Lord, is she so virtue-rich,

als ir mir ofte habt geseit,
as you me often have said,

sô bin ich des vil unverzeit,
so am I of-it very undaunted,

ich versuoche, swie so ez mir ergê,
I try, however so it to-me befall,

wie ez umbe ir genâde stê,
how it about her grace stand,

und wil di vart niht langer sparn.
and will the journey not longer spare.

got müez iwer gelücke an mir bewarn!
God may your fortune on me keep!

wünscht mir heils und glückes nâ!
wish me luck and fortune after!

vind ich niht grôz genâde dâ,
(if)-find I not great grace there,

sô kan ich nein, sô kan ich jâ.
so can I no, so can I yes.

B1,234 Gnâde, vrowe gnâdenrîch:
Grace, lady grace-rich:

gnâdet mir genâdiclîch!
grace me graciously!

gnâde bî gewalte wol gezimt.
grace beside power well befits.

ob iwer gnâde güetlîch vernimt,
if your grace kindly hears,

swaz ich iwern gnâden sagen sol,
whatever I to-your grace tell shall,

so ist iwer güete gnâden vol.
so is your goodness of-grace full.

mich hât ûf genâde her gesant,
me has on grace hither sent,

der gnâden gert von iwer hant,
who grace desires from your hand,

und enbiut iu, hêriu vrowe mîn,
and announces you, noble lady mine,

gruoz und al den dienest sîn
greeting and all the service his

ûf iwer gnâde vil verre,
on your grace very far,

iwer eigen man, mîn herre,
your own man, my lord,

und giht iu, frowe, für elliu wîp,
and declares you, lady, before all women,

daz ir ze reht über sînen lîp
that you by right over his person

vrowe und gebieterinne sît.
lady and commander are.

dâ wider hât sîn herze strît
there against has his heart strife

und wil des nimmer ab gestân,
and will of-it never off stand,

ez sî iu gern undertân
it be to-you gladly subject

mit der reinen eigenschaft,
with the pure ownership,

die man dâ heizet triwen kraft.
which one there calls faithfulness's power.

der strît ist ungescheiden
the strife is undivided

immer zwischen in beiden,
ever between them both,

dem herzen und dem lîbe,
the heart and the body,

daz nie deheinem wîbe
that never to-any woman

sô gerne noch sô schône
so gladly nor so beautifully

nâch minneclîchem lône
after loving reward

ein herze und ein lîp
a heart and a body

gedient als er iu, sælic wîp.
served as he you, blessed woman.

ich hân den muot an im erkant,
I have the spirit in him known,

der mich ze boten hât gesant,
who me as messenger has sent,

und erkenne in des hercen wol,
and know him of-the heart well,

swâ mit ein ritter immer sol
where with a knight ever shall

sîn meinclîchez meinen
his loving meaning

lûtterlîche erscheinen
purely show

sô rehte reinem wîbe,
to-so right pure woman,

ir herzen und ir lîbe:
her heart and her person:

des hât er willen unde muot
of-it has he will and spirit

iu ze leisten, frowe guot.
you to render, lady good.

ouch hân ich des sîn sicherheit,
also have I of-it his assurance,

die hœhsten wirde und sælicheit,
the highest worth and blessedness,

der er von al der werlte gert,
which he of all the world desires,

daz er der wær dâ mit gewert,
that he of-it were there with granted,

ob ir geruochen wolt
if you deign would

daz er iu dienen solt.
that he you serve should.

der genâden wær doch niht ze vil
the grace were yet not too much

(mit hulden ich daz sprechen wil):
(with favor I that speak will):

ez entrüempt iuch, vrowe reine,
it robs-of-glory you, lady pure,

lützel unde cleine,
little and small,

und minnert iwer gnâden hort
and lessens your grace's hoard

minner vil denne umb ein ort.
less much than by a point.

nu lât in einen heiden sîn,
now let him a heathen be,

den getriwen lieben herren mîn:
the faithful dear lord mine:

næmt ir sînes getriwen willen war,
took you of-his faithful will heed,

den er âne valsch sô rehte gar
which he without falseness so right wholly

iu ze dienest hât gewant,
to-you to service has turned,

het ir den ze rehte erkant,
had you that to right known,

er deuht iwch wol genâden wert
he seemed you well of-grace worthy

in der mâze, als er ie gert,
in the measure, as he ever desires,

und belibe doch iwer werder nam
and remains yet your worthy name

âne schaden und âne scham.
without harm and without shame.

waz schadet der bluomenrîchen heide
what harms the flower-rich heath

an ir ougen weide
in its eyes' pasture

und an ir liehten glanze,
and in its bright glow,

ob man ze einem kranze
if one to a garland

ein teil ir bluomen brichet?
a part its flowers breaks?

ouch wæn ich niemen wîser sprichet,
also think I no-one wiser speaks,

daz ez schade müge sîn,
that it harm may be,

swâ einem fiwer ein fiwerlîn
where from-a fire a little-fire

wan durch leuhten wirt genomen:
but for lighting is taken:

ez schadet niht und mac gefromen.
it harms not and may profit.

nu erschînet im, reiniu vrowe guot,
now appear to-him, pure lady good,

als ouch diu sunne den mânen tuot:
as also the sun to-the moon does:

den entzündet sî alsam ein lieht,
it kindles she like a light,

und schadet doch ir schîne niht.
and harms yet her shine not.

sît ez in sô hôhe frumet
since it him so highly profits

und ez iu niht ze schaden kumet,
and it you not to harm comes,

ob ir iuch underwindet sîn,
if you yourself undertake of-him,

des getriwen lieben herren mîn,
the faithful dear lord mine,

und sol daz iwer genâde sîn,
and shall that your grace be,

so ist iwer gnâde wol der schîn,
so is your grace well the shine,

den er für wâr wol heizen mac
which he for true well call may

freuden schîn und sælden tac.
joys' shine and blisses' day.

nu lât mich, sælic vrowe guot,
now let me, blessed lady good,

durch iwern reinen, süezen muot
for your pure, sweet spirit

mînem herren pringen hin
to-my lord bring thither

von iwern gnâden den gewin,
from your grace the gain,

daz ich gein sîner frâge sâ
that I toward his question at-once

mit freuden müeze sprechen: «jâ!
with joys may speak: «yes!

gnâde ist endelîchen dâ!»
grace is truly there!»

Gnâde, frowe, ob ich hân B1,323
Grace, lady, if I have

gein iwern gnâden iht missetân,
toward your grace anything misdone,

daz ich iu bî fremder hant
that I you by strange hand

und âne urloup hân gesant
and without leave have sent

mînen muot und mîn botschaft.
my spirit and my message.

daz gebôt mir der liebe craft
that commanded me the love's power

und diu triwe, die ich trage
and the faithfulness, which I bear

gein iwern hulden mange tage.
toward your favor many days.

hât mîn bot unreht gepeten,
(if)-has my messenger wrongly asked,

ich wil in nimmer des vertreten,
I will him never for-it defend,

er enlîde puoze darumbe
he unless-suffer penance therefor

als von rehte ein tumbe.
as by right a fool.

hât er sölhes iht gegert,
(if)-has he such anything desired,

des ich iuch niht duncke wert,
of-which I you not seem worthy,

beidiu ze nider oder ze kranc,
both too low or too weak,

hât er âne mînen danc
(if)-has he without my consent

gemuotet, sælic vrowe mîn,
requested, blessed lady mine,

daz ir mich lât ze dienste iu sîn,
that you me let to service you be,

getorst er ie sô hôhe gepiten
dared he ever so high ask

ein wîp mit alsô reinen siten,
a woman with so pure manners,

spræche ich, frowe, «daz ist mir leit»,
spoke I, lady, «that is to-me sorrowful»,

dran begienge ich grôze unstæticheit.
therein committed I great inconstancy.

wan sold ich ez bî dem eide sagen
for should I it by the oath say

und die wârheit niht verdagen,
and the truth not conceal,

sô seit ich, daz mir wære
so said I, that to-me were

lîp unde guot unmære,
body and goods indifferent,

het er halt die bet vermiten:
had he even the request avoided:

wan ich wil ir selbe piten
for I will her self ask

immer, al die wil ich lebe.
ever, all the while I live.

ich erwerbe an iu die selben gebe:
I win from you the same gift:

ez ist mîn immer werndiu ger.
it is my ever lasting desire.

sol ich mit schilde und mit sper
(if)-shall I with shield and with spear

immer riters prîs bejagen,
ever knight's prize win,

wirt immer fiwer ûz helm geslagen
(if)-is ever fire out-of helmet struck

und verhowen schildes rant
and hewn-to-pieces shield's rim

mit swertes swanc von mîner hant,
with sword's swing from my hand,

wirt immer sô von mir gestriten,
(if)-is ever so by me fought,

daz der boinder wirt geriten
that the charge is ridden

mit rehter hurt aldar gezilt,
with right onset thither aimed,

wirt sölhes iht von mir gespilt,
(if)-is such anything by me played,

daz ritterschaft geheizen mac:
that chivalry be-called may:

so geleb ich nimmer lieben tac,
so live I never dear day,

ob daz anders iht geschehe,
if that otherwise anything happen,

wan daz ich des prîses jehe,
except that I of-the prize declare,

vrowe, iwern hulden,
lady, your favor,

und wil ouch gerne dulden
and will also gladly endure

durch iwers prîses êre
for your prize's honor

die wâge immer mêre,
the venture ever more,

swâ man nâch prîse ringet.
wherever one after prize wrestles.

swie mir dar an gelinget,
however to-me there on succeeds,

ich erwerbe wird oder scham,
I win worth or shame,

des sî getiwert iwer nam.
of-it be ennobled your name.

sol mir immer prîs geschehen,
(if)-shall to-me ever prize happen,

des muoz ich iu ze prîse jehen:
of-it must I you to praise declare:

wan er wirt durch iuch bejagt.
for it is through you won.

ouch bin ich des vil unverzagt,
also am I of-it very undaunted,

swaz frowen gnâde sî genant,
whatever ladies' grace be named,

ez müg an iu mîn dientiu hant
it may with you my serving hand

bî mînen jugentlîchen tagen
in my youthful days

vil sæliclîche noch bejagen.
very blissfully yet win.

ez ligt an iu aleine
it lies on you alone

der trôst, den ich dâ meine,
the comfort, which I there mean,

und aller mîner freuden bejac,
and of-all my joys' gain,

dar zuo mîn ôsterlîcher tac.
there to my Easter day.

daz weiz er wol, dem niemen niht geliegen mac.
that knows he well, to-whom no-one anything lie may.

VIII · THE LADY'S ANSWER

The lady asks the messenger who sent him, reads the little book and the letter with Song III, and sends the book back, saying it holds a good prayer she will do without. For ten days Ulrich keeps it unread in his bosom until his scribe returns and finds verses she has added, which say that whoever desires what he should not has refused himself. Ulrich resolves to serve her all the same.

Dô sî gelas daz büechelîn, 162
When she read the little-book,

diu tugentrîche frowe mîn,
the virtue-rich lady mine,

si sprach ze dem boten alzehant:
she spoke to the messenger forthwith:

«sag an, wer hât dich her gesant?
«say on, who has thee hither sent?

daz soltu mir vil rehte sagen
that shalt-thou me very rightly tell

und die wârheit niht verdagen.
and the truth not conceal.

durch wen bistû geriten her?»
for whom art-thou ridden hither?»

«durch mîne frowen», sô sprach er.
«for my lady», so spoke he.

163 «Sît dich dîn frowe zuo mir hât
«Since thee thy lady to me has

gesant, weistû, waz hie an stât?
sent, knowest-thou, what here on stands?

daz sag mir ûf die triwe dîn!»
that tell me on the faithfulness thine!»

«vil hôchgelobtiu frowe mîn,
«very highly-praised lady mine,

ez ist mir weizgot unbekant:
it is to-me God-knows unknown:

des sî vor got mîn sælde pfant!
of-that be before God my bliss pledge!

mîn frowe mir anders niht kunt tet,
my lady me otherwise nothing known made,

si jach, dâ stüend an ein gepet.
she declared, there stood on a prayer.

164 «Si hât ouch iu bî mir gesant
«She has also you by me sent

einen brief, daz unbekant
a letter, that unknown

ist mir gar, swaz dar an stât,
is to-me wholly, what there on stands,

wan daz si mich in iu geben bat.
except that she me it you give bade.

nu nemt in, vrowe, von mir hin
now take it, lady, from me thither

und wizet daz, swie junc ich bin,
and know that, however young I am,

ich kan ein botschaft werben wol
I can a message conduct well

und ouch verswîgen, swaz ich sol.»
and also keep-silent, whatever I shall.»

Den brief enpfie ir wîziu hant:
The letter received her white hand:

si sprach ze dem boten sâ zehant:
she spoke to the messenger at-once forthwith:

«friunt, du solt belîben hie!»
«friend, thou shalt remain here!»

diu wol gemuote danne gie
the well spirited-one thence went

in ir heimlîch, dâ si las,
into her privacy, where she read,

swaz an dem brief geschriben was.
whatever on the letter written was.

den brief diu süeze, wol getân
the letter the sweet-one, well made

las: dâ stuonden diu liet an:
read: there stood the songs on:

III. Ein langiu wîse, und ist diu dritte.
III. A long tune, and is the third.

Vrouwe, liebiu vrouwe mîn,
Lady, dear lady mine,

an dînem dienst ich niht verzage.
in thy service I not despair.

Swie du wilt, sô wil ich sîn:
However thou wilt, so will I be:

dâ bî sô merke, waz ich sage.
there by so mark, what I say.

Frouwe, ich weiz wol, ob mir dînen friundes gruoz
Lady, I know well, whether me thy friend's greeting

niht verdienent mîne jungen besten tage,
not earn my young best days,

daz ich in sorgen alten muoz.
that I in sorrows grow-old must.

Mîn herz gibt mir wîsen rât,
My heart gives me wise counsel,

swie tumb ez von den jâren sî,
however foolish it in the years be,

Daz ich ir, diu tugende hat,
That I her, who virtues has,

sî mit stætem dienste bî.
be with steadfast service by.

Sît ez mir sô stæten rât mit triuwen gît,
Since it me so steadfast counsel with faithfulness gives,

des doch mir der lîp, der muot noch nie wart vrî,
of-which yet to-me the body, the spirit nor never was free,

des volge ich im gar âne strît.
of-it follow I it wholly without strife.

Dô ich êrste sin gewan,
When I first sense won,

dô riet mir daz herze mîn,
then counseled me the heart mine,

Ob ich immer würde ein man,
If I ever became a man,

sô solte ich ir ze dienste sîn.
so should I her to service be.

Nû ist mir komen diu zît, daz ich ir dienen sol:
Now is to-me come the time, that I her serve shall:

nû helf mir got, daz ich ir tuo den dienest schîn,
now help me God, that I her make the service shown,

dâ von ich leides mich erhol.
there from I of-sorrow me recover.

Sie ist über mînen lîp
She is over my person

frouwe und al des herzen mîn,
lady and all the heart mine,

Sie vil wunderwerdez wîp:
She very wondrous-worthy woman:

nu wes sold ich ie gerner sîn?
now whose should I ever more-gladly be?

Wolde sie den dienest mîn und mînen sanc,
Would she the service mine and my song,

wâ würd immer mir sô grôz genâden schîn?
where would-become ever to-me so great grace's shine?

wâ fünde ich sô reht hôhen danc?
where found I so right high thanks?

Wâ möht mir sô hôhe komen
Where might to-me so high come

mîn dienst und al mîn arebeit?
my service and all my labor?

Wan die ich mir hân genomen,
For she-whom I to-me have taken,

diu hât schœn unde werdekeit.
she has beauty and worthiness.

Hôher muot, du twingest mir den lîp ze hôch,
High spirit, thou forcest me the body too high,

und ist dir daz herze mîn dar zuo bereit,
and is to-thee the heart mine there to ready,

wanz ie die nidern minne flôch.
for-it ever the low love fled.

Nideriu minne, an freuden tôt
Low love, on joys dead

ist er, dem sie an gesigt.
is he, whom it on conquers.

Gibt diu hôhe senede nôt,
(If)-gives the high longing distress,

doch wol im, der der selben pfligt!
yet well him, who the same keeps!

Sie gît sorge, und ist diu sorge freuden rîch.
It gives sorrow, and is the sorrow of-joys rich.

frou, daz dich diu sorge mîn sô ringe wigt,
lady, that thee the sorrow mine so lightly weighs,

dâ von sô sorge ich stæticlîch.
there from so sorrow I steadily.

Nu merket rehte, waz ich sage. 166
Now mark rightly, what I say.

der bote was dâ zwêne tage:
the messenger was there two days:

dô sand nâch im diu frowe mîn.
then sent after him the lady mine.

si sprach: «nim hin daz püechelîn
she spoke: «take away the little-book

und füer ez dîner frowen wider.
and bring it to-thy lady back.

ich hân ez gelesen ofte sider.
I have it read often since.

ein guot gepete zwâr dran stât:
a good prayer truly thereon stands:

waz dann? ich wils doch haben rât.»
what then? I will-it yet have spared.»

Der bot der nam daz büechelîn 167
The messenger he took the little-book

und fuort ez wider der frowen sîn.
and brought it back to-the lady his.

diu tet ez ûf: dô vant si mê
she opened it up: then found she more

dar an geschriben wol denn ê:
there on written well than before:

dô sand sî mirz alzehant.
then sent she to-me-it forthwith.

dô ich dar an geschriben vant
when I there on written found

mêr, des wart mîn herze vrô,
more, of-it became my heart glad,

und gedâhte wider mich alsô:
and thought toward me so:

168 «Waz ob si lîhte hât hie an
«What if she perhaps has here on
mir enboten, dâ von ich hân
to-me announced, there from I have
immer mêre hôhen muot?
ever more high spirit?
ich weiz vil wol, daz sî ist guot.
I know very well, that she is good.
ob sî mir hât ir friundes gruoz
if she to-me has her friend's greeting
her enboten, dâ von ich muoz
hither announced, there from I must
immer mêre mit freuden leben
ever more with joys live
und al mîn trûren gar ûf geben.»
and all my sadness wholly up give.»

169 Mîn schrîber bî mir niht enwas,
My scribe by me not was,
der mir mîn heinlîch brieve las
who to-me my private letters read
und ouch mîn heimlîch ofte schreip;
and also my secret often wrote;
dâ von daz büechelîn beleip
there from the little-book remained
ungelesen zehen tage.
unread ten days.
bî mînen triwen ich iu sage,
by my faithfulness I you tell,
daz al die zît daz büechelîn
that all the time the little-book
mir nie kom ûz dem buosem mîn.
to-me never came out-of the bosom mine.

Swann ich des nahtes slâffens pflac, 170
Whenever I of-the night of-sleeping took-care,

daz büechlîn nâhen bî mir lac.
the little-book near by me lay.

ich het ez liep ûf sölhen wân:
I had it dear on such hope:

ich wând des, dâ stüende an
I thought of-it, there stood on

von mîner frowen eteswaz,
from my lady something,

dâ von mir seneden würde baz.
there from to-me longing-one would-become better.

ûf den gedingen was ich vrô:
on the hope was I glad:

mîn muot der stuont mir hôhe hôh.
my spirit it stood to-me high high.

In der zît mîn schrîber quam, 171
In the time my scribe came,

den ich in eine heinlîch nam:
whom I into a privacy took:

ez muoste vil verholne sîn.
it must very secret be.

ich bat in lesen daz büchelîn.
I bade him read the little-book.

dô er ez gelas, dô stuont dar an,
when he it read, then stood there on,

daz ich iu wol gesagen kan:
what I you well tell can:

ez stuont ze jungest geschriben hie,
it stood at last written here,

nu hœret reht, ich sag iu wie:
now hear rightly, I tell you how:

a Ez sprichet manic man,
It speaks many-a man,

des in sîn herze niht gelêren kan,
which him his heart not teach can,

wan als er von fremdem dinge
but as he of strange thing

gert ze gewinnen sinne.
desires to gain senses.

swer muotet, des er niht ensol,
whoever desires, that-which he not shall,

der hât im selb versaget wol.
he has to-himself self refused well.

swer muotet, des er niht ensol,
whoever desires, that-which he not shall,

der hât im selb versaget wol.
he has to-himself self refused well.

swer muotet, des er niht ensol,
whoever desires, that-which he not shall,

der hât im selb versaget wol.
he has to-himself self refused well.

172 Dô mir gelesen wart hier an,
When to-me read was here on,

als ich iu gesaget hân,
as I you told have,

daz tet mir wê und niender wol.
that did me woe and nowhere well.

mîn herze daz wart trûrens vol:
my heart it became of-sadness full:

mîn lîp mich allenthalben swar.
my body me everywhere ached.

ich sprach: «nu dar! nu dar! nu dar!
I spoke: «now on! now on! now on!

swie mir diu reine, süeze tuot,
however to-me the pure, sweet-one does,

daz muoz von reht mir dunken guot.
that must by right to-me seem good.

Swaz sî gesprechen kan gein mir, 173
Whatever she speak can toward me,

daz sol ich allez danken ir.
that shall I all thank her.

sît daz ich mich ir hân gegeben,
since that I myself to-her have given,

sô sol ich nâch ir willen leben.
so shall I after her will live.

si tuo mir übel oder wol,
she do me ill or well,

mîn lîp ir immer dienen sol
my person her ever serve shall

mit triwen biz an mînen tôt;
with faithfulness until to my death;

dâ von mich pringet nimmer nôt.
there from me brings never need.

Ich wil ôt alle mîne tage 174
I will just all my days

sô mit freuden, sô mit clage
so with joys, so with lament

ir einer unde niemen mê,
to-her alone and no-one more,

sô ich immer frô gestê,
so I ever glad stand,

vercinsen elliu mîniu jâr.
pay-tribute all my years.

swar ich kêr unde swar ich var,
whither I turn and whither I go,

sô wil ich wan ir einer leben:
so will I but to-her alone live:

sus hân ich ir den lîp gegeben.
thus have I her the body given.

175 Swie kind ich von den jâren sî,
However child I in the years be,

mir sint iedoch die witze bî,
to-me are yet the wits by,

daz ich mich des vil wol verstân,
that I me of-it very well understand,

daz nimmer wirt noch werden kan
that never is nor become can

in der werlt dehein ander wîp,
in the world any other woman,

von der mîn herze, von der mîn lîp
from whom my heart, from whom my body

müge komen immer alsô hô
may come ever so high

oder werden immer alsô vrô.
or become ever so glad.

176 Dâ von sô wil ich dienen ir
There from so will I serve her

mit triwen, daz geloube mir.
with faithfulness, that believe me.

verendet sich der winder lanc,
(if)-ends itself the winter long,

ez ist mîn muot und mîn gedanc,
it is my spirit and my thought,

daz ich ir dien aber eteswaz,
that I her serve again something,

dâ von ich ir gevalle baz.
there from I her please better.

ich wil den lîp und ouch daz guot
I will the body and also the goods

durch si wâgen, daz ist mîn muot.»
for her venture, that is my spirit.»

IX · THE PARLEY AT FRIESACH

When Margrave Heinrich of Istria threatens war on the prince of Carinthia, Duke Leopold of Austria calls a parley at Friesach for Saint Philip's day, the first of May. Ulrich and his brother Dietmar announce chivalry there, and princes, counts, barons, and vassals gather from every land, six hundred knights under shield, with more than ten churchmen come to make the peace. Ulrich pitches his tents before the town, and the jousting lasts all day: spears and legs are broken, many are unhorsed or lie senseless, and the night comes as a relief.

Âventiure von dem turnay ze Frisach.
Adventure of the tournament at Friesach.

Nu was ez gegen der vasten komen: 177
Now was it toward the Lent come:

ein niwez mære was vernomen.
a new tidings was heard.

ez wolt der margrâve Heinrîch,
it would the margrave Heinrich,

der hôchgelobt von Ysterîch,
the highly-praised of Istria,

einen fürsten grîffen an,
a prince attack on,

den ich iu wol genennen kan:
whom I you well name can:

von Kärnden hiez der hôchgemuot,
of Carinthia was-called the high-spirited-one,

der het ouch friunt, leut unde guot.
he had also friends, people and goods.

178 Dô daz mære sô verre quam,
When the tidings so far came,

daz ez der fürst Liupolt vernam
that it the prince Leopold heard

(ich meine den von Œsterrîch),
(I mean the of Austria),

der unterstuont ez willeclîch.
he undertook it willingly.

er sprach alsô: «ich state sîn niht:
he spoke thus: «I permit of-it not:

dâ würde vil liute von enwiht.
there would-become many people from nothing.

ich wil ez süenen, ob ich mac,
I will it reconcile, if I may,

vil kürzlich machen einen tac.»
very shortly make a day.»

179 Von im ein bot sâ wart gesant,
From him a messenger at-once was sent,

dâ man die fürsten bêde vant.
where one the princes both found.

die gruozt er wol nâch friundes siten
them greeted he well after friend's custom

und hiez si inneclîche biten,
and bade them inwardly ask,

daz sîz in liezen under in
that they-it him let between them

tuon nâch friundes siten hin.
do after friend's custom thither.

dwederre im daz niht verseit:
neither him that at-all refused:

sî wârns im bêdenthalp bereit.
they were-it to-him on-both-sides ready.

Dar nâch nu hœret, wiez geschach: 180
There after now hear, how-it happened:

ein tac wart sâ hin ze Frisach
a day was at-once thither at Friesach

gemachet nâch der fürsten clage,
made after the princes' complaint,

reht an sand Philippen tage,
right on Saint Philip's day,

sô der maye alrêrst in gât
when the May first in goes

und daz der walt geloubet stât
and that the wood leafed stands

und ouch diu heide hât an geleit
and also the heath has on laid

ir wunneclîchez sumercleit.
its delightful summer-dress.

Dô ich des tages wart gewar, 181
When I of-the day became aware,

ich wart sîn frô von herzen gar.
I became of-it glad from heart wholly.

ich kom sâ zuo dem bruoder mîn,
I came at-once to the brother mine,

der ouch kan wol ein ritter sîn.
who also can well a knight be.

ich sprach: «Dietmâr von Liehtenstein,
I spoke: «Dietmar of Liechtenstein,

wir süln werden des enein,
we shall become of-it agreed,

daz wir dâ brüeven ritterschaft:
that we there prove chivalry:

dar kumt von herren grôziu craft.»
thither comes of lords great force.»

182 Er sprach: «du hâst gerâten wol:
He spoke: «thou hast counseled well:

ich volg dir gern, als ich sol.
I follow thee gladly, as I shall.

wir suln uns bêde des bewegen,
we shall us both of-it resolve,

mit rittern in ein fôreis legen;
with knights into a foray lay;

und al die wîle der tac dâ were,
and all the while the day there lasted,

swer an uns ritterschefte gere,
whoever of us knightly-deeds desire,

daz er der werd von uns gewert,
that he of-them be by us granted,

swie er wil unde swie er gert.
however he will and however he desires.

Wir süln ez enbieten in diu lant. 183
We shall it announce into the lands.

wirt ez den rittern reht bekant,
(if)-becomes it to-the knights rightly known,

ir kümt vil maniger zuo uns dar,
of-them comes very many-a-one to us thither,

der lîht die wîle füer anderswar.
who easily the while went elsewhere.

ez ist reht in des mayen zît,
it is right in the May's time,

sô ieslîch ritter sich verlît
when each knight himself lies-idle

ungern, ist er wol gemuot:
unwillingly, (if)-is he well spirited:

dâ von ist ez ze gebieten guot.»
there from is it to announce good.»

«Bruoder», sprach ich, «dû hast wâr. 184
«Brother», spoke I, «thou hast true.

nu sent du hin, sô sent ich dar!»
now send thou thither, so send I thither!»

die boten fuoren alzehant
the messengers went forthwith

allenthalben in diu lant.
everywhere into the lands.

dar kom vil manic ritter guot
thither came very many-a knight good

durch êre gernden rittersmuot;
for honor desiring knight's-spirit;

dar kom ouch maniges ritters lîp
thither came also many-a knight's person

durch anders niht wan durch diu wîp.
for else nothing except for the women.

185 Diu zît was komen und ouch der tac,
The time was come and also the day,

an dem der fürsten sprâche lac.
on which the princes' parley lay.

der herren boten riten dô zuo
the lords' messengers rode then to

dort unde hie, spât unde vruo.
there and here, late and early.

und nâmen herberge in der stat.
and took lodging in the town.

des fürsten Liupoldes marschalc bat,
the prince Leopold's marshal bade,

des rîchen dâ von Œsterrîch,
of-the mighty-one there of Austria,

daz man dâ wære gezogenlîch.
that one there were courteous.

186 Geherberget in die stat
Lodged into the town

wart ieslîch fürst, reht als er bat.
was each prince, right as he bade.

grâven, frîen, dienestman,
counts, barons, vassals,

die ich iu wol genennen kan,
whom I you well name can,

beidiu arme unde rîch
both poor and rich

geherberget wurden ritterlîch:
lodged were knightly:

dise hie, jene dort,
these here, those there,

die in die mitte, jen an daz ort.
those in the middle, those at the end.

Si sint geherberget wol. 187
They are lodged well.

von reht ich iu nu sagen sol,
by right I you now tell shall,

wer herren zuo dem tage quam,
which lords to the day came,

und wem man herberg dâ nam.
and for-whom one lodging there took.

dar kom der fürst ûz Œsterrîch
thither came the prince out-of Austria

und ouch der margrâve Heinrîch
and also the margrave Heinrich

von Ysterîch der wolgemuot:
of Istria the well-spirited-one:

der het vor schanden sich behuot.
who had from disgraces himself guarded.

Dar kom der fürste von Kärnden lant: 188
Thither came the prince of Carinthia's land:

der was her Bernhart genant.
he was sir Bernhard named.

dar kom der margrâve Diepolt
thither came the margrave Diepold

von Voheburc; dem was man holt
of Vohburg; to-him was one devoted

durch sîne tugent: daz was reht.
for his virtue: that was right.

dar kom von Tyrol grâve Albreht,
thither came of Tyrol count Albrecht,

dar kom von Gorze grâve Meinhart,
thither came of Gorizia count Meinhard,

der guot vor êren nie verspart.
who goods from honors never spared.

189 Dar kom von Liubenoue ein degen,
Thither came of Liubenau a warrior,

der kunde grâven êre pflegen.
who could count's honor keep.

von Heunenburc der milte man,
of Heunenburg the generous man,

der het ez vil ungerne lân,
he had it very unwillingly left,

er wær mit rittern ouch dar komen.
he were with knights also thither come.

von im nie bôsheit wart vernomen.
of him never baseness was heard.

dar kom, der milte nie gewan,
thither came, the generous-one never gained,

von Ortenburg grâve Herman.
of Ortenburg count Hermann.

190 Dar kom zewâre ouch grâve Uolrîch
Thither came truly also count Ulrich

von Pfannenberc vil ritterlîch.
of Pfannberg very knightly.

dar kom ouch der von Slûzelberc:
thither came also the of Schlüsselberg:

der tet dâ ritterlîchiu werc.
who did there knightly works.

von Tûfers Hûc der wolgemuot,
of Taufers Hugo the well-spirited,

der kom dar und tet ez dâ guot.
he came thither and did it there good.

von Schowenberc die brüeder sach
of Schaunberg the brothers saw

man dâ lîden ungemach.
one there suffer discomfort.

Von Regenspurc des tuomes vogt 191
Of Regensburg the cathedral's advocate

dâ ritterlîche zwâr in zogt:
there knightly truly in drew:

her Otte hiez er von Lengenbach.
sir Otto was-called he of Lengenbach.

dar kom her Liutolt von Pettach.
thither came sir Leutold of Pettau.

dar kom von Sounecke her Cuonrât;
thither came of Saneck sir Konrad;

von Owersperc, der ritters tât
of Auersperg, the knight's deed

dâ tet. dar nâch sô kom ouch dar
there did. there after so came also thither

von Potensteine her Dietmâr.
of Pottenstein sir Dietmar.

Fürsten, grâven, frîen gar 192
Princes, counts, barons wholly

hân ich genant, swaz ir kom dar:
have I named, whatever of-them came thither:

nu nenn ich iu die dienestman.
now name I you the vassals.

an einem milten heb ich an:
with a generous-one begin I on:

der hiez her Hertnît von Ort,
he was-called sir Hertnit of Ort,

er dient mit milte süeziu wort.
he served with generosity sweet words.

dar kom von Wildonie her Hertnît;
thither came of Wildon sir Hertnit;

der warb umb êre ouch alle zît.
who strove for honor also all time.

193 Dar kom ouch der von Stubenberc:
Thither came also the of Stubenberg:

der het vor êren niender berc.
who had before honors nowhere hid.

dar kom von Muorekke her Reinpreht
thither came of Murek sir Reinprecht

mit rittern vil: daz was sîn reht.
with knights many: that was his right.

dar kom ouch her Ruodolf von Ras,
thither came also sir Rudolf of Ras,

der frî vor allen schanden was:
who free from all disgraces was:

er was milte, küene, guot,
he was generous, bold, good,

getriu, vil ritterlîch gemuot.
faithful, very knightly spirited.

194 Dar kom von Küngesperc ein helt:
Thither came of Königsberg a hero:

sô man die besten gar ûz welt,
when one the best wholly out chooses,

der muoz er immer einer sîn:
of-them must he ever one be:

daz wart dâ volleclîchen schîn.
that became there fully shown.

dar kom von Kranperc her Herman:
thither came of Kranichberg sir Hermann:

der het des besten vil getân.
who had of-the best much done.

von Püten her Offe und zwên Heinrîch,
of Pitten sir Otto and two Heinrichs,

die drî dar kômen vil lobelîch.
the three thither came very praiseworthily.

Von Truhsen Heinrîch und her Kol, 195
Of Trixen Heinrich and sir Kol,

die kômen bêde dar vil wol.
they came both thither very well.

von Græze hern Otten man dâ sach.
of Graz sir Otto one there saw.

sîn bruoder dâ vil sper zebrach:
his brother there many spears broke:

her Ortolf sô was er genant,
sir Ortolf so was he named,

sîn ritterschaft was wol erkant.
his chivalry was well known.

dar kom von Wolkenstein ein degen,
thither came of Wolkenstein a warrior,

des lîp kond ritterschefte wol pflegen.
whose person could knightly-deeds well keep.

Von Stîr her Gundacker kom dar, 196
Of Steyr sir Gundaker came thither,

und ouch sîn bruoder her Dietmâr.
and also his brother sir Dietmar.

dar kom von Tanne her Eckehart:
thither came of Tann sir Eckhart:

der het vor schanden sich bewart.
who had from disgraces himself kept.

her Gundaker von Starkenperc
sir Gundaker of Starhemberg

tet under helm dâ ritterswerc.
did under helmet there knight's-work.

von Nuzperc her Albreht dar quam
of Nussberg sir Albrecht thither came

vil ritterlîch, als ez im zam.
very knightly, as it him befitted.

197 Von Küenringe her Hadmâr
Of Kuenring sir Hadmar

prâht mêr dann drîzic rîtter dar.
brought more than thirty knights thither.

dar kom von Gors her Wölfelîn:
thither came of Gors sir Wölfelin:

der kund wol vrowenritter sîn.
who could well lady's-knight be.

von Schœnkirchen man dâ hiez
of Schönkirchen one there called

einen Otten, der daz niht liez,
an Otto, who that not omitted,

er verstæche dâ grôziu sper.
he broke there great spears.

dar kom von Antschowe her Rüedgêr.
thither came of Anschau sir Rüdiger.

198 Von Stouz her Uolrîch wart enein,
Of Stouz sir Ulrich became agreed,

er unde der von Ottenstein,
he and the of Ottenstein,

daz sî dar kœmen, daz ist wâr.
that they thither came, that is true.

von Schœnenberc kom her Hadmâr.
of Schönberg came sir Hadmar.

dâ was ouch der karge man
there was also the stingy man

von Hakenberc, der wunder kan.
of Hakenberg, who wonders can.

von Kîowe hern Heinrîch man sach
of Kiau sir Heinrich one saw

under helme ze Frisach.
under helmet at Friesach.

Nu hân ich iu die gar genant, 199
Now have I you them wholly named,

die dâ für wâren ûz bekant,
who there for were out known,

daz sî gesellen solden hân.
that they companions should have.

noch kom dar manic biderman
still came thither many-a worthy-man

durch sîn êregernden muot:
for his honor-desiring spirit:

dar kom ouch maniger durch daz guot,
thither came also many-a-one for the goods,

daz er trûwet gewinnen dâ
which he trusted gain there

mit êren baz dann anderswâ.
with honors better than elsewhere.

Nu nenne ich iu die ritter gar, 200
Now name I you the knights wholly,

waz ir kom under schilde dar.
how-many of-them came under shield thither.

der hôchgemuoten überal
of-the high-spirited-ones altogether

was reht sehshundert an der zal.
was right six-hundred in the number.

dâ kômen geistlîch fürsten hin
there came spiritual princes thither

mêr danne zehen, ûf den sin,
more than ten, on the purpose,

sî wolden daz urliuge fürder tuon
they would the war away do

und machen ze einer stæten suon.
and make to a steadfast peace.

201 Herren unde ritter komen
Lords and knights come

sint nû gar, als ir habt vernomen,
are now wholly, as you have heard,

mit hôhem muote in die stat.
with high spirit into the town.

alzehant ich slahen bat
forthwith I pitch bade

für die stat verre ûf daz velt
before the town far on the field

wol zehen hütte und ein gezelt.
well ten huts and a tent.

dâ stiez man für hin unde her
there thrust one before hither and thither

vier panir und fünfhundert sper.
four banners and five-hundred spears.

202 Dâ lâgen bî durch ritters muot
There lay by for knight's spirit

sehs unde drîzic ritter guot.
six and thirty knights good.

die heten alle sich bewegen,
who had all themselves resolved,

daz sî durch frowen wolden pflegen
that they for ladies would keep

ritterschaft nâch ritters siten.
chivalry after knight's custom.

von eteslîchem kûm wart erbiten,
from some-one barely was waited-for,

daz er vant sölhen ungemach,
that he found such discomfort,

dâ sîn hant sper durch lop zebrach.
where his hand spear for praise broke.

Ir sült für wâr gelouben mir, 203
You shall for true believe me,

die naht wir lâgen in der gir:
the night we lay in the eagerness:

wir gerten als diu vederspil.
we desired as the falcons.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
for true I you that tell will:

swer under uns ritterschefte gert,
whoever among us knightly-deeds desired,

der wart des volleclîch gewert
he was of-it fully granted

des morgens, dô diu sunne ûf gie:
in-the morning, when the sun up went:

si zogten zuo uns dort unde hie.
they drew to us there and here.

Si zogten zuo uns ritterlîch 204
They drew to us knightly

mit maniger liehten banir rîch.
with many-a bright banner rich.

gezimirt manger zuo uns reit:
crested many-a-one to us rode:

sô gar diu heid ir sumerkleit
so wholly the heath its summer-dress

hât an, sôn ist si niht sô lieht,
has on, so is it not so bright,

swie lieht man doch ir bluomen siht
however bright one yet its flowers sees

gewahsen durch daz grüene gras,
grown through the green grass,

als dâ gezimirt maniger was.
as there crested many-a-one was.

205 Die grôier liefen hie unde dâ:
The criers ran here and there:

si schrîten: «wâ nu, wâ nu, wâ
they cried: «where now, where now, where

ein ritter, der tyostyrens ger?
a knight, who jousting desires?

der sol komen: herâ her!
he shall come: hither hither!

hie stapfte vil manic ritter guot
here trotted very many-a knight good

under helme hôch gemuot:
under helmet high spirited:

die wellent êre, guot unde lîp
who will honor, goods and person

hie wâgen durch di reinen wîp!»
here venture for the pure women!»

206 Dô wir si sâhen zogen her,
When we them saw draw hither,

unser wille und unser ger
our will and our desire

was zuo den örsen willeclîch:
was to the horses willing:

wir sâzen ûf ouch muotes rîch.
we sat up also of-spirit rich.

sich huob sâ vil manic schœn puneiz.
itself raised at-once very many-a beautiful charge.

ieslîch ritter sich dâ vleiz,
each knight himself there strove,

wie er den andern dâ stæche nider.
how he the other there thrust down.

daz widerfuor ouch manigem sider.
that befell also many-a-one since.

Wol vierzic ringe oder mê 207
Well forty rings or more

dâ wurden, dar ûffe manigem wê
there were, there upon many-a-one woe

wart von ritterlîcher tât.
was by knightly deed.

wan ritterschaft unmuoze hât:
for chivalry busyness has:

swel ritter ritterscheft wil pflegen,
whichever knight chivalry will keep,

der muoz sich muoze gar bewegen.
he must himself of-leisure wholly renounce.

ritterschaft gît werdecheit
chivalry gives worthiness

mit maniger grôzen arebeit.
with many-a great labor.

Diu ritterschaft wert al den tac. 208
The chivalry lasted all the day.

vil maniger dâ tyostirens pflac,
very many-a-one there jousting kept,

der sîn dâ vor ê nie began:
who it there before earlier never began:

sich hetes ouch maniger abe getân,
himself had-it also many-a-one off done,

der ez dâ tet vil ritterlîch.
who it there did very knightly.

man sach dâ manigen muotes rîch:
one saw there many-a-one of-spirit rich:

durch diu reinen, süezen wîp
for the pure, sweet women

dâ maniger zimiret sînen lîp.
there many-a-one crested his person.

209 Dâ wart nâch rîtterlîchen siten
There was after knightly customs

des tages manic bein enzwei geriten.
of-the day many-a leg in-two ridden.

vil maniger sô des hurtes pflac,
very many-a-one so the charge kept,

daz er selb ander dâ nider gelac
that he self second there down lay

ûf der erden sinne lôs.
on the earth senses bare.

vil maniger sô daz orse verlôs,
very many-a-one so the horse lost,

daz man in dâ von verre stach:
that one him there from far thrust:

der leit von spotten ungemach.
he suffered from mocking discomfort.

210 Den tac diu ritterschaft sô wert,
The day the chivalry so lasted,

daz ez der man vant, swie er gert.
that it the man found, however he desired.

die stâchen hie durch hôhen muot,
these thrust here for high spirit,

die andern dort wan umb daz guot:
the others there but for the goods:

dâ tyostirt manges ritters lîp
there jousted many-a knight's person

durch anders niht wan durch diu wîp:
for else nothing except for the women:

sô stâchen die durch lernen dâ,
so thrust these for learning there,

jen durch prîs dort anderswâ.
those for prize there elsewhere.

Diu ritterschaft wert al den tac. 211
The chivalry lasted all the day.

vil drumzen ûff der erde gelac.
many of-splinters on the earth lay.

dâ wâren ritter ouch gelegen,
there were knights also laid,

die nû gemaches muosten pflegen:
who now of-ease must take-care:

dâ leid ouch maniger ungemach,
there suffered also many-a-one discomfort,

der die naht niht gerne sach.
who the night not gladly saw.

der tac was hin, diu naht was komen
the day was gone, the night was come

vil manigem müeden dâ ze fromen.
very many-a weary-one there to profit.

X · THE GREEN KNIGHT

Ulrich breaks thirty spears on the first day. On the second he jousts in his own arms against four knights, then steals away and returns in green arms with eleven servants clad in green. Unrecognized, he breaks spears with Hugo of Taufers, Hadmar of Kuenring, Wolfger of Gors, and Leopold of Lengenburg, and the margrave Heinrich of Istria bids the knights let him ride off unknown. After ten days of jousting Duke Leopold wants more than jousting, the patriarch and the bishops complain of the cost, and the prince of Carinthia proposes a tournament instead, which is divided between the parties.

Si zogten in die stat zehant, 212
They drew into the town forthwith,

dâ guoten gemach ieslîcher vant.
where good ease each-one found.

dô muosten rûmen wir daz velt,
then must vacate we the field,

wir fuoren sâ in daz gezelt:
we went at-once into the tent:

dâ funde wir ouch guot gemach.
there found we also good ease.

von wâren schulden man dô sprach,
from true causes one then spoke,

daz ez des tages het guot getân
that it of-the day had well done

vil manic minnengernder man.
very many-a love-desiring man.

213 Des tages ich mit mîner hant
Of-the day I with my hand

für wâr vol drîzic sper verswant
for true full thirty spears used-up

vil ritterlîchen unde wol.
very knightly and well.

mîn lîp der was gedanke vol:
my person it was of-thoughts full:

ich gedâhte, waz ich tæte dâ,
I thought, what I should-do there,

daz niemen hete ê anderswâ
that no-one had before elsewhere

getân, und daz wære ritterlîch.
done, and that were knightly.

dâ von was ich gedanke rîch.
there from was I of-thoughts rich.

Ich gedâht: «ich wil gar morgen fruo 214
I thought: «I will wholly tomorrow early

mit stechen grîffen aber zuo
with jousting grasp again to

und wil mich danne fürder steln
and will me then away steal

und wil daz vor den leuten heln,
and will that from the people hide,

verholn ûf jenen perc dort komen:
secretly on yonder hill there come:

daz mac an êren mir gefromen:
that may in honors me profit:

gezimirt ritterlîchen wol
crested knightly well

mit mînem schilt daz wesen sol.
with my shield that be shall.

Ich sol gezimirt grüener sîn, 215
I shall crested of-green be,

ich selbe zwelft der knehte mîn:
I self twelfth of-the servants mine:

der sol ieslîcher füeren her
of-them shall each carry hither

in sîner hant mit mir ein sper,
in his hand with me a spear,

und daz daz grüener varbe sî.
and that that of-green color be.

ez sol ouch grüene sîn dâ bî
it shall also green be there by

ir cleit und ouch der pferde dach.»
their clothes and also the horses' covering.»

ich schuof, daz ez alsô geschach.
I arranged, that it so happened.

216 Des andern morgens frô und vruo
Of-the second morning glad and early

die hôchgemuoten zogten zuo.
the high-spirited-ones drew to.

dô was ouch ich vil fruo bereit
then was also I very early ready

von mînem schilde in wâppencleit.
after my shield in coat-of-arms.

die wâren gar nâch meistersiten
which were wholly after master's-custom

von mînem schilde wol gesniten.
after my shield well cut.

gezimirt was mîn helm wol.
crested was my helmet well.

daz herze mîn was freuden vol.
the heart mine was of-joys full.

217 Von Souneke her Kuonrât
Of Saneck sir Konrad

von mir alrêrst bestanden wart.
by me first engaged was.

dar nâch her Liutolt von Petach
there after sir Leutold of Pettau

mit mir vil ritterlîchen stach
with me very knightly jousted

von Küngesperc der biderb man
of Königsberg the worthy man

mich rand ritterlîchen an.
me charged knightly on.

dar nâch von Steunze her Uolrîch
there after of Steunz sir Ulrich

mit mir ouch stach vil ritterlîch.
with me also jousted very knightly.

Ûf disen vieren ich verstach 218
On these four I used-up

driuzehen sper. dô daz geschach,
thirteen spears. when that happened,

dô slôz ich mich in mîn gezelt,
then locked I me in my tent,

verholne rûmet ich daz velt.
secretly vacated I the field.

ich rant hin ûf den berc zehant,
I galloped thither up the hill forthwith,

dâ ich vil schôn bereite vant
where I very beautifully ready found

mîniu grüeniu wâppencleit:
my green coats-of-arms:

diu wurden schier an mich geleit.
they were soon on me laid.

Mîn wâppenroc, mîn decke was 219
My surcoat, my horse-cloth was

von samît grüen als ein gras,
of samite green as a grass,

mîn schilt, mîn helm was grüen gar
my shield, my helmet was green wholly

und mîniu zwelf sper grüen gevar,
and my twelve spears green colored,

mîn knehte grüen, ir pferd alsam:
my servants green, their horses likewise:

ein grüenez sper ich selbe nam
a green spear I self took

mit hôhem muot in mîne hant:
with high spirit into my hand:

ich reit, dâ ich tyostiren vant.
I rode, where I jousting found.

220 Dô ich den perc reit hin zetal,
When I the hill rode thither downward,

die grôier riefen überal:
the criers called everywhere:

«wâ nû ein ritter, wâ nu, wâ?»
«where now a knight, where now, where?»

des was unnôt: wan ich vant dâ
of-it was no-need: for I found there

wol hundert ritter oder mê,
well hundred knights or more,

die tâten alle ein ander wê
who did all one other woe

mit ritterlîcher arebeit.
with knightly labor.

mit grôzem schalle ich zuo in reit.
with great clamor I to them rode.

221 Daz niemen dâ erkande mich,
That no-one there recognized me,

des freut mîn tumbez herze sich.
of-it rejoiced my foolish heart itself.

ez kom gein mir der bruoder mîn:
there came toward me the brother mine:

der sprach: «ich sol der êrste sîn,
who spoke: «I shall the first be,

den ir bestât hie, ritter guot.
whom you engage here, knight good.

ez ist mîn ger, daz ir daz tuot.»
it is my desire, that you that do.»

ich swaic und wande von in dan,
I was-silent and turned from them thence,

dâ mich bestuont ein biderb man.
where me engaged a worthy man.

Der was von Tûfers Hûc genant: 222
He was of Taufers Hugo named:

er fuort ein sper in sîner hant.
he carried a spear in his hand.

er und daz sper was wunneclîch
he and the spear was delightful

gezimirt, er was muotes rîch.
crested, he was of-spirit rich.

diu tyost wart ritterlîch geriten
the joust was knightly ridden

und væln bêdenthalp vermiten.
and missing on-both-sides avoided.

er traf mich an daz collir mîn,
he hit me on the collar mine,

und ich in an den helm sîn.
and I him on the helmet his.

Die sprîzeln harte hôhe flugen. 223
The splinters very high flew.

diu leute zuo durch schouwen zugen.
the people toward for watching drew.

er und ich wol zehen sper
he and I well ten spears

verstâchen. indes kom dart her
used-up. meanwhile came there hither

von Küenringe her Hadmâr:
of Kuenring sir Hadmar:

des zimir was von golde gar,
whose crest was of gold wholly,

er was ein edel ritter guot.
he was a noble knight good.

ich kêrt gein im durch hôhen muot.
I turned toward him for high spirit.

224 Dô ich in sach sô vaste komen,
When I him saw so fast come,

mîn orse mit sparn wart genomen.
my horse with spurs was taken.

mit willen wir zesamen triben:
with will we together drove:

diu sper ouch dâ niht ganz beliben,
the spears also there not whole remained,

ze stucken sî vil cleine stuben.
to pieces they very small flew.

die schilde sich vil gar zecluben:
the shields themselves very wholly split:

von dem hurte daz ergie;
from the charge that befell;

an ander ruorten sich diu knie.
on one-another touched themselves the knees.

225 Diu tyost âne schaden niht geschach.
The joust without harm not happened.

sîn hant mich in den arm stach:
his hand me into the arm thrust:

ich wart von im ein lüzel wunt.
I became by him a little wounded.

daz wart im noch dâ niemen kunt:
that became to-him yet there no-one known:

mich huop diu wunde vil unhô.
me lifted the wound very little.

wir ruoften bêdenthalp alsô:
we called on-both-sides thus:

«sperâ, herre, sperâ sper!
«spear-here, lord, spear-here spear!

diu sint enzwei: andriu her!»
they are in-two: others hither!»

Diu gab man uns vil palde dar. 226
Those gave one us very quickly thither.

bî mîner höfscheit, daz ist wâr,
by my courtliness, that is true,

uns was zesamen bêden ger.
to-us was together both desire.

in kurzer zît wir siben sper
in short time we seven spears

zebrâchen: der verstach er driu,
broke: of-them used-up he three,

und ich mit mîner hant vieriu,
and I with my hand four,

daz ich gevælt nie tyoste dâ.
that I missed never joust there.

dô band er ab den helm sâ.
then bound he off the helmet at-once.

Dô kom gein mich ein degen hêr, 227
Then came toward me a warrior lordly,

von Gors der süeze her Wolfgêr,
of Gors the sweet sir Wolfger,

den man ofte vrowen dienen sach;
whom one often ladies serve saw;

ûf dem ich zwei sper verstach,
on whom I two spears used-up,

und er ûf mir zwei ritterlîch.
and he on me two knightly.

er was vil hôher tugende rîch,
he was of-very high virtue rich,

im wâren die besten alle holt.
to-him were the best all devoted.

dar nâch bestuont mich her Liupolt:
there after engaged me sir Leopold:

228 Der was von Lengenburc genant
He was of Lengenburg named

und bî der Soune wol erkant.
and by the Sann well known.

dem stach ich ab den helm sîn.
to-him thrust I off the helmet his.

dâ pâten sâ die knappen mîn
there bade at-once the squires mine

die ritter alle stille haben.
the knights all still hold.

man sach mich ab dem veld draben.
one saw me off the field trot.

daz volk dô allez nâch mir reit:
the folk then all after me rode:

daz was mir herzenlîchen leit.
that was to-me heartily sorrowful.

229 Dô kom der margrâve Heinrîch,
Then came the margrave Heinrich,

der hôchgelobt von Ysterrîch:
the highly-praised of Istria:

er sprach: «lât disen ritter varn
he spoke: «let this knight go

von iu, daz in got müeze bewarn,
from you, that him God may keep,

swar er sô welle in daz lant.
whither he so will into the land.

er wil uns wesen unbekant:
he will to-us be unknown:

sît ez des heldes wille sî,
since it the hero's will be,

sô lât in nâchrîtens frî.»
so let him of-riding-after free.»

Dô der fürste daz gesprach, 230
When the prince that spoke,

ich rait hin, dâ mich niemen sach.
I rode thither, where me no-one saw.

mîn lîp vil pald entwâppent sich
my person very quickly unarmed itself

von grüenem wâppen; dar nâch ich
from green arms; there after I

gezimirt anders wider kam.
crested otherwise back came.

den schilt mîn ich ze halse nam:
the shield mine I to neck took:

gezimirt was mîn helm guot,
crested was my helmet good,

als ich in fuort durch hôhen muot.
as I it wore for high spirit.

Daz velt was allez ritter vol. 231
The field was all of-knights full.

ez tet dâ maniger alsô wol,
it did there many-a-one so well,

daz ich ez harte gerne sach.
that I it very gladly saw.

des âbents ich sehs sper verstach,
of-the evening I six spears used-up,

gezimirt nâch dem schilde mîn.
crested after the shield mine.

dô endet sich des tages schîn:
then ended itself the day's shine:

daz ritterspil nam uns diu naht
the knightly-game took from-us the night

mit ir vil vinsterlîcher maht.
with her very dark might.

232 Daz velt wart allez ritter bar.
The field became all of-knights bare.

si zogten her, si zogten dar,
they drew hither, they drew thither,

dâ ieslîcher vant gemach.
where each-one found ease.

vil manigem man dô wol dâ sprach,
very to-many-a man then well there spoke,

der ez des tages het versolt,
who it of-the day had deserved,

mit hertter ritterschaft erholt:
with hard chivalry gained:

des êre wart von rehte breit,
whose honor became by right broad,

von schulden hôch sîn werdicheit.
by rights high his worthiness.

233 Ob ich si nante sunderlîch,
If I them named separately,

die ez dâ tâten ritterlîch,
who it there did knightly,

sô wurd daz mære gar ze lanc.
so would-become the tale wholly too long.

vil maniger dâ nâch êren ranc
very many-a-one there after honors wrestled

alsô, daz er vil ir gewan.
so, that he much of-them won.

dâ was vil manic biderb man:
there was very many-a worthy man:

durch zuht ich gib des schuldic mich,
for courtesy I give of-it guilty me,

ez tet dâ maniger baz denn ich.
it did there many-a-one better than I.

Iedoch dô ez vol umbe gie, 234
Yet when it fully around went,

ez frâgten jene dise unde die:
it asked those these and those:

«waiz iemen, wer der ritter was,
«knows anyone, who the knight was,

der hiute grüen alsam ein gras
who today green as a grass

zuo uns her ab dem perg reit?
to us hither off the hill rode?

sîn maienvarbiu wâppencleit
his May-colored coats-of-arms

diu wâren dêswâr wunneclîch:
they were truly delightful:

er mac wol sîn des muotes rîch.»
he may well be of-the spirit rich.»

Des frâgens wart zewâre vil, 235
Of-the asking was truly much,

dâ von ich nimêr sprechen wil.
there of I no-more speak will.

sâ an dem dritten morgen fruo
at-once on the third morning early

die biderben griffen aber zuo
the worthy-ones grasped again to

mit ritterlîcher arebeit:
with knightly labor:

si würben umbe werdicheit,
they strove for worthiness,

als noch der êre gernde tuot.
as still the honor desiring-one does.

dâ was vil manic ritter guot.
there was very many-a knight good.

236 Bi mîner wârheit ich iu sage:
By my truth I you tell:

diu ritterschaft wert zehen tage,
the chivalry lasted ten days,

daz niemen anders niht dâ pflac.
that no-one else anything there kept.

vil manger nider dâ gelac:
very many-a-one down there lay:

mit orse mit alle daz geschach.
with horse with all that happened.

den andern dort man dâ nider stach
the other there one there down thrust

von dem orse verre hin.
from the horse far thither.

man vant dâ flust und ouch gewin.
one found there loss and also gain.

237 Der fürst Liupolt ûz Œsterrîch
The prince Leopold out-of Austria

der sprach: «mich müet daz endeclîch,
he spoke: «me troubles that finally,

sul wir niht anders schaffen hie
shall we not else do here

wan stechen. ich kom drumb her nie.
except jousting. I came therefore hither never.

einen tac ich her gemachet hân
a day I hither made have

und wolt den haz gern understân,
and would the hatred gladly prevent,

den der von Kärnden stæteclîch
which the of Carinthia steadily

hât wider margrâve Heinrîch.»
has against margrave Heinrich.»

Von Agley der patriarc 238
Of Aquileia the patriarch

sprach: «diu kost ist hie ze starc.»
spoke: «the cost is here too strong.»

von Babenperc der bischof sprach:
of Bamberg the bishop spoke:

«dêswâr ez ist mir ungemach,
«truly it is to-me discomfort,

sül wir alsô umb sus hie sîn.
shall we so for nothing here be.

mich bat her komen der bruoder mîn:
me bade hither come the brother mine:

ich meine den margrâven wert
I mean the margrave worthy

von Ysterrîch, der mîn her gert.»
of Istria, who of-me hither desires.»

Von Salzpurc der guotes rîch, 239
Of Salzburg the of-goods rich-one,

von Brihsen der bischof Heinrîch,
of Brixen the bishop Heinrich,

von Pazzawe bischof Rüedegêr,
of Passau bishop Rüdiger,

von Frîsinge ein fürste hêr,
of Freising a prince lordly,

die viere wâren ungemuot
the four were ill-spirited

dâ von, daz sî dâ muosten guot
there from, that they there must goods

zern umb unser üppicheit:
spend for our wantonness:

daz was in wol von schulden leit.
that was to-them well by rights sorrowful.

240 Swaz bischöf was dâ in der stat,
Whatever bishop was there in the town,

der ieslîcher vil tiure pat
of-them each very dearly bade

den fürsten dâ von Œsterrîch,
the prince there of Austria,

daz er ez schüeffe endelîch,
that he it should-arrange truly,

dar umbe er wære komen dar.
there for he were come thither.

si jâhen: «ez ist ein tumpheit gar,
they declared: «it is a foolishness wholly,

daz wir umb sus nu ligen hie:
that we for nothing now lie here:

sîn mac verdriezen dise unde die.
of-it may vex these and those.

241 Dô sprach der fürst ûz Œsterrîch:
Then spoke the prince out-of Austria:

«ir sült mir râten endelîch
«you shall me counsel truly

und sprechet, wie ich dar umb tuo.
and speak, how I there about do.

ich kan si pringen niht dar zuo,
I can them bring not there to,

di ich dâ bî doch haben sol.
whom I there by yet have shall.

in tuot diu ritterschaft sô wol,
to-them does the chivalry so well,

daz ich si ab dem velde her
that I them off the field hither

niht bringen kan, swie ich sîn ger.»
not bring can, however I of-it desire.»

Dô sprach der fürste sâ zehant 242
Then spoke the prince at-once forthwith

(ich meine den von Kärndenlant):
(I mean the of Carinthia's-land):

«ich wil hie râten einen rât:
«I will here counsel a counsel:

ich weiz wol, dâ mit ez hât
I know well, there with it has

ein ende: wir süln turniren hie.
an end: we shall tourney here.

mîn lîp in zehen jâren nie
my person in ten years never

durch schimpf com in dehein wâpencleit:
for sport came into any coat-of-arms:

daz wirt hie an von mir geleit.»
that is here on by me laid.»

Dem fürsten wart gevolget dô: 243
To-the prince was followed then:

des râtes wart vil maniger frô:
of-the counsel became very many-a-one glad:

daz tyostiren man dô lâzen bat.
the jousting one then leave bade.

dô hiez man künden in der stat,
then bade one announce in the town,

…
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

ez was der grôgirære sage,
it was the criers' saying,

der turney würd an dem mântage.
the tournament would-be on the Monday.

244 Dô nam ich abe hütte und gezelt:
Then took I down huts and tent:

mit freuden rûmte wir daz velt,
with joys vacated we the field,

mit hôhem muot wir zogten dô
with high spirit we drew then

hin in die stat und wâren frô,
thither into the town and were glad,

daz der turney solde sîn.
that the tournament should be.

sâ mit pfelle paldekîn,
at-once with silk brocade,

zobel, härmîn, zendâl:
sable, ermine, taffeta:

des sneit man dâ vil âne zal.
of-it cut one there much without number.

245 Silber, golt, vil wol geleit
Silver, gold, very well laid

ûf zendâl, dâ manger sneit.
on taffeta, there many-a-one cut.

swer des alles niht mohte hân,
whoever of-it all not might have,

den sach man snîden pukerân.
him saw one cut buckram.

sich zimirt diser, jener sô.
himself crested this-one, that-one so.

den turnay hiez man teilen dô:
the tournament bade one divide then:

dâ wurden ritter zuo gewegen,
there were knights to weighed,

die guoter witze muosten pflegen.
who good wit must keep.

Der turnay wart vil lobelîch 246
The tournament was very praiseworthily

getaylet. der von Œsterrîch
divided. the of Austria

het dâ zwir fünfzic ritter guot:
had there twice fifty knights good:

die wâren ritterlîch gemuot.
who were knightly spirited.

zuo dem geviel der êre holt:
to him fell the of-honor devoted-one:

daz was der margrâve Diepolt.
that was the margrave Diepold.

der het dar wan zwelf ritter brâht:
who had thither but twelve knights brought:

die heten ûf gewin gedâht.
who had on gain thought.

XI · THE TOURNAMENT AT FRIESACH

Ulrich names the lords on each side and their companies. On Monday the troops ride out with banners and crests, and Hadmar of Kuenring and Wülfing of Stubenberg open the charges with spears. Troop after troop breaks into the mêlée, the count of Liubenau is unhorsed and rescued, and Duke Leopold rides into the fight.

In dem tayl was grâve Albreht 247
In the part was count Albrecht

von Tyrol, des lop ie was sleht.
of Tyrol, whose praise ever was straight.

ez het der edel grâve hêr
it had the noble count lordly

dâ vierzic ritter und niht mêr.
there forty knights and not more.

von Tûfers Hûc der schanden frî
of Taufers Hugo the of-disgraces free-one

het zweinzic ritter unde drî,
had twenty knights and three,

die wol nâch êren wurben dâ:
who well after honors strove there:

daz tâten si ofte ouch anderswâ.
that did they often also elsewhere.

248 Ich sag iu reht, als ich ez sach:
I tell you right, as I it saw:

ez het der vogt von Lengenbach
it had the advocate of Lengenbach

dâ zwên und zweinzic ritter guot:
there two and twenty knights good:

die wâren ritterlîch gemuot,
who were knightly spirited,

der tuomvogt was guotes rîch:
the cathedral-advocate was of-goods rich:

des zimirt er vil köstelîch
therefore crested he very costly

sich unde sîn gesellen gar.
himself and his companions wholly.

die wâren alle lieht gevar.
they were all brightly colored.

Von Muoreck den rîchen man 249
Of Murek the rich man

sach man dâ vierzic ritter hân.
saw one there forty knights have.

von Küenringe her Hadmâr
of Kuenring sir Hadmar

het einen und drîzic an der schar.
had one and thirty in the troop.

von Cranchsperc den herren Herman
of Kranichberg the lord Hermann

sach man dâ zweinzic ritter hân.
saw one there twenty knights have.

von Gorse der milte Wolfgêr
of Gors the generous Wolfger

het dâ zwelf ritter und niht mêr.
had there twelve knights and not more.

Die ritter hân ich ze einer sît 250
The knights have I on one side

gar genant. als höfsch ir sît,
wholly named. as courtly you are,

durch iwer zuht sô hœret mich
for your courtesy so hear me

die andern nennen: daz tuon ich.
the others name: that do I.

daz eine was von Ysterrîch
the one was of Istria

der wol bekant marcrâve Heinrîch
the well known margrave Heinrich

(der het vor schanden sich behuot)
(who had from disgraces himself guarded)

het dâ gar sehzic ritter guot.
had there wholly sixty knights good.

251 Dâ het der fürste ûz Kärndenlant
There had the prince out-of Carinthia's-land
reht fünfzic ritter wol bekant.
right fifty knights well known.
dar nâch sô hœret, wie dâ sî
there after so hear, how there be
von Gorze der gar schanden frî,
of Gorizia the wholly of-disgraces free-one,
der im untugent nie gedâht:
who to-himself unvirtue never thought:
der het dar fünf und fünfzic prâht.
he had thither five and fifty brought.
von Hiunenburc den milten man
of Heunenburg the generous man
sach man dâ zwên und drîzic hân.
saw one there two and thirty have.

252 Von Liubenouwe der wolgemuot
Of Liubenau the well-spirited-one
het fünf und zweinzic ritter guot
had five and twenty knights good
von Bairen und von Franken brâht.
from Bavaria and from Franconia brought.
dem biderben dem was des gedâht,
to-the worthy-one to-him was of-it thought,
daz imz des tages tet niemen vor.
that to-him-it of-the day did no-one before.
sîn lop was in der Êren tor
his praise was into the Honor's gate
von sînen hôhen tugenden komen:
from his high virtues come:
man liez in dâ mit den vromen.
one left him there with the valiant.

Von Ortenburc grâve Herman 253
Of Ortenburg count Hermann

der wolt ir dâ niht mêre hân
he would of-them there not more have

wan zwir vier ritter lobelîch.
except twice four knights praiseworthy.

von Orte der vil tugentrîch
of Ort the very virtue-rich-one

der het sehs unde drîzic dâ:
he had six and thirty there:

er het ir oft mêr anderswâ.
he had of-them often more elsewhere.

von Stubenberc der werd Wölfinc
of Stubenberg the worthy Wülfing

brâht vier und drîzic an den rinc.
brought four and thirty into the ring.

Nu hân ich iu den turnay 254
Now have I you the tournament

mit roten rehte gar enzwei
with troops rightly wholly in-two

geteilet, als ez doch ergie.
divided, as it yet befell.

nû sült ir gern hœren, wie
now shall you gladly hear, how

die biderben zogten ûf daz velt.
the worthy-ones drew onto the field.

dâ vant vil manger ritters gelt,
there found very many-a-one knight's pay,

dâ vant ouch manger ritters schaden:
there found also many-a-one knight's harm:

der beider wurden sî geladen.
of-the both were they laden.

255 Des mæntages, dô der tac ûf gie,
Of-the Monday, when the day up went,

man diente got dort unde hie.
one served God there and here.

dô man die messe gar gesanc,
when one the mass wholly sang,

von knehten huob sich grôz gedranc
from servants raised itself great throng

in den gazen über al.
in the lanes over all.

von pusûnen wart michel schal,
from trumpets was great clamor,

holer floiten, hornesdôz,
hollow flutes, horn's-sound,

sumberslahen was dâ grôz.
drum-beating was there great.

256 Die grôgirære wâren frô,
The criers were glad,

si riefen dort und hie alsô:
they called there and here thus:

«nu zogt ûz, ritter edel guot,
«now draw out, knights noble good,

nu zogt ûz und sît hôchgemuot,
now draw out and be high-spirited,

nu zogt in hôhem muote dar:
now draw in high spirit thither:

des nement der vrowen boten war.
of-it take the ladies' messengers heed.

nu zogt mit freuden ûf daz velt!
now draw with joys onto the field!

dâ lît der minnengernden gelt.»
there lies the love-desiring's pay.»

Mit schalle wir zogten ûz der stat. 257
With clamor we drew out-of the town.

ieslîch rotmaister tiwer bat
each troop-master dearly bade

die sînen vil vaste ûf sich sehen.
the his very fast upon himself look.

er sprach: «uns mac wol prîs geschehen,
he spoke: «to-us may well prize happen,

welle wir hiut bî einander sîn.
(if)-will we today by one-another be.

daz habt ir ûf die triwe mîn.
that have you on the faithfulness mine.

lât ir iuch underdringen niht:
let you yourselves be-broken-into not:

dâ von iu benamen wol geschiht.»
there from to-you truly well happens.»

Nu wâren ûf daz velt bekomen 258
Now were onto the field come

in hôhem muote gar die fromen.
in high spirit wholly the valiant.

des was daz velt vil wunneclîch
therefore was the field very delightful

von maniger liehten panir rîch.
of many-a bright banner rich.

man sach ouch dâ manic liehtez sper,
one saw also there many-a bright spear,

gevärbet nâch der ritter ger.
colored after the knights' desire.

gezimirt dâ manic helm guot
crested there many-a helmet good

vil schône was durch hôhen muot.
very beautifully was for high spirit.

259 Der helme blic, der schilde schîn
The helmets' flash, the shields' shine

dâ manigem in diu ougen sîn
there to-many-a-one into the eyes his

sô lûhte, daz er kûm gesach:
so shone, that he barely saw:

von liehter varbe daz geschach.
from bright color that happened.

ir zimir und ir wâpencleit
their crests and their coats-of-arms

mit liehte dâ mit der sunne streit.
with light there with the sun strove.

daz velt was liehter varbe rîch
the field was of-bright color rich

und ir zimirde wünneclîch.
and their crests delightful.

260 Diu malîe vaste gie entwer,
The mêlée fast went across,

sus unde sô, hin unde her:
thus and so, thither and hither:

die biderben liten ungemach.
the worthy-ones suffered discomfort.

dort über velt man stapfen sach
there over field one trot saw

den von Stubenberc dort her:
the of Stubenberg there hither:

die sîne fuorten alle sper,
the his carried all spears,

swaz ir was an einer schar.
whatever of-them was in one troop.

gein den sô kêrt her Hadmâr
toward them so turned sir Hadmar

Von Küenringe der hôchgemuot: 261
Of Kuenring the high-spirited-one:

der was ein edel ritter guot.
he was a noble knight good.

hurtâ, wie erz des tages ruort,
charge-ho, how he-it of-the day stirred,

dô er sach, daz man gegen im fuort
when he saw, that one toward him carried

durch tyostiren sô manic sper!
for jousting so many-a spear!

daz was vil gar sîns herzen ger.
that was very wholly his heart's desire.

er sprach ze den sînen alzehant:
he spoke to the his forthwith:

«nempt alle sper ouch in die hant!
«take all spears also into the hand!

Wir suln den turnei mit den spern 262
We shall the tournament with the spears

hie heben schôn, sît sî sîn gern.
here begin beautifully, since they of-it desirous.

habt iuch zesamen: daz ist iu guot!
hold you together: that is to-you good!

si sint vil ritterlîch gemuot,
they are very knightly spirited,

die uns dâ wellent hie bestân.
who us there will here engage.

ir sult für wâr daz ûf mir hân,
you shall for true that on me have,

von rehter wârheit ich ez weiz:
from right truth I it know:

hie wirt ein ritterlîch puneiz.
here becomes a knightly charge.

263 Nu drucket iuch zesamen gar!
Now press you together wholly!

seht ir, wie ritterlîch diu schar
see you, how knightly the troop

gein uns dort stapfet mit den spern?
toward us there trots with the spears?

si wellent uns tyostirens wern.
they will us of-jousting grant.

des hab ir manlîch herze danc!
for-it have you manly heart thanks!

nu machet den puneiz niht lanc
now make the charge not long

und seht, daz wir si vast an komen:
and see, that we them fast on come:

daz mag in geschaden und uns gefromen.»
that may them harm and us profit.»

264 Die sîne mant ouch her Wülfinc.
The his urged also sir Wülfing.

er sprach: «hie wirt ein hertez dinc:
he spoke: «here becomes a hard thing:

uns wil mit spern her Hadmâr
us will with spears sir Hadmar

bestân. nu stapfet gegen im dar!
engage. now trot toward him thither!

daz ich dâ wil, daz wil ouch er:
what I there will, that will also he:

wir füeren bêdenthalben sper.
we carry on-both-sides spears.

ez mag ein puneiz hie geschehen,
it may a charge here happen,

daz in got selbe möhte sehen.»
that it God self might see.»

Sie stapften zuo einander sâ. 265
They trotted to one-another at-once.

dô sî zesamen kômen nâ
when they together came near

vil kûme rosseloufes wît,
very barely horse-run's wide,

dô was ouch wol punirens zît.
then was also well charging's time.

manic ors wart mit sparn genomen.
many-a horse was with spurs taken.

man sach si ûf einander komen:
one saw them upon one-another come:

vil hurticlîche daz geschach.
very chargingly that happened.

man und orsse man vallen sach.
men and horses one fall saw.

Der spere krachen was dâ grôz; 266
The spears' cracking was there great;

mit schilden manic grôzer stôz
with shields many-a great thrust

wart gestôzen dort unde hie,
was thrust there and here,

dâ von geswellen muosten knie.
there from swell must knees.

peule, wunden dâ gewan
bruises, wounds there won

von spern vil manic biderb man.
from spears very many-a worthy man.

mit ringen tâtens wê ir liden:
with rings did-they woe their limbs:

der wart vil manigez dâ verriden.
of-them was very many-a-one there wrenched.

267 Si drungen her, si drungen hin:
They pressed hither, they pressed thither:

ûf umbekêren stuont ir sin,
on wheeling-about stood their mind,

dâ manger helm vil abe brach.
there many-a helmet very off broke.

den andern dort man zeumen sach,
the other there one bridle saw,

umb den von rittern was gedranc.
around whom of knights was throng.

manic swert ûf helm erclanc.
many-a sword on helmet rang.

vil schilde man dâ bresten sach:
many shields one there burst saw:

von grôzen stœzen daz geschach.
from great thrusts that happened.

268 Durch nôt sô weich mit sîner schar
For need so gave-way with his troop

von Küenringe her Hadmâr.
of Kuenring sir Hadmar.

dem kom ze helf vil ritterlîch
to-him came to help very knightly

von Muoreke der guotes rîch.
of Murek the of-goods rich.

der kom ze driviers in geriten
who came at athwart in ridden

mit kunst nâch ritterlîchen siten:
with skill after knightly customs:

den von Stubenberc er rait
the of Stubenberg he rode

umb ein teil: daz was dem lait.
about a part: that was to-him sorrowful.

Dô daz geschach, der biderb man 269
When that happened, the worthy man

von Orte het ez ungern lân,
of Ort had it unwillingly left,

er wær ze helfe im dâ komen.
he were to help to-him there come.

sîn orsse mit sparn wart genomen:
his horse with spurs was taken:

sô hurteclîche kom er dar,
so chargingly came he thither,

daz er durchrait die drî schar.
that he through-rode the three troops.

sîn hurt sô ritterlîch geschach,
his charge so knightly happened,

daz man dâ ritter vallen sach.
that one there knights fall saw.

Her Hûc von Tûfers dô began 270
Sir Hugo of Taufers then began

sprengen unde her Herman
spur and sir Hermann

von Kranperc ritterlîche dar:
of Kranichberg knightly thither:

die heten bêde wan ein schar.
they had both but one troop.

ir puneiz alsô schœn ergie,
their charge so beautifully went,

daz beide dise unde die
that both these and those

wichen an der selben zît
gave-way at the same time

vil nâch ackerbreites wît.
very nearly acre-breadth's wide.

271 Von Liubenowe der grâve sâ
Of Liubenau the count at-once

an rande ritterlîche dâ
on charged knightly there

vil vaste den von Lengenbach:
very fast the of Lengenbach:

mit hurte er im die schar durchbrach.
with charge he him the troop broke-through.

von sîner hurteclîchen vart
from his charging course

sîn orsse aldâ verbüeget wart.
his horse there lamed was.

des kom der werde grâve nider,
therefore came the worthy count down,

dô er brach durch die schar her wider.
when he broke through the troop hither back.

272 Von Tozenpach mîn her Sîfrit
Of Totzenbach my sir Siegfried

und ouch sîn veter her Gotfrit,
and also his cousin sir Gottfried,

des grâven ros si drâhten dan.
the count's horse they turned thence.

si wâren zwên sô piderbe man,
they were two so worthy men,

daz sî vil balde kômen wider
that they very quickly came back

hin, dâ der grâve was komen nider
thither, where the count was come down

mit vallen ûf den grüenen clê:
with falling on the green clover:

dem biderben was von tretten wê.
to-the worthy-one was from trampling woe.

Des grâven ritterschaft zehant 273
The count's knighthood forthwith

mit hurte kômen in gerant.
with charge came in galloping.

den reit mit künst vor ritterlîch
whom rode with skill before knightly

des tages von Vigân her Heinrîch.
of-the day of Vigaun sir Heinrich.

den tuomvoget mit sîner schar
the cathedral-advocate with his troop

riten si ab ir herren gar;
rode they off their lord wholly;

si hulfen ûf dem biderben man:
they helped up the worthy man:

ez wart ob im vil guot getân.
it was above him very good done.

Von Hiunenburc der grâve wert, 274
Of Heunenburg the count worthy,

des herze ie hôhes lobes gert,
whose heart ever high praise desires,

und ouch der grâve Herman
and also the count Hermann

die vînde kômen alsus an,
the enemies came thus on,

daz al daz velt dâ von erdôz.
that all the field there from resounded.

sô hurticlîch was ir stôz,
so charging was their thrust,

daz man dâ hôrte krachâ krach,
that one there heard crack-ho crack,

dô ir schar in den hûffen brach.
when their troop into the heap broke.

275 Der grâve von Tyrol alzehant
The count of Tyrol forthwith

an rande den von Kärndenlant.
on charged the of Carinthia's-land.

in was zesamen bêden gâch:
to-them was together both haste:

ietweder des andern schar durchbrach
each the other's troop broke-through

mit hurte harte ritterlîch.
with charge very knightly.

si wâren beide muotes rîch
they were both of-spirit rich

und manlîches herzen hôch gemuot:
and of-manly heart high spirited:

des wart ir beider puneiz guot.
therefore became their both charge good.

276 Nâch in beiden kom ir schar
After them both came their troop

sô hurticlîch gehurtet dar,
so chargingly charged thither,

daz al daz velt dâ von erclanc.
that all the field there from rang.

manic biderber dâ nâch êren ranc.
many-a worthy-one there after honors wrestled.

dâ wart gerungen und geslagen,
there was wrestled and struck,

slac mit slage niht vertragen.
blow with blow not endured.

von hurten ûf die hehsen saz
from charges upon the hocks sat

vil manic orsse, gelaubet daz.
very many-a horse, believe that.

Der turney was zewâre guot. 277
The tournament was truly good.

manic ritter drinne hôch gemuot
many-a knight therein high spirited

mit hurte durch den hûffen brach.
with charge through the heap broke.

vil grôzer sper man dâ verstach,
very great spears one there used-up,

dâ von di ritter muosten ligen,
there from the knights must lie,

di sich gemaches dâ verzigen.
who themselves of-ease there renounced.

swelhen ritter man dâ vallen sach,
whichever knight one there fall saw,

der leit von tretten ungemach.
he suffered from trampling discomfort.

Noch hielt der rîche fürst Liupolt, 278
Still halted the mighty prince Leopold,

bî im der margrâve Diepolt.
by him the margrave Diepold.

gein dem sô hielt von Ysterrîch
toward him so halted of Istria

der hôch gelobt marcrâve Heinrîch,
the highly praised margrave Heinrich,

bî dem von Gorze schanden bar.
by the of Gorizia of-disgraces bare.

si kêrten bêde mit ir schar
they turned both with their troop

gegen dem von Œsterrîch
toward the of Austria

in hôhem muote ritterlîch.
in high spirit knightly.

279 Der turney waich dô vil wærlîch
The tournament gave-way then very truly

vil nâch ûf den von Ôsterrîch.
very nearly onto the of Austria.

daz was dem rîchen fürsten zorn.
that was to-the mighty prince anger.

er nam daz orsse sâ mit den sporn:
he took the horse at-once with the spurs:

er und die sînen den turney
he and the his the tournament

mit hurte riten gar enzwei,
with charge rode wholly in-two,

die vîende hin, die freunde her.
the enemies thither, the friends hither.

man hôrt dâ krachen vil manic sper.
one heard there crack very many-a spear.

280 Hurtâ hurtâ, wie ritterlîch
Charge-ho charge-ho, how knightly

dô punirte der von Ysterrîch
then charged the of Istria

und ouch von Gorze grâve Meinhart!
and also of Gorizia count Meinhard!

ir bêder hurticlîch invart
their both charging in-ride

sô hurticlîche wart getriben,
so chargingly was driven,

daz dâ wênic schilde ganz beliben.
that there few shields whole remained.

manic orsse ouch dâ verpüeget wart
many-a horse also there lamed was

und ysenhosen vil gezart.
and iron-hose many torn.

Nu sint die herren mit ir schar 281
Now are the lords with their troop

schôn in den turnei komen gar,
beautifully into the tournament come wholly,

beidenthalbe, dort unde hie.
on-both-sides, there and here.

hurtâ hurtâ, wie ez dô gie!
charge-ho charge-ho, how it then went!

der turnei faste stuont enstet.
the tournament fast stood in-place.

manic ritter ez dâ wol tet:
many-a knight it there well did:

durch diu reinen, süezen wîp
for the pure, sweet women

dâ manger urbart wol den lîp.
there many-a-one stripped well the body.

XII · THE PRINCES RECONCILED

The count of Gorizia seizes Duke Leopold's bridle, is taken by Leopold's knights, and is rescued by Rudolf of Ras. Ulrich praises many knights' deeds, among them Dietmar of Liechtenstein's, and admits he was neither the best nor the worst. That night the knights bathe and tend their wounds, and next day the captives pledge their goods. Duke Leopold reconciles the princes. Ulrich rides to his niece, who sends his lady Song IV and a letter telling her that Ulrich did best at Friesach. The lady reads it in private.

Dâ wart gestôzen vil manic stôz, 282
There was thrust very many-a thrust,

der tampf was von den orssen grôz,
the steam was from the horses great,

und wart des ie mêr unde mê.
and became of-it ever more and more.

mit ringen sî in tâten wê:
with wrestling they them did woe:

ir ringen daz was hurteclîch.
their wrestling that was charging.

dâ wart vil maniger muotes rîch:
there became very many-a-one of-spirit rich:

die sach man brechen durch die schar
them saw one break through the troop

mit grôzen hurten her unde dar.
with great charges hither and thither.

283 Der grâve von Gorze ritterlîch
The count of Gorizia knightly

kom vaste an den von Ôsterrîch:
came fast on the of Austria:

er nam den fürsten in den zoum.
he took the prince by the bridle.

daz orsse truoc einen rîchen soum.
the horse bore a rich load.

dâ der vil rîche fürst ûffe saz;
where the very mighty prince upon sat;

der ouch sîn selbes niht vergaz:
who also his self not forgot:

im den helm er sâ dâ nam,
him the helmet he at-once there took,

dem grâven; daz im wol gezam.
to-the count; that him well befitted.

Des fürsten Liupoldes ritterschaft 284
The prince Leopold's knighthood

im kom ze helfe mit grôzer kraft.
to-him came to help with great force.

der pflac der margrâve Diepolt:
it led the margrave Diepold:

der was dem rîchen fürsten holt.
who was to-the mighty prince devoted.

der grâve von Gorz wart genomen,
the count of Gorizia was taken,

daz er niht trûte dannen komen:
so-that he not trusted thence come:

doch werte sich der hôchgemuot
yet defended himself the high-spirited-one

alsam ein edel ritter guot.
like a noble knight good.

Dô alsô sêre bekumbert wart 285
When so sorely troubled was

von Gorze der werde grâve Meinhart,
of Gorizia the worthy count Meinhard,

daz er niht trûte komen dan,
that he not trusted come thence,

dô daz ersach der biderbe man,
when that saw the worthy man,

der hôchgemuot Ruodolf von Ras,
the high-spirited Rudolf of Ras,

der bî dem werden grâven was
who by the worthy count was

dâ und ofte ouch anderswâ,
there and often also elsewhere,

den biderben sach man sprengen sâ
the worthy-one saw one spur at-once

286 Mit funfzic ritern lobelîch.
With fifty knights praiseworthy.

der einer hiez von Lüenze Heinrîch:
of-whom one was-called of Lienz Heinrich:

der was für wâr ein biderbe man.
he was for true a worthy man.

ir herren hulfen sî von dan,
their lord helped they from thence,

mit hurt sin riten ûz der hant
with charge they-him rode out-of the hand

dem rîchen fürsten alzehant.
to-the mighty prince forthwith.

dâ wart von swerten michel clanc
there was from swords great clang

und ouch von hurten grôz gedranc.
and also from charges great throng.

287 Dô der von Rase sô ritterlîch
When the of Ras so knightly

dâ machte ledic den grâven rîch,
there made free the count mighty,

dô wolt der hôch gelobte man
then would the highly praised man

gar âne gewin niht scheiden dan:
wholly without gain not part thence:

mit hurte reit er her unde dar;
with charge rode he hither and thither;

ûz des rîchen fürsten schar
out-of the mighty prince's troop

vienc er harte ritterlîch
captured he very knightly

von Triwanswinkel den hern Heinrîch.
of Triebenswinkel the sir Heinrich.

Der biderbe margrâve Diepolt 288
The worthy margrave Diepold

des tages mit arbeit êre holt.
of-the day with labor honor fetched.

er reit vor dem von Œsterrîch
he rode before the of Austria

des tages, dêswâr, wol ritterlîch
of-the day, truly, well knightly

vast zuo den vînden schône dan,
fast to the enemies beautifully thence,

als der sîn ritterschaft wol kan:
as who his chivalry well knows:

er worht des tages wol ritterswerc.
he worked of-the day well knight's-work.

als tet ouch der von Slüzelperc.
as did also the of Schlüsselberg.

Von Liehtenstein her Dietmâr 289
Of Liechtenstein sir Dietmar

mit hurte brach vaste durch di schar.
with charge broke fast through the troop.

er was gezimirt wunneclîch,
he was crested delightfully,

der hôch gelobt was muotes rîch.
the highly praised-one was of-spirit rich.

des tages er mit sîner hant
of-the day he with his hand

wol fünf und zweincic sper verswant
well five and twenty spears used-up

in dem turneie hie unde dort:
in the tournament here and there:

dâ mit sô dient er lobendiu wort.
there with so served he praising words.

290 Der biderbe helm vil abe brach.
The worthy-one helmets many off broke.

hurtâ, wie man in rîten sach,
charge-ho, how one him ride saw,

sus unde sô, hin unde her!
thus and so, thither and hither!

nâch prîse stuont gar al sîn ger.
after prize stood wholly all his desire.

ir sült für wâr gelauben daz,
you shall for true believe that,

ez tet des tages niemen baz
it did of-the day no-one better

mit ritterlîcher arebeit:
with knightly labor:

den turnei offte er gar durchreit.
the tournament often he wholly through-rode.

291 Von Küngesperc der biderbe man
Of Königsberg the worthy man

vil ritterlîch her unde dan
very knightly hither and thence

mit dem swerte houwent reit.
with the sword hewing rode.

er het von rehte werdecheit,
he had by right worthiness,

wan man in drumbe werben sach.
for one him for-it strive saw.

des tages er vil sper verstach:
of-the day he many spears used-up:

mit sîner ellenthaften hant
with his valiant hand

vienc er fünf ritter wolbekant.
captured he five knights well-known.

Von Gorse der hôchgemuote Wolfgêr 292
Of Gors the high-spirited Wolfger

des tages verstach wol zweinzic sper.
of-the day used-up well twenty spears.

er was in zühten hôchgemuot:
he was in courtesies high-spirited:

des tages er niht umbe guot
of-the day he not for goods

warp, er warp umbe werdecheit
strove, he strove for worthiness

mit ritterlîcher arebeit.
with knightly labor.

sîn herze daz was tugende vol:
his heart it was of-virtue full:

er tet ez dâ und ofte wol.
he did it there and often well.

Von Grætz her Ortolf warp alsô 293
Of Graz sir Ortolf strove so

des tages, daz sîn êre hô
of-the day, that his honor high

steic: er was ein ritter guot,
climbed: he was a knight good,

in ritters zühten hôchgemuot.
in knight's courtesies high-spirited.

im tet des tages niemen vor.
to-him did of-the day no-one before.

sîn êre stuont von rehte enpor:
his honor stood by right aloft:

sîn lîp warp ie umb hôhen prîs,
his person strove ever for high prize,

er was getriu, küen unde wîs.
he was faithful, bold and wise.

294 Von Mûrberc der vil werde Uolrîch
Of Murberg the very worthy Ulrich

des tages dâ warp wol ritterlîch.
of-the day there strove well knightly.

daz het er ofte ouch ê getân:
that had he often also before done:

er was für wâr ein biderbe man.
he was for true a worthy man.

sîn ritterschaft was wol bekant:
his chivalry was well known:

ez was der besten von Stîrlant
it was of-the best of Styrian-land

immer einer, daz ist alsô:
ever one, that is so:

des stuont sîn lop von schulden hô.
therefore stood his praise by rights high.

295 Her Otacker von Wolkenstein
Sir Otakar of Wolkenstein

gezimirt als ein engel schein.
crested as an angel shone.

daz was des biderben mannes site:
that was the worthy man's custom:

dâ liebt er sich vrowen mite.
there endeared he himself to-ladies with.

sîn ritterschaft was ritterlîch:
his chivalry was knightly:

der hôchgelobt was muotes rîch:
the highly-praised-one was of-spirit rich:

sîn lîp warp ie umb werdecheit
his person strove ever for worthiness

mit ritterlîcher arebeit.
with knightly labor.

Der hôchgelobte biderbe man 296
The highly-praised worthy man

mit hurte die vîende sus kom an.
with charge the enemies thus came on.

reht als der smirel tuot den starn,
right as the merlin does the starlings,

sach man in durch den hûffen varn
saw one him through the heap go

mit hurt reht als ein windsprût.
with charge right as a whirlwind.

er was von reht der vrowen trût:
he was by right the ladies' darling:

vil tiure manz in dienen sach,
very dearly one-it him serve saw,

sîn munt ie wol von vrowen sprach.
his mouth ever well of ladies spoke.

Der werde Otte von dem Wasen 297
The worthy Otto of the Wasen

was vrî vor aller schanden mâsen.
was free from all disgrace's stains.

er was guot ritter mit dem sper,
he was good knight with the spear,

nâch hôhem prîse stuont sîn ger:
after high prize stood his desire:

swâ mit ein ritter werdecheit
where with a knight worthiness

erwirbet, des was er bereit.
gains, of-it was he ready.

er tet ez des tages alsô wol,
he did it of-the day so well,

daz mans von reht im danken sol.
that one-it by right to-him thank shall.

298 Von Kîowe der starke Heinrîch
Of Kiau the strong Heinrich
brach durch den hûffen ritterlîch:
broke through the heap knightly:
mit hurte er an den grâven quam
with charge he on the count came
von Tyrol, den er vaste nam
of Tyrol, whom he fast took
in den zoum mit grôzer kraft:
by the bridle with great force:
von aller sîner ritterschaft
out-of all his knighthood
wolt er in gevangen füeren dan.
would he him captive lead thence.
des werte sich der biderbe man.
of-it defended himself the worthy man.

299 Herr Otte von Meizen an der stat
Sir Otto of Meissau on the spot
mit grôzen bürgen des erbat
with great sureties of-it begged
den herren Heinrîch von Kîowe sâ,
the lord Heinrich of Kiau at-once,
daz er den grâven liez aldâ.
that he the count left there.
den helm sîn er im abe prach.
the helmet his he him off broke.
dô im daz houbet âne dach
when to-him the head without roof
wart, dô muost der starke man
became, then must the strong man
durch nôt den grâven dâ verlân.
for need the count there let-go.

Von Osterwitz der schenke Herman 300
Of Osterwitz the cupbearer Hermann

mit hurte reit her unde dan.
with charge rode hither and thence.

die helme von im nider riren,
the helmets from him down fell,

rehte als gar teige piren.
right as wholly doughy pears.

sîn swert ûf helme ofte erclanc:
his sword on helmets often rang:

mangen ritterlîchen swanc
many-a knightly swing

swanc sîn ellenhaftiu hant:
swung his valiant hand:

der biderbe sper dâ vil verswant.
the worthy-one spears there many used-up.

Von Eychelberc mîn her Reinher 301
Of Eichelberg my sir Reinher

vast gegen den vînden hielt ze wer.
fast against the enemies held on defense.

sîn ritterschaft was manlîch gar:
his chivalry was manly wholly:

reht als ein valke durch die schar
right as a falcon through the troop

prach er mit hurte gar al den tac.
broke he with charge wholly all the day.

von sînen stœzen nider lac
from his thrusts down lay

für wâr dâ manic ritter guot.
for true there many-a knight good.

sus warp umb êre der hôchgemuot.
thus strove for honor the high-spirited-one.

302 Her Kuon von Fridberc dâ gewan
Sir Kuno of Friedberg there won

vier orsse reht als ein biderb man.
four horses right as a worthy man.

dem helde was nâch guote wê:
to-the hero was after goods woe:

dâ von gewan er sîn ouch mê
there from won he of-it also more

denne einer, der dar nâch niht ranc.
than one, who there after not wrestled.

nâch guote stuont ie sîn gedanc:
after goods stood ever his thought:

swâ erz mit êren mohte hân,
wherever he-it with honors might have,

dâ sach man inz ungern lân.
there saw one him-it unwillingly leave.

303 Von Buches her Otte und her Dietrîch,
Of Buchs sir Otto and sir Dietrich,

die beide tâten dem gelîch,
they both did to-that like,

daz sî niht prîses heten muot:
that they not of-prize had spirit:

man sach si werben dâ umb guot.
one saw them strive there for goods.

si enruohten, wer vil sper verstach:
they not-cared, who many spears used-up:

umb guot man sî dâ werben sach
for goods one them there strive saw

noch mêr danne umb diu werden wîp.
yet more than for the worthy women.

sus was gemuot ir beider lîp.
thus was spirited their both person.

Und nant ich iu di ritter gar 304
And named I you the knights wholly

besunder in ieslîcher schar,
separately in each troop,

die ez des tages tâten sô,
who it of-the day did so,

dâ von ir lop muost stîgen hô,
there from their praise must climb high,

sô würde daz mære gar ze lanc.
so would-become the tale wholly too long.

vil maniger sô nâch êren ranc,
very many-a-one so after honors wrestled,

daz er durch sînen hôhen muot
that he for his high spirit

des tages dâ wâgt lîp unde guot.
of-the day there ventured body and goods.

Ir sült für wâr gelauben daz: 305
You shall for true believe that:

ir wâren hundert unde baz,
of-them were hundred and more,

di ez des tages dâ sunderlîch
who it of-the day there separately

tâten, und doch niht gelîch.
did, and yet not alike.

der tet ez wol, sô tet ez der
this-one did it well, so did it that-one

noch verre baz. sus gienc entwer
yet far better. thus went across

der turnei, her und vaste wider.
the tournament, hither and fast back.

dâ lac vil manic ritter nider.
there lay very many-a knight down.

306 Dâ was von dringen ungemach.
There was from crowding discomfort.

wol tûsent sper man dâ verstach.
well thousand spears one there used-up.

dâ wart gevangen vil manic man.
there was captured very many-a man.

als ich si in der ahte hân,
as I them in the reckoning have,

wol anderhalp hundert ritter guot
well one-and-a-half hundred knights good

ir orsse dâ vlurn durch hôhen muot.
their horses there lost for high spirit.

man vant dâ flust und ouch gewin.
one found there loss and also gain.

sus gie der tac mit arbeit hin.
thus went the day with labor away.

307 Manic müeder helm abe bant:
Many-a weary-one helmet off bound:

turnirende man den andern vant
tourneying one the other found

noch reht, als dô ers êrste began.
still right, as when he-it first began.

ouch dûhte dâ mangen biderben man
also seemed there to-many-a worthy man

der tac ze kurz und der turnei.
the day too short and the tournament.

sus stuont ir wille reht entzwei.
thus stood their will right in-two.

die wolden turniren mê:
those would tourney more:

sô was den hie vor müede wê.
so was to-these here from weariness woe.

Waz ich des tages tet selbe dâ 308
What I of-the day did self there

und ê und ofte sît anderswâ,
and before and often since elsewhere,

des wil ich vil durch zuht verdagen.
of-it will I much for courtesy conceal.

wan einez daz wil ich iu sagen;
but one-thing that will I you tell;

mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht:
my mouth by truth you of-it declares:

ich was dâ der beste niht,
I was there the best not,

ich was ouch niht der bœste gar:
I was also not the worst wholly:

diu beidiu diu sint von mir wâr.
the both they are of me true.

Der turnei wert gar al den tac, 309
The tournament lasted wholly all the day,

daz niemen anders niht dâ pflac,
that no-one else anything there kept,

swie mans began doch harte fruo.
however one-it began yet very early.

dô seige ouch nû der âbent zuo.
then sank also now the evening to.

die helme man dô gar ab bant:
the helmets one then wholly off bound:

wir zogten alle sâzehant,
we drew all forthwith,

der sus, der sô, hin in die stat.
this-one thus, that-one so, thither into the town.

dâ was bereit manic schœnez pat.
there was ready many-a beautiful bath.

310 Die ritter padeten bî der naht.
The knights bathed by the night.

vor müede manger het unmaht:
from weariness many-a-one had faintness:

man pant den dort, man salbet den hie,
one bound that-one there, one anointed this-one here,

dem dort die arme, dem hie diu knie.
to-that-one there the arms, to-this-one here the knees.

vor slâffe was dâ maniger tôt:
from sleep was there many-a-one dead:

der ander von gedanken nôt
the other from thoughts' distress

leit, er gedâht sô: «wie hân ich
suffered, he thought so: «how have I

hiut hie gevarn! des wundert mich.»
today here fared! of-it wonders me.»

311 Die naht dâ manger sanfte lac.
The night there many-a-one gently lay.

mit freuden kom der ander tac.
with joys came the second day.

dô muosten dâ hin ze den juden varn
then must there thither to the Jews go

si alle, di dâ gevangen wârn.
they all, who there captured were.

man sach si setzen alzehant
one saw them pledge forthwith

vil maniger hande kostlîchez pfant.
very many-a kind costly pledge.

die dâ gewunnen heten guot,
who there won had goods,

die wâren vrô und hôch gemuot.
they were glad and high spirited.

Der fürst Liupolt von Œsterrîch 312
The prince Leopold of Austria

sant sâ nâch dem von Ysterrîch
sent at-once after the of Istria

und ouch nâch dem von Kerndenlant:
and also after the of Carinthia's-land:

er suont si beide aldâ zehant.
he reconciled them both there forthwith.

die fürsten er ze süenen pflac
the princes he to reconcile took-care

mit sprâche unz an den dritten tac.
with parley until on the third day.

dô riten danne die fürsten rîch
then rode thence the princes mighty

mit in von dan gar männiclîch.
with them from thence wholly every-man.

Ich schiet ouch hôhes muotes dan; 313
I parted also of-high spirit thence;

reht als ein minnegernder man
right as a love-desiring man

reit ich sâ zuo der niftel mîn.
rode I at-once to the niece mine.

diu hiez mich willekomen sîn.
she bade me welcome be.

ich sprach: «nu müez dir lônen got,
I spoke: «now may thee reward God,

vil süeziu niftel, lieber bot!
very sweet niece, dear messenger!

du bist gar mîner sælden rât:
thou art wholly of-my blisses' counsel:

an dîner helfe mîn vreude stât.»
on thy help my joy stands.»

314 «Neve, swaz ich dir gedienen kan,
«Nephew, whatever I thee serve can,

daz wirt vil willeclîch getân.
that is very willingly done.

ich wil aber durch den willen dîn
I will however for the will thine

dîner vrowen den boten mîn
to-thy lady the messenger mine

senden und enbieten daz,
send and announce that,

daz ez ze Frisach niemen baz
that it at Friesach no-one better

hât getân danne dû. dêst wâr:
has done than thou. that-is true:

daz weiz ich endelîche gar.»
that know I truly wholly.»

315 «Niftel, sô tuost dû mir wol:
«Niece, so dost thou me well:

ich danke dirs immer, als ich sol.
I thank thee-for-it ever, as I shall.

sô send ouch disiu liet dâ hin.
so send also these songs there thither.

vil gar âne angest ich des bin,
very wholly without fear I of-it am,

si dunken die vil guoten guot.
they seem the very good-one good.

si ist sô reiniclîch gemuot,
she is so purely spirited,

daz sî ir lobes ist immer frô.
that she of-her praise is ever glad.

diu liet sprechent von ir sô:
the songs speak of her so:

IV. Ein tanzwîse, und ist diu vierde wîse.
IV. A dance-tune, and is the fourth tune.

In dem walde süeze dœne
In the wood sweet tunes

singent kleiniu vogelîn.
sing small little-birds.

An der heide bluomen schœne
On the heath flowers beautiful

blüejent gegen des meien schîn.
bloom toward the May's shine.

Alsô blüet mîn hôher muot
So blooms my high spirit

mit gedanken gegen ir güete,
with thoughts toward her goodness,

diu mir rîchet mîn gemüete,
which to-me enriches my mind,

sam der troum den armen tuot.
as the dream to-the poor does.

Ez ist ein vil hôch gedinge,
It is a very high hope,

den ich gegen ir tugenden trage,
which I toward her virtues bear,

Daz mir noch an ir gelinge,
That to-me yet with her succeed,

daz ich sælde an ir bejage.
that I bliss with her win.

Des gedingen bin ich vrô.
Of-the hope am I glad.

got geb, daz ichz wol verende,
God grant, that I-it well end,

daz sie mir den wân iht wende,
that she me the hope not turn,

der mich freut sô rehte hô.
which me gladdens so right high.

Sie vil süeze, valsches âne,
She very sweet, of-falseness without,

vrî vor allem wandel gar,
free from all blemish wholly,

Lâze mich in liebem wâne,
Let me in dear hope,

die wîl ez niht baz envar:
the while it not better goes:

Daz diu vreude lange wer,
That the joy long last,

daz ich weinens iht erwache,
that I weeping not awake,

daz ich gegen dem trôste lache,
that I toward the comfort laugh,

des ich von ir hulden ger.
which I of her favor desire.

Wünschen unde wol gedenken
Wishing and well thinking

dêst diu meiste vreude mîn.
that-is the greatest joy mine.

des sol mir ir trôst niht wenken,
of-it shall me her comfort not waver,

sie gelâze mich ir sîn
she let me of-her be

Mit den beiden nâhen bî,
With the both near by,

sô daz sie mit willen gunne
so that she with will grant

mir von ir sô werder wunne,
to-me from her so worthy delight,

daz sie sælic immer sî.
that she blessed ever be.

Sælic meie, dû aleine
Blessed May, thou alone

trœstest al die welde gar.
comfortest all the woods wholly.

Dû und al diu werlt gemeine
Thou and all the world common

vreut mich min dann umb ein hâr.
gladdens me less than by a hair.

Wie möht ir mir vreude geben
How might you me joy give

âne die vil lieben, guoten?
without the very dear, good-one?

von der sol ich trôstes muoten;
from whom shall I comfort hope;

wan ir trôstes muoz ich leben.
for of-her comfort must I live.

316 Diu liet ze Frisach sint für komen:
The songs at Friesach are before come:

si hât manic ritter dâ vernomen,
them has many-a knight there heard,

der in des jach, sî wærn guot.
who to-them of-it declared, they were good.

«diu wîse ist niuwe und hôchgemuot,
«the tune is new and high-spirited,

diu wort sint süeze und dar zuo wâr.»
the words are sweet and there to true.»

«neve, gip her: ich sende si dar
«nephew, give hither: I send them thither

mit guotem willen endelîch
with good will truly

der vrowen dîn: diu ist tugende rîch.»
to-the lady thine: who is of-virtue rich.»

317 «Niftel, durch die güete dîn,
«Niece, for the goodness thine,

swaz dir enbiutet diu vrowe mîn,
whatever thee announces the lady mine,

daz tuo mir kurzlîchen kunt!»
that make me shortly known!»

sus schiet ich von ir an der stunt
thus parted I from her at the hour

und fuor mit freuden sâzehant
and went with joys forthwith

allenthalben in diu lant
everywhere into the lands

turniren aber nâch ritters site.
tourneying again after knight's custom.

dâ dient ich mîner vrowen mite.
there served I my lady with.

Dô ich von mîner niftel quam, 318
When I from my niece came,

liet unde brief diu guote nam
songs and letter the good-one took

und sande si palde an der stat
and sent them quickly on the spot

hin mîner vrowen, als ich pat.
thither to-my lady, as I bade.

dô sî den boten êrste sach,
when she the messenger first saw,

diu hôchgelobte, reine sprach:
the highly-praised, pure-one spoke:

«du solt mir willekomen sîn!
«thou shalt to-me welcome be!

sage, wie lebt diu vrowe dîn?»
tell, how lives the lady thine?»

Der bot sprach: «sî gehabt sich wol. 319
The messenger spoke: «she fares herself well.

si enbiutet iu, vrowe, als si sol,
she announces you, lady, as she shall,

ir dienst her in ditze lant
her service hither into this land

und hât iu disen brief gesant.
and has you this letter sent.

den lest und lât mich wider varn
which read and let me back go

schire, daz iuch got müeze bewarn.
soon, that you God may keep.

mich bat mîn vrowe ir schire komen.»
me bade my lady to-her soon come.»

der brief von ir dâ wart genomen.
the letter from her there was taken.

320 Den brief nam ir wîziu hant,
The letter took her white hand,

und gie von danne sâzehant
and went from thence forthwith

in ir heinlîch, dâ si las,
into her privacy, where she read,

swaz an dem brief geschriben was.
whatever on the letter written was.

swaz ir des brieves schrift dâ saget,
whatever to-her the letter's writing there told,

daz wart von ir vil wol verdaget.
that was by her very well concealed.

si las in gar, dô daz geschach.
she read it wholly, when that happened.

nu müget ir hœren, wie er sprach:
now may you hear, how it spoke:

b Ich enbiut iu, vrowe, mînen gruoz
I announce you, lady, my greeting

und dienst, als ich von rehte muoz
and service, as I by right must

mîner lieben vrouwen.
to-my dear lady.

ir sült mir wol getrouwen,
you shall me well trust,

daz ich iu diene mîne tage.
that I you serve my days.

nu merket, vrowe, waz ich iu sage.
now mark, lady, what I you say.

ze Frisach ist ein ritterschaft
at Friesach is a chivalry

gewesen mit vil grôzer craft:
been with very great force:

Dâ hât daz beste gar getân
There has the best wholly done

iwer getriwer dienestman,
your faithful vassal,

mîn neve von Liehtensteine.
my nephew of Liechtenstein.

ir getât was gegen im cleine.
their deed was against him small.

jâ hât durch iuch, vrowe, er
yes has for you, lady, he

verstochen mêr danne hundert sper.
used-up more than hundred spears.

er het den brîs ze bêder sît:
he had the prize on both side:

daz ist wâr, als lieb ir mir sît.
that is true, as dear you to-me are.

Er hât iu dâ gedienet sô,
He has you there served so,

daz ich sîn bin worden vrô.
that I of-it am become glad.

er dient iu mit triuwen,
he serves you with faithfulness,

er kan den dienst niuwen
he can the service renew

gein iu mit ritterlîcher tât:
toward you with knightly deed:

sîn herze iuch immer liep hât,
his heart you ever dear has,

vil herzenliebiu vrowe mîn.
very heart-dear lady mine.

des sol mîn sælde pfant sîn.
of-that shall my bliss pledge be.

The lady answers the niece's letter: kin may well praise their own, but strangers do not praise him, so the niece's praise is worthless. The letter reaches Ulrich at a tournament at Leibnitz. Stung, he seeks chivalry everywhere through the summer. In winter his niece tells him the lady has forbidden her messenger, for fear of being watched. He composes Song V but finds no new messenger. In summer he rides through Carinthia, Carniola, and Istria, jousts at the count of Gorizia's tournament at Trieste, and sets out for a tournament at Brixen.

321 Dô si den brief gelas aldâ,
When she the letter read there,

diu guote schreip hin wider sâ
the good-one wrote thither back at-once

einen brief. dô daz geschach,
a letter. when that happened,

diu reine wider den boten sprach:
the pure-one to the messenger spoke:

«sage dîner vrowen den dienest mîn
«tell thy lady the service mine

und füere ir hin daz brievelîn
and bring her thither the little-letter

und sage ir von mir offenbâr,
and tell her from me openly,

si habe enboten mir niht wâr.»
she have announced me not truth.»

322 Dô der brief mîner niftel guot
When the letter to-my niece good

kom, diu reine, wolgemuot
came, the pure, well-spirited-one

sande mir in alzehant.
sent me it forthwith.

ir bot mich dâ ze Leibenz vant,
her messenger me there at Leibnitz found,

dâtz einem turney, der wart guot.
there-at a tournament, which became good.

driu hundert ritter hôchgemuot
three hundred knights high-spirited

die wâren dar durch êre kumen:
who were thither for honor come:

man nam dâ schaden unde frumen.
one took there harm and profit.

Den boten ich vil wol enpfie, 323
The messenger I very well received,

mit im ich in ein heinlîch gie:
with him I into a privacy went:

dâ gab er mir daz brievelîn.
there gave he me the little-letter.

des danct ich sâ der niftel mîn.
for-it thanked I at-once the niece mine.

ich wânde, dâ stüend an etswaz,
I thought, there stood on something,

dâ von mir seneden würde baz:
there from to-me longing-one would-become better:

dô stuont dran, daz mir vreude brach.
then stood thereon, that to-me joy broke.

nu sult ir hœren, wie daz sprach:
now shall you hear, how that spoke:

c Du lobest mir vaste den neven dîn:
Thou praisest to-me hard the nephew thine:

daz mac wol von der sippe sîn.
that may well from the kinship be.

mir lobent sîn aber di vremden niht:
to-me praise him however the strangers not:

dâ von ist dîn lop gar enwiht.
there from is thy praise wholly worthless.

und wil du mirn ze hôhe loben,
and (if)-wilt thou to-me-him too high praise,

ich zîhe dich, du wellest toben.
I accuse thee, thou wilt rave.

324 Dô mir der brief dô wart gelesen,
When to-me the letter then was read,

mir konde nimmer leider wesen.
to-me could never sorrier be.

ich schamt mich der boteschaft,
I was-ashamed myself of-the message,

ich gedâht: «ich muoz mit ritterschaft
I thought: «I must with chivalry

gein ir ze hôhem lobe komen,
toward her to high praise come,

oder mir wirt kürzlîch benomen
or to-me is shortly taken

lîp, guot, sinne und daz leben
body, goods, senses and the life

und swaz mir got ie hât gegeben.»
and whatever me God ever has given.»

Dô fuor ich wîten in diu lant. 325
Then went I widely into the lands.

swâ iemen ritterschaft dô vant,
wherever anyone chivalry then found,

ez wære ze schimpfe oder ernstlîch,
it were in jest or earnestly,

dâ sach man mich ouch endelîch.
there saw one me also truly.

ich zert den lîp und ouch daz guot
I spent the body and also the goods

vil willeclîch; sus stuont mîn muot:
very willingly; thus stood my spirit:

durch die vil lieben vrowen mîn
for the very dear lady mine

muost ich gezimirt offte sîn.
must I crested often be.

Sus fuor ich al den sumer gar 326
Thus went I all the summer wholly

in den landen her unde dar
in the lands hither and thither

vil ritterlîchen unde wol,
very knightly and well,

alsô von reht ein ritter sol,
as by right a knight shall,

der hôher minne ze lône gert.
who high love as reward desires.

der sol sich gerne machen wert:
he shall himself gladly make worthy:

wil er nâch hôher minne streben,
(if)-will he after high love strive,

sô sol er werdeclîchen leben.
so shall he worthily live.

327 Nu was ouch komen der winder kalt,
Now was also come the winter cold,

verdorben was der grüene walt,
withered was the green wood,

geswigen wâren vogelîn.
fallen-silent were little-birds.

dô reit ich zuo der niftel mîn
then rode I to the niece mine

und cleit ir mîne seneden leit.
and lamented her my longing sorrows.

si sprach: «dir sî von mir geseit:
she spoke: «to-thee be by me said:

du bist verirret des boten mîn
thou art deprived of-the messenger mine

mêr vil gar zuo der frowen dîn.
more very wholly to the lady thine.

328 Si hât verboten mir für wâr,
She has forbidden me for true,

daz ich in nimêre sende dar.
that I him no-more send thither.

si fürhtet des, man merk ez ir:
she fears of-it, one note it her:

dâ von hât sîz verboten mir.
there from has she-it forbidden me.

ouch wær der tumpheit mir ze vil,
also were of-the foolishness to-me too much,

sît daz sis von mir niht enwil,
since that she-it from me not wills,

ob ich in dar sante âne ir danc:
if I him thither sent without her consent:

sô wærn alle mîn sinne kranc.»
so were all my senses weak.»

Ich sprach: «vil liebiu niftel mîn, 329
I spoke: «very dear niece mine,

sô muoz ouch ich verdorben sîn
so must also I ruined be

und immer mêr an vreuden tôt.
and ever more in joys dead.

owê der clagelîchen nôt!
alas the lamentable distress!

wie ist mîn bote mir benomen?
how is my messenger from-me taken?

ist ez von mînen schulden komen?
is it from my faults come?

ob ichz mit bôsheit hân versolt,
if I-it with wickedness have deserved,

ich würde mir selben nimmer holt.»
I would-become to-me self never devoted.»

«Neve, du solt gelouben daz, 330
«Nephew, thou shalt believe that,

dir ist dîn vrowe niht gehaz.
to-thee is thy lady not hostile.

si hâtz umb anders niht getân,
she has-it for else nothing done,

wan daz sichs iemen müg verstân.
except that herself-it anyone may understand.

sî hüetet dîn und ouch ir:
she guards thee and also herself:

daz soltu wol gelauben mir.
that shalt-thou well believe me.

mîn bot reit alze ofte dar:
my messenger rode all-too often thither:

si het des angest, man næmes war.
she had of-it fear, one took-of-it heed.

331 Ouch ist si mir ze verre gar:
Also is she to-me too far wholly:

mîn bote unsanfte dan unde dar
my messenger uncomfortably thence and thither

nu rîtet. man hât sîn niht für guot:
now rides. one has it not for good:

si ist sô sêre alzan behuot,
she is so sorely constantly guarded,

daz man si niemen sehen lât.
that one her no-one see lets.

neve, dâ von so ist daz mîn rât:
nephew, there from so is that my counsel:

kiuse einen andern boten dir
choose an other messenger for-thee

gein ir: des soltu volgen mir.»
toward her: in-that shalt-thou follow me.»

332 «Niftel, sît dîn bote niht
«Niece, since thy messenger not

mac wol dar komen, swie ez geschiht,
may well thither come, however it happens,

ich muoz ein andern boten hân.
I must an other messenger have.

daz kan niemen understân:
that can no-one prevent:

ez kom ze schaden, ez kom ze fromen,
it come to harm, it come to profit,

mîn dienst ist ir unbenomen.
my service is from-her untaken.

des hât daz herze mîn gedâht:
that has the heart mine thought:

daz wirt in zwîvel nimmer brâht.
that is into doubt never brought.

Niftel, swaz du guotes mir 333
Niece, whatever thou of-good me

hâst getân, des danc ich dir
hast done, for-it thank I thee

mit triuwen immer sunder wanc.
with faithfulness ever without wavering.

daz ist für wâr mîn gedanc.»
that is for true my thought.»

sus nam ich urloup und reit dan.
thus took I leave and rode thence.

zehant ich tihten dô began,
forthwith I compose then began,

als mir mîn senedez herze riet,
as me my longing heart counseled,

von mîner vrowen niuwe liet.
of my lady new songs.

V. Ein tanzwîse, und ist diu fünfte wîse.
V. A dance-tune, and is the fifth tune.

Sumer ist nu gar zergân,
Summer is now wholly perished,

gesweiget sint diu vogellîn.
fallen-silent are the little-birds.

Des muoz ich vil trûric stân
Therefore must I very sad stand

und in dem herzen jâmric sîn.
and in the heart woeful be.

Winder und ein ander leit
Winter and an other sorrow

diu gebent mir dicke senden muot:
they give me often longing spirit:

sie habent mir beidiu leider widerseit,
they have me both alas defied,

Sumers sol man sîn gemeit:
In-summer shall one be joyful:

sô mac ein man der vrouwen sîn
so may a man of-the lady his

Wol mit dienste sîn bereit.
Well with service be ready.

vil sælic sî sîn liehter schîn!
very blessed be its bright shine!

Winder, ich pin dir gehaz,
Winter, I am to-thee hostile,

dâ bî der sumerwunne holt:
there by to-the summer-delight devoted:

sô mac man werden vrouwen dienen baz.
so may one worthy ladies serve better.

Zwiu sol mir des winders zît
Wherefore shall to-me the winter's time

und ouch dar zuo sîn langiu naht?
and also there to its long night?

An der al mîn freude lît,
On whom all my joy lies,

diu hât des leider niht gedâht,
she has of-it alas not thought,

Daz sich ende sô mîn strît
That itself end so my strife

als einem, dem sô wol geschiht,
as to-one, to-whom so well happens,

der nâhen bî bî liebe lieblîch lît.
who near by by love lovingly lies.

Sît man leit nâch liebe hât,
Since one sorrow after love has,

sô sol ouch liep nâch leide ergân.
so shall also love after sorrow come.

Mîn lîp noch in leide stât:
My person still in sorrow stands:

des ist mir endelôs mîn wân.
of-it is to-me endless my hope.

Vrouwe, wende sô mîn leit,
Lady, turn so my sorrow,

daz mir nâch leide liep geschehe.
that to-me after sorrow love happen.

mîn herze bî den freuden jâmer treit.
my heart by the joys misery bears.

Vrouwe, liebiu vrouwe mîn,
Lady, dear lady mine,

war umbe bistu mir gehaz?
where for art-thou to-me hostile?

Ich was ie der dienest dîn.
I was ever the servant thine.

daz weiz got wol und niemen baz,
that knows God well and no-one better,

Daz ich von dir mînen muot
That I from thee my spirit

noch nie gewande sît der zît,
yet never turned since the time,

daz ich verstuont beid übel unde guot.
that I understood both ill and good.

334 Den winder reit ich alzehant
The winter rode I forthwith

vrowen sehen hin in daz lant,
ladies see thither into the land,

dâ diu vil reine, süeze was.
where the very pure, sweet-one was.

noch stæter denne ein adamas
yet steadier than an adamant

was daz herze mîn gein ir.
was the heart mine toward her.

ich gedâht vil inneclîche mir,
I thought very inwardly to-me,

wa ich næme einen boten dar,
where I took a messenger thither,

der ir saget mînen willen gar.
who her told my will wholly.

335 Des kunde ôt leider niht geschehen:
Of-it could just alas not happen:

ich mohte den boten nie erspehen,
I might the messenger never espy,

ervinden nie über al daz lant,
find never over all the land,

den ich zuo ir möht hân gesant.
whom I to her might have sent.

des muost daz senede herze mîn
therefore must the longing heart mine

durch nôt von schulden trûric sîn.
for need by rights sad be.

ich was vil nâch an vreuden tôt
I was very nearly in joys dead

von der vil senelîcher nôt.
from the very longing distress.

Mîn freude was gelegen nider. 336
My joy was laid down.

nu kom der sumer aber wider
now came the summer again back

mit sîner schœne, als er ie pflac:
with its beauty, as it ever was-wont:

er brâht vil manigen schœnen tac.
it brought very many-a beautiful day.

ich gedâht: «ich wil der vrowen mîn
I thought: «I will the lady mine

ôt aber hiure diende sîn.
just again this-year serving be.

ich diene ir vil lîhte etswaz,
I serve her very perhaps something,

dâ von ich ir gevalle baz.»
there from I her please better.»

Ich wart vil kurzlîch wol bereit 337
I became very shortly well ready

mit orssen und mit wâppencleit
with horses and with coats-of-arms

und fuor mit freuden alzehant
and went with joys forthwith

gein Kernden unde gên Kreinlant
toward Carinthia and toward Carniola

und danne gegen Ysterrîch.
and then toward Istria.

dô het von Gorz der êrenrîch
then had of Gorizia the honor-rich

in Tryest ein ritterschaft geleit
in Trieste a chivalry laid

durch sîn vil hôhe werdecheit.
for his very high worthiness.

338 Diu ritterschaft wart ritterlîch.
The chivalry became knightly.

dâ wart manic ritter êren rîch,
there became many-a knight of-honors rich,

der dâ mit arbeit daz versolt,
who there with labor that deserved,

daz im die vrowen wurden holt.
that to-him the ladies became devoted.

der grâve Meinhart ez dâ wol tet
the count Meinhard it there well did

und ê und sît an maniger stet.
and before and since in many-a place.

ez wurden wol fünf hundert sper
there were well five hundred spears

aldâ verstochen oder mêr.
there used-up or more.

339 Dô funfzehen sper ich dâ verstach
When fifteen spears I there used-up

vil ritterlîch. dô daz geschach,
very knightly. when that happened,

dô tet man mir sâ an der stunt
then made one me at-once at the hour

ze Brihsen einen turnei kunt:
at Brixen a tournament known:

dâ fuor ich ritterlîchen hin.
there went I knightly thither.

ze dienste stuont gar al mîn sin
to service stood wholly all my mind

der herzenlieben vrowen mîn:
to-the heart-dear lady mine:

der wold ich dâ ze dienste sîn.
her would I there to service be.

At Brixen, Wolfschalk of Bozen strikes a finger from Ulrich's hand in a joust, leaving it hanging by a vein. A careless surgeon lets the wound turn black, so Ulrich drives him off and rides to Bozen, composing Song VI on the way. There a better master binds it and promises to heal him. A lady sends him four books to pass the time and a tune unknown in German lands, for which he writes the German words of Song VII.

Aventiure wie der herre Uolrîch sînen finger verlôs.
Adventure how the lord Ulrich his finger lost.

Dô ich ze Prihsen kom geriten, 340
When I to Brixen came ridden,

die ritter mich nâch ritters siten
the knights me after knight's custom

enpfiengen ritterlîchen wol,
received knightly well,

alsô man geste enpfâhen sol.
as one guests receive shall.

an ir gruoze mir niht gebrast:
in their greeting to-me nothing lacked:

ich was in ein vil lieber gast:
I was to-them a very dear guest:

si buten mirz wol sust unde sô.
they offered me-it well thus and so.

des dancte ich in und was sîn vrô.
for-it thanked I them and was of-it glad.

341 Der turnei wart geteilet zuo.
The tournament was divided to.

wir zogten ûz des morgens fruo.
we drew out in-the morning early.

ein velt diu Merre ist genant:
a field the Mahr is named:

dâ zogt wir ûf gar sâzehant.
there drew we up wholly forthwith.

der turnei huop sich und wart guot:
the tournament raised itself and became good:

wol hundert ritter wolgemuot
well hundred knights well-spirited

mit manger hande arebeit
with many kinds labor

des tages erwurben dâ werdicheit.
of-the day won there worthiness.

342 Dô sich der turnei gar zerlie,
When itself the tournament wholly dissolved,

nu hœret, wie ez dô ergie:
now hear, how it then befell:

von Pôtzen her Uolschalch mich bat
of Bozen sir Wolfschalk me bade

durch mîne vrowen an der stat
for my lady on the spot

mit im verstechen dâ ein sper.
with him break there a spear.

daz was gar mînes herzen ger.
that was wholly my heart's desire.

den helm mîn ich sâ ûf bant:
the helmet mine I at-once up bound:

als tet ouch er sâzehant.
as did also he forthwith.

Mit zwein starken speren sâ 343
With two strong spears at-once

wir ûf einander ranten dâ.
we upon one-another charged there.

ein schœn tyost aldâ geschach.
a beautiful joust there happened.

der hôchgelobt Uolschalch mir stach
the highly-praised Wolfschalk to-me thrust

einen vinger ûz der hant.
a finger out-of the hand.

dô ich der wunden dâ enpfant,
when I the wound there felt,

dô bant ich abe den helm mîn:
then bound I off the helmet mine:

ich muost daz stechen lâzen sîn.
I must the jousting let be.

Dar nâch sô merket, waz ich sage. 344
There after so mark, what I say.

die ritter wâren dâ in clage
the knights were there in lament

alle gar umb den schaden mîn.
all wholly about the harm mine.

ich sprach: «daz sült ir lâzen sîn.
I spoke: «that shall you let be.

ez hebt mich selben vil unhô.
it lifts me self very little.

ich sagiu, wâ von ichs bin frô:
I tell-you, where from I-it am glad:

ez ist mir durch ein wîp geschehen:
it is to-me for a woman happened:

diu muoz sîn mir für dienest jehen.»
she must of-it me for service grant.»

345 Dô zogt wir wider in die stat,
Then drew we back into the town,

einen meister ich mir gewinnen bat.
a master I me get bade.

der kom vil kurzlîchen dar.
he came very shortly thither.

dô er gesach die wunden gar
when he saw the wounds wholly

beidiu dort unde hie
both there and here

(der vinger an einer âder hie),
(the finger on a vein hung),

er sprach: «er wirt iu rehte wol,
he spoke: «it becomes you right well,

ob man iu tuot reht, als man sol.»
if one you does right, as one shall.»

346 Des trôstes wart mîn herze vrô,
Of-the comfort became my heart glad,

und sprach wider den meister sô:
and spoke to the master so:

«trieget ir mich niht und sît getriu,
«(if)-deceive you me not and are faithful,

sô gib ich willeclîchen iu
so give I willingly you

alsô krefteclîchez guot,
so mighty goods,

des ir sît immer wol gemuot.
of-which you are ever well spirited.

machet ir den vinger mir gesunt,
(if)-make you the finger to-me healthy,

ich gibiu, welt ir, tûsent pfunt.»
I give-you, (if)-will you, thousand pounds.»

Er underwant sich mîn zehant, 347
He undertook himself of-me forthwith,

den vinger er zehant mir bant.
the finger he forthwith to-me bound.

in den banden ich dô lac
in the bandages I then lay

reht unz an den sehsten tac.
right until to the sixth day.

dô er die wunden wolde sehen
when he the wound would see

und ir varwe begunde spehen,
and its color began to-examine,

dô was si swarz und ungevar.
then was it black and discolored.

des erschrac ich und der meister gar.
of-it took-fright I and the master wholly.

Dô sprach ich: «wie, meister mîn? 348
Then spoke I: «how, master mine?

ich mac vil wol versûmet sîn
I may very well neglected be

mit iwer meisterschefte gar.
with your mastery wholly.

diu wunde ist alsô missevar.»
the wound is so ill-colored.»

er sweic, daz er nie wort gesprach;
he was-silent, that he never word spoke;

wan daz er jæmerlîche sach.
except that he woefully looked.

bî mir er vast in sorgen saz.
by me he fast in sorrows sat.

ich sprach: «nu vart den gotes haz
I spoke: «now go to-the God's hatred

349 Alsam ein bœswiht von mir hin!
Like a villain from me away!

ir sît ein man gar âne sin,
you are a man wholly without sense,

daz ir deheinen biderben man
that you any worthy man

iuch geturret genemen an
you dare take on

mit erzenîe, und kunnet des niht.
with medicine, and know of-it not.

mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht,
my mouth by truth to-you of-it declares,

liez ichz durch got niht, daz ist wâr,
left I-it for God not, that is true,

sô hiez ich iuch besnîden gar.»
so bade I you castrate wholly.»

350 Mîn herze daz was ungemuot.
My heart it was ill-spirited.

ich hôrte sagen, ein meister guot
I heard tell, a master good

wær ze Pôtzen: dar reit ich.
were at Bozen: thither rode I.

man trôst des endelîchen mich,
one comforted of-it truly me,

und kœm ich kurzelîchen dar,
and came I shortly thither,

er machte mir den vinger gar
he made me the finger wholly

mit sîner meisterschaft gesunt.
with his mastery healthy.

ich reit zuo im sâ an der stunt.
I rode to him at-once at the hour.

Dô ich dar ûf dem wege reit, 351
When I thither on the way rode,

von gedanken mir mîn leit
from thoughts to-me my sorrow

swant ein teil. ich gedâht alsô:
vanished a part. I thought thus:

«ich mac wol immer wesen vrô.
«I may well ever be glad.

daz ich der werden dienen sol,
that I the worthy-one serve shall,

daz tuot mir inneclîche wol.»
that does me inwardly well.»

mîn herze singen mir dô riet
my heart to-sing me then counseled

von mîner vrowen disiu liet:
of my lady these songs:

VI. Ein tanzwîse, und ist diu sehste wîse.
VI. A dance-tune, and is the sixth tune.

Wê daz mir diu guote
Woe that me the good-one

verret sô ir minne!
far-removes so her love!

des bin ich in dem muote
therefore am I in the spirit

vil ofte unfrô.
very often unglad.

Sol mir niht gelingen
Shall to-me not succeed

an ir, der ich singe,
with her, of-whom I sing,

sô muoz mîn herze ringen
so must my heart wrestle

mit trûren sô,
with sadness so,

Daz ich nimmer mêre
That I never more

ze freuden gesinne.
to joys may-think.

sie hâts lützel êre,
she has-it little honor,

stât mîn herze unhô.
stands my heart low.

Schœne bî der güete
Beauty by the goodness

stât vil wol den wîben:
stands very well to-the women:

sô stât ouch hôchgemüete
so stands also high-spirit

den mannen wol.
to-the men well.

Hôchgemüete wolde
High-spirit would

gerne vil belîben
gladly much remain

bî mir, het ich sie holde,
by me, had I her devoted,

von der ich dol
from whom I suffer

Herzenlîche swære.
Heartfelt grief.

dâ von muoz ich mîden
there from must I avoid

vreuden, der mir wære
joys, of-which to-me were

sus mîn herze vol.
thus my heart full.

Jâ man ich vil sêre,
Yes urge I very sorely,

vrouwe, dîne güete,
lady, thy goodness,

daz dû mich durch dîn êre
that thou me for thy honor

bedenkest baz.
considerest better.

Lâ mich gnâde vinden,
Let me grace find,

daz dich got behüete.
that thee God protect.

an dir sô müez mir swinden
in thee so may to-me vanish

der minne haz.
the love's hatred.

Diu ist mir gevære;
That is to-me hostile;

dâ von mîn gemüete
there from my mind

ist vil vreuden lære.
is very of-joys empty.

guot wîp, wende daz!
good woman, turn that!

352 Nu was ouch ich ze Bôtzen komen.
Now was also I to Bozen come.

dô daz der meister het vernomen,
when that the master had heard,

er kom zuo mir sâ an der stat
he came to me at-once on the spot

nâch mînem willen, als ich bat.
after my will, as I bade.

er schoute mir die wunden mîn;
he looked to-me the wound mine;

er sprach: «ir sült âne angest sîn.
he spoke: «you shall without fear be.

ich mach iuch in vil kurzer stunt
I make you in very short time

an iwerm vinger wol gesunt.»
on your finger well healthy.»

353 Er underwant sich mîn zehant:
He undertook himself of-me forthwith:

die wunden mîn er schône bant,
the wound mine he beautifully bound,

vil meisterlîchen unde wol,
very masterfully and well,

als von reht ein meister sol.
as by right a master shall.

dô ich gelac dâ siben tage,
when I lay there seven days,

(nu mercket reht, waz ich iu sage)
(now mark rightly, what I you tell)

ein vrowe sande ir boten mir.
a lady sent her messenger to-me.

des muoz ich immer danken ir.
for-it must I ever thank her.

Sie hiez ir boten mir daz sagen, 354
She bade her messenger me that tell,

sie wolde von herzen immer clagen
she would from heart ever lament

mîne sendelîchiu leit:
my longing sorrows:

ir wære daz von mir geseit,
to-her were that of me said,

ich wære der vrowen dienestman,
I were the ladies' vassal,

mit triuwen dienstes undertân:
with faithfulness of-service subject:

dâ von solt ieslîch werdez wîp
there from should each worthy woman

mit triwen clagen mînen lîp.
with faithfulness lament my person.

Der bote sprach: «herre, diu vrowe mîn 355
The messenger spoke: «lord, the lady mine

hât iu gesant vier büechelîn,
has you sent four little-books,

daz ir die wîle dâ kürzet mite.
that you the while there shorten with.

si giht, ez sî guot ritters site,
she declares, it be good knight's custom,

die gern hœren bî ir tagen
who gladly hear by their days

singen, lesen unde sagen,
sing, read and tell,

waz hie vor die biderben man
what here before the worthy men

durch werde vrowen habent getân.»
for worthy ladies have done.»

356 Ich sprach: «ich nîge ir ûf den fuoz.
I spoke: «I bow her to the foot.

von reht ichz immer dienen muoz,
by right I-it ever serve must,

daz sî ir zuht hât gegen mir
that she her courtesy has toward me

alsô getân. des danke ich ir
so shown. for-it thank I her

und wilz ouch immer diende sîn.
and will-it also ever serving be.

daz sag von mir der vrowen dîn,
that tell from me the lady thine,

ich dien ez unz an mînen tôt,
I serve it until to my death,

daz sî mir ie sô wol enbôt.»
that she me ever so well announced.»

357 Sus reit er hin, und ich lac hie.
Thus rode he thither, and I lay here.

nu hœret, wie ez dô ergie:
now hear, how it then befell:

des andern tages kom er wider.
of-the second day came he back.

dô het ich mich geleget nider:
then had I me laid down:

durch ruowe ich an dem bette lac.
for rest I on the bed lay.

daz was reht umb mitten tac,
that was right about mid day,

dô der bote zuo mir gie,
when the messenger to me went,

den ich mit worten wol enpfie.
whom I with words well received.

Er sprach: «des müeze iu lônen got. 358
He spoke: «for-it may you reward God.

ich bin ôt aber zuo iu bot.
I am just again to you messenger.

eu hât mîn vrowe her gesant
you has my lady hither sent

bî mir ein wîse, diu unbekant
by me a tune, which unknown

ist in teutschen landen gar
is in German lands wholly

(daz sült gelouben ir für wâr):
(that shall believe you for true):

dâ sult ir teutsch singen in:
there shall you German sing in:

des bitet sî, der bot ich bin.»
of-it bids she, whose messenger I am.»

Die wîse ich lernte an der stat 359
The tune I learned on the spot

und sanc drin reht, als sî mich bat
and sang therein right, as she me bade

mit triuwen vrowen werdecheit,
with faithfulness ladies' worthiness,

den ich ze dienst ie was bereit
whom I to service ever was ready

und ouch mit triuwen dienen wil
and also with faithfulness serve will

vil gern unz an mîn endes zil.
very gladly until to my end's goal.

ir lop mich ofte machet vrô.
their praise me often makes glad.

nu hœret: diu liet sprechent sô:
now hear: the songs speak so:

VII. Ein sincwîse, und ist diu sibende wîse.
VII. A sing-tune, and is the seventh tune.

Wê war umbe sul wir sorgen?
Woe where for shall we sorrow?

vreude ist guot.
joy is good.

Von den wîben sol man borgen
From the women shall one borrow

hôhen muot.
high spirit.

Wol im, der in kan gewinnen
Well him, who it can win

von in! derst ein sælic man.
from them! he-is a blessed man.

freude sol man durch sie minnen:
joy shall one for them love:

wan dâ lît vil êren an.
for there lies much of-honors on.

Wir süln tanzen, singen, lachen
We shall dance, sing, laugh

durch diu wîp.
for the women.

Dâ mit mac ein man gemachen,
There with may a man make,

daz sîn lîp
that his person

Wirdet wert, ob er mit triuwen
Becomes worthy, if he with faithfulness

dienet guoter wîbe gruoz.
serves good women's greeting.

swen sîn dienest wil geriuwen,
whom his service will rue,

dem wirt selten kumbers buoz.
to-him becomes seldom of-trouble remedy.

Mit dem wazzer man daz fiuwer
With the water one the fire

leschet gar:
quenches wholly:

Vinster ist der sunnen tiuwer.
Dark is to-the sun scarce.

beidiu wâr
both true

Sint diu mære: ir hœret mêre!
Are the tales: you hear more!

habet für wâr ûf mînen lîp:
have for true on my life:

rehten man von herzen sêre
right man from heart sorely

scheidet nieman wan diu wîp.
parts no-one but the women.

Ouwê ouwê, frouwe Minne,
Alas alas, lady Love,

mir ist wê.
to-me is woe.

Nû grîf her, wie sêre ich brinne.
Now grasp hither, how sorely I burn.

kalter snê
cold snow

Müeste von der hitze brinnen,
Must from the heat burn,

diu mir an dem herzen lît.
which to-me in the heart lies.

kanstu, Minne, triuwe minnen,
canst-thou, Love, faithfulness love,

sô hilfestu mir enzît.
so helpest-thou me in-time.

XV · THE NEW MESSENGER

The lady rewards the songs with a little dog. Though his wound keeps him from arms, Ulrich goes to a tournament at Friesach, offers the dog and jewels as a prize in a lady's name, and the tournament breaks up in rivalry. Lacking a messenger, he is visited by a squire, a friend who grieves for his finger and turns out to know his lady, and Ulrich makes him his messenger with his songs and the news of the lost finger. The lady receives the squire kindly but is angered by the message and says she will never know secret love and will not take a service that would wound her honor.

Der bot niht langer dâ beleip.
The messenger not longer there remained.

zehant dô man diu liet geschreip,
forthwith when one the songs wrote,

dô beleip er niht langer dâ:
then remained he not longer there:

er fuort si sîner vrowen sâ.
he brought them to-his lady at-once.

dô sîs gelas, diu wol gemuot,
when she-them read, the well spirited-one,

si sprach alsô: «diu liet sint guot.
she spoke thus: «the songs are good.

nu füer im hin ditz hundelîn:
now bring him thither this little-dog:

daz sol sîn miet von mir sîn.»
that shall his reward from me be.»

Daz hundelîn gap mir der bot. 361
The little-dog gave me the messenger.

ich sag für wâr eu daz bî got
I tell for true you that by God

und gihe niht, wan als ich dô jach,
and declare nothing, except as I then declared,

daz ich nie schœnern hunt gesach.
that I never more-beautiful dog saw.

des hundes von mir wart genigen
for-the dog by me was bowed

und grôzez danken niht verswigen:
and great thanking not kept-silent:

die gâbe ich willeclîch enpfie.
the gift I willingly received.

nu hœret, wie ez dar nâch ergie:
now hear, how it there after befell:

362 Ein bot mir kom von heime dar:
A messenger to-me came from home thither:

der saget mir endelîch für wâr,
he told me truly for true,

bî sînen triuwen er mir jach,
by his faithfulness he me declared,

ein turney wurde ze Vrisach
a tournament would-be at Friesach

von dem tage an dem zwelften tage.
from the day on the twelfth day.

des kom mîn herze in grôze clage,
therefore came my heart into great lament,

daz ich dâ bî niht solde sîn.
that I there by not should be.

dô sprach zehant der meister mîn:
then spoke forthwith the master mine:

363 «Herre, ir sült mir des verjehen:
«Lord, you shall me of-it confess:

ir wolt den turnei gern sehen.»
you would the tournament gladly see.»

«jâ zewâre, meister mîn:
«yes truly, master mine:

ich sæhe in gern, möht ez sîn.»
I would-see it gladly, might it be.»

«sô vart dar, sît irz gern tuot.»
«so go thither, since you-it gladly do.»

«nu waz ob ez mir niht ist guot?»
«now what if it to-me not is good?»

«nein, ich trûwe iuch wol bewarn:
«no, I trust you well to-keep:

wan ich wil selbe mit iu varn.»
for I will self with you go.»

Der rede wart mîn herze vrô. 364
Of-the speech became my heart glad.

an der stat bereit ich dô
on the spot readied I then

mich unde reit von danne zehant
me and rode from thence forthwith

ze Vrisach in daz Kärndenlant.
to Friesach into the Carinthia's-land.

dô ich dar kom, die freunde mîn
when I thither came, the friends mine

mich hiezen willekomen sîn.
me bade welcome be.

eu sî von wârheit daz geseit:
to-you be by truth that said:

mîn vinger wart dâ vil gekleit.
my finger was there much lamented.

Wol drithalp hundert ritter guot 365
Well two-and-a-half hundred knights good

dar wâren komen durch hôhen muot.
thither were come for high spirit.

ê ich dar kœme, der turney
before I thither came, the tournament

was geteilet gar enzwei.
was divided wholly in-two.

mir was vil herzenlîchen leit,
to-me was very heartily sorrowful,

daz ich niht mohte wâpenkleit
that I not might coat-of-arms

gefüeren durch die vrowen mîn.
wear for the lady mine.

dâ von sach man mich trûric sîn.
there from saw one me sad be.

366 Ich gedâht: «sît daz ich ritter hie
I thought: «since that I knight here

niht mac gesîn, jâ herre, wie
not may be, yes lord, how

möht ich den turnei understân?
might I the tournament prevent?

hie ist sô manic biderbe man,
here is so many-a worthy man,

daz vil guottât hie geschiht:
that much good-deed here happens:

sol ich der einer wesen niht,
(if)-shall I of-them one be not,

der ez wol ûf dem veld hie tuot,
who it well on the field here does,

sô bin ich immer ungemuot.»
so am I ever ill-spirited.»

367 Ich nam daz schœne hundelîn,
I took the beautiful little-dog,

gürtel, vingerl, heftelin,
girdle, finger-ring, brooch,

daz wol gein drîzic marken wac.
which well toward thirty marks weighed.

nu hœret, wes ich dâ mit pflac.
now hear, what I there with did.

ich bat die ritter alle komen
I bade the knights all come

zesamen. von mir dâ wart vernomen,
together. by me there was heard,

ich swuor in teure dâ bî got,
I swore them dearly there by God,

ich wære dar einer vrowen bot.
I were thither a lady's messenger.

Ich sprach: «ir sült des danken ir: 368
I spoke: «you shall for-it thank her:

si hât gesant iu her bî mir
she has sent you hither by me

ditze cleinôt, als ich sage.
this jewel, as I say.

swelch ritter hie den brîs bejage,
whichever knight here the prize win,

dem sol ich von der werden geben.
to-him shall I from the worthy-one give.

er mac wol hôhes muotes leben,
he may well of-high spirit live,

dem solher prîs hie widervert,
to-whom such prize here befalls,

daz im daz cleinôt ist beschert.»
that to-him the jewel is allotted.»

Die ritter wâren alle vrô. 369
The knights were all glad.

vil manger im gedâht alsô:
very many-a-one to-himself thought thus:

«mir muoz daz cleinôt sîn beschert,
«to-me must the jewel be allotted,

daz mir daz niemen hie erwert.
that me that no-one here withholds.

ich wil den lîp und ouch daz guot
I will the body and also the goods

dar umbe wâgen, daz ist mîn muot.
there for venture, that is my spirit.

jâ muoz ich tôt alhie geligen
yes must I dead here lie

oder an dem prîse hie gesigen.»
or in the prize here triumph.»

370 Umb êre wart dâ grôzer nît:
About honor was there great envy:

si trahten alle wider strît
they strove all in rivalry

umbe prîs dâ harte ritterlîch,
for prize there very knightly,

der sus der sô, doch ungelîch.
this-one thus that-one so, yet unequal.

der nam sich mêr gesellen an,
this-one took himself more companions on,

sô wolde der mêre orsse hân:
so would that-one more horses have:

kipper mêr, geselle min;
kippers more, companions fewer;

sus ungelîche stuont ir sin.
thus unequally stood their mind.

371 Die piderben trahten dâ den prîs
The worthy-ones strove there the prize

ze werben harte mangen wîs;
to win very many ways;

dâ von der turnei gar zergie:
there from the tournament wholly dissolved:

si kunden in gesamenen nie,
they could it gather never,

als er dâ vor geteilet wart.
as it there before divided was.

der teil sich bêdenthalben zart,
the part itself on-both-sides tore,

zefüeret wâren al die schar:
scattered were all the troops:

dâ von zergie der turnei gar.
there from dissolved the tournament wholly.

Den turnei wand ich dâ durch nît 372
The tournament turned I there through envy

und schiet von danne sâ an der zît
and parted from thence at-once at the time

hin heim, von danne sâ zehant
thither home, from thence at-once forthwith

in daz vil reine, süeze lant,
into the very pure, sweet land,

dar inne was diu vrowe mîn.
there in was the lady mine.

ich wolde dâ aber werbent sîn
I would there again wooing be

umb einen boten, den ich ir
for a messenger, whom I to-her

sand ôt aber: daz was mîn gir.
sent just again: that was my desire.

Ich traht umb einen boten vil. 373
I strove for a messenger much.

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
for true I you that tell will:

ich moht sîn leider niht gehaben.
I might of-it alas not have.

des was diu vreude mîn begraben.
therefore was the joy mine buried.

ich moht ir nie gemachen kunt,
I might her never make known,

daz ich durch sî was warden wunt.
that I for her was become wounded.

sît ich die wârheit sprechen sol,
since I the truth speak shall,

daz tet mir wê und niender wol.
that did me woe and nowhere well.

374 Mir muost wê von gedanken sîn:
To-me must woe from thoughts be:

ouch tet mir wê der vinger mîn,
also did me woe the finger mine,

daz man mir zwir des tages bant
which one me twice of-the day bound

alsô, daz plüeten muost mîn hant.
so, that bleed must my hand.

di nôt ich zwir leit in dem tage:
the distress I twice suffered in the day:

doch tet mir wirs diu senede clage,
yet did me worse the longing lament,

daz ich niht boten mohte hân.
that I not messenger might have.

des was mîn vreude gar zergân.
therefore was my joy wholly perished.

375 Ich het mich boten gar bewegen:
I had me of-messenger wholly given-up:

des was mîn hôher muot gelegen,
therefore was my high spirit laid,

ich leit von sorgen ungemach.
I suffered from sorrows discomfort.

nu hœret, waz mir dô geschach:
now hear, what to-me then happened:

in dem lande was ein kneht:
in the land was a servant:

des zuht was grôz, sîn triwe sleht.
whose courtesy was great, his faithfulness straight.

er was mîn vriunt, zuo mir er reit,
he was my friend, to me he rode,

den vinger mîn er sêre cleit.
the finger mine he sorely lamented.

Er sprach alsô: «got weiz ez wol, 376
He spoke thus: «God knows it well,

sît ich di wârheit sprechen sol,
since I the truth speak shall,

mir ist umb iwern smerzen leit.
to-me is about your pain sorrowful.

des sî pfant al mîn sælicheit.
of-it be pledge all my blessedness.

sold ez an mînem willen sîn,
should it on my will be,

ich het ez an dem lîbe mîn
I had it on the body mine

für iuch: daz sult gelouben ir
for you: that shall believe you

bî mînen rehten triwen mir.»
by my right faithfulness me.»

Ich sprach: «friunt, ich getrûwe dir wol, 377
I spoke: «friend, I trust thee well,

dêswâr, als ich von rehte sol.
truly, as I by right shall.

du bist mir ie gewesen holt.
thou art to-me ever been devoted.

mîn herze mangen jâmer dolt
my heart many-a misery endures

von gedanken um ein wîp,
from thoughts about a woman,

der ie gedienet hât mîn lîp:
whom ever served has my person:

der kan ich niht gemachen kunt,
to-her can I not make known,

daz ich durch sî bin warden wunt.»
that I for her am become wounded.»

378 «Herre friunt, ich wil iu sagen:
«Lord friend, I will you tell:

ich hân in disen zehen tagen
I have in these ten days

iwer trûtschaft gesehen.
your beloved seen.

getörst ich des vor iu gejehen,
dared I of-it before you declare,

ich hân si lange wol bekant,
I have her long well known,

swie ir mirs doch niht habt genant.
however you to-me-her yet not have named.

ich erkenne si wol, geloubet daz,
I know her well, believe that,

und weiz wol, sî ist iu niht gehaz.»
and know well, she is to-you not hostile.»

379 «Nu welle got,» sprach ich zehant,
«Now will God,» spoke I forthwith,

«daz daz iemen sî bekant,
«that that anyone be known,

wer si sî, diu vrowe mîn.
who she be, the lady mine.

ich wil des gar âne angest sîn,
I will of-it wholly without fear be,

daz dû iht wizest, wer si sî.
that thou anything knowest, who she be.

sage an, wer ist si, der du bî
tell on, who is she, whom thou by

bist gewesen in kurzen tagen?
art been in short days?

daz soltu mir vil rehte sagen.»
that shalt-thou me very rightly tell.»

Dô nand er mir sî zehant. 380
Then named he me her forthwith.

er sprach: «mir ist daz wol bekant,
he spoke: «to-me is that well known,

daz an ir iwer freude lît:
that on her your joy lies:

si ist iwers herzen meienzît.»
she is your heart's May-time.»

zehant dô er daz wort gesprach,
forthwith when he that word spoke,

ein minnewunder mir geschach:
a love-wonder to-me happened:

daz houbet mîn mir nider seic,
the head mine to-me down sank,

mîn herze seuft, mîn munt der sweic.
my heart sighed, my mouth it was-silent.

Er sprach: «wie nû? wie tuot ir sô? 381
He spoke: «how now? how do you so?

wie sît ir warden als unfrô?
how are you become so unglad?

euch hât ir nam gemachet tôt.
you has her name made dead.

ist iu daz leit, dêst gar âne nôt,
(if)-is to-you that sorrowful, that-is wholly without need,

daz ichs erkenne: daz ist iu guot.
that I-her know: that is to-you good.

ich trage iw alsô holden muot
I bear you so devoted spirit

und hân ouch wol sô guoten sin,
and have also well so good sense,

daz ich iu guot wol gegen ir bin.»
that I to-you good well toward her am.»

382 Ich sprach: «geselle, du solt mir sagen,
I spoke: «companion, thou shalt me tell,

di rehten wârheit niht verdagen:
the right truth not conceal:

wer hât dir mîner vrowen namen
who has to-thee my lady's name

kunt getân? ich wil michs schamen,
known made? I will me-of-it be-ashamed,

ist ez von mînen schulden komen,
(if)-is it from my faults come,

daz dû ir namen hâst vernomen:
that thou her name hast heard:

sô sol diu werde vrowe mîn
so shall the worthy lady mine

von reht mir immer vremde sîn.»
by right to-me ever strange be.»

383 «Nein, herre, ir sît unschuldic gar.
«No, lord, you are guiltless wholly.

sîn ist vil nâch wol drithalp jâr,
of-it is very nearly well two-and-a-half years,

daz mich mîn vrowe het gesant
that me my lady had sent

zuo ir: dâ wart ez mir bekant.
to her: there became it to-me known.

abe mîner niftel ichz erfuor
from my niece I-it learned

einer, der ich tiure swuor,
one, to-whom I dearly swore,

daz ez von mir wær gar verdaget
that it by me were wholly concealed

und allen leuten ungesaget.»
and to-all people untold.»

«Sage an, sô dich diu vrowe dîn 384
«Tell on, so thee the lady thine

sendet zuo der vrowen mîn,
sends to the lady mine,

und læt man dich die werden sehen,
and (if)-lets one thee the worthy-one see,

des soltu mir vil rehte jehen.
of-it shalt-thou me very rightly declare.

du solt ouch mich verswîgen niht,
thou shalt also me keep-silent not,

maht dû mit ir gereden iht
mayst thou with her speak anything

verholne? ob man dir des gan,
secretly? if one thee of-it grants,

sô wird ich noch ein sælic man.»
so become I yet a blessed man.»

«Ir sült für wâr gelouben mir: 385
«You shall for true believe me:

man gan ze reden mir mit ir
one grants to speak me with her

verholn reht allez, daz ich wil,
secretly right all, that I will,

es sî lützel oder vil.
it be little or much.

daz hœret sî mir zühteclîch,
that hears she me courteously,

diu reine, süeze, tugentrîch.
the pure, sweet, virtue-rich-one.

ich pin ir willekomen gar,
I am to-her welcome wholly,

als mich mîn vrowe sendet dar.»
as me my lady sends thither.»

386 Ich sprach: «wol mich, daz du ie
I spoke: «well me, that thou ever

mir wære holt; und daz ich nie
to-me wert devoted; and that I never

dich niht verzêch, des bin ich frô,
thee at-all refused, of-it am I glad,

sît daz dîn dinc stât gegen ir sô.
since that thy thing stands toward her so.

daz dû mit ir redest, swaz du wil,
that thou with her speakest, whatever thou wilt,

daz ist gar mînes herzen spil.
that is wholly my heart's game.

sô soltu, lieber vriunt mîn,
so shalt-thou, dear friend mine,

mîn bote zuo der vrowen sîn.»
my messenger to the lady be.»

387 «Ich bin iwer bot mit triwen dar
«I am your messenger with faithfulness thither

und sage ir endelîchen gar
and tell her truly wholly

allez, daz ir enbietet ir:
all, that you announce her:

daz sült ir wol gelouben mir:
that shall you well believe me:

daz sag ich ir in kurzer zît.
that tell I her in short time.

und swaz antwürte sî mir gît,
and whatever answer she me gives,

daz sag ich iu her wider sâ,
that tell I you hither back at-once,

si spreche nein, si spreche jâ.»
she speak no, she speak yes.»

«Vriunt, nu müeze dir lônen got 388
«Friend, now may thee reward God

des, daz du wesen wilt mîn bot.
for-it, that thou be wilt my messenger.

nu sage der lieben vrowen mîn
now tell the dear lady mine

für wâr daz ûf die triwe dîn,
for true that on the faithfulness thine,

daz sî mir ist für elliu wîp
that she to-me is before all women

und lieber danne mîn selbes lîp
and dearer than my own person

und lieber danne iht dinges sî.
and dearer than any thing be.

mîn stæte ist gegen ir wandels frî.
my constancy is toward her of-blemish free.

Du solt der tugenderîchen sagen, 389
Thou shalt the virtue-rich-one tell,

ich habe bî vil kurzen tagen
I have in very short days

durch sî gar einen vinger vlorn.
for her wholly a finger lost.

der was ze dienste ir geborn:
which was to service her born:

der ist von einer tyost dâ hin.
which is by a joust there gone.

ich wil beidiu vlust und gewin
I will both loss and gain

durch si lîden mîne tage,
for her suffer my days,

sô mit freuden sô mit klage.
so with joys so with lament.

390 Nu bit die lieben vrowen mîn,
Now bid the dear lady mine,

daz sî mich lâze ir ritter sîn;
that she me let her knight be;

und bit si durch ir werdecheit,
and bid her for her worthiness,

der got hât vil an sî geleit,
which God has much on her laid,

daz sî mir bî dir eteswaz
that she to-me by thee something

enbiet, dâ von mir werde baz
announce, there from to-me be better

und mînem herzen, danne im sî.
and to-my heart, than to-it is.

des bite die guoten wandels vrî.
of-it bid the good-one of-blemish free.

391 Nu bringe ir disiu liet von mir
Now bring her these songs from me

und gibe si zühteclîchen ir
and give them courteously her

und sage ir ûf mîn triuwe daz,
and tell her on my faithfulness that,

daz ich ir nie tac vergaz.
that I her never day forgot.

in mînem stæten herzen lît
in my steadfast heart lies

sî gevangen alle zît.
she captured all time.

got geb, daz ez mir wol ergê:
God grant, that it me well befall:

dar ûz sô kumt si nimmer mê.»
there out so comes she never more.»

Dô nam er urlaup sâ zehant 392
Then took he leave at-once forthwith

und reit hin, dâ er di guoten vant.
and rode thither, where he the good-one found.

dô er dar kom, diu vrowe mîn
when he thither came, the lady mine

diu bat in willekomen sîn.
she bade him welcome be.

sî sprach: «vriunt, du solt mir sagen,
she spoke: «friend, thou shalt me tell,

die rehten wârheit niht verdagen,
the right truth not conceal,

wie sich diu vrowe dîn gehabe.
how herself the lady thine fares.

daz sage mir, wol gezogen knabe.»
that tell me, well bred boy.»

Der knappe sprach vil zühteclîch: 393
The squire spoke very courteously:

«vrowe schœne, tugende rîch,
«lady beautiful, of-virtue rich,

sît ich iu sol der wârheit jehen,
since I you shall the truth declare,

sô hân ich ir nu niht gesehen.
so have I her now not seen.

mich hât ein ritter her gesant,
me has a knight hither sent,

des kumber mir wol ist bekant:
whose trouble to-me well is known:

der enbiut iu, reine vrowe guot,
he announces you, pure lady good,

mit triuwen dienesthaften muot.
with faithfulness service-bound spirit.

394 Er hiez iu sînen kumber sagen
He bade you his trouble tell

und ûf genâde sêre clagen.
and on grace sorely lament.

er ist in vil kurzer stunt
he is in very short time

in iwerm dienest warden wunt.
in your service become wounded.

im ist ein vinger ûz der hant
to-him is a finger out-of the hand

gestochen, daz sî iu bekant.
thrust, that be to-you known.

der was ze dienest iu geborn:
which was to service to-you born:

den hât er ritterlîchen vlorn.
that has he knightly lost.

395 Er hât vil tiure mir gesworn,
He has very dearly to-me sworn,

er habe ze vrowen iuch erkorn
he have as lady you chosen

mit rehter stæticheit alsô,
with right steadfastness so,

daz er kan nimmer werden vrô,
that he can never become glad,

ir welt im denne genædic sîn,
unless-you will to-him then gracious be,

vil tugentrîchiu vrowe mîn.
very virtue-rich lady mine.

er hât iuch liep für elliu wîp
he has you dear before all women

und lieber danne sîn selbes lîp.»
and dearer than his own person.»

«Sage an, wer hât erloubet dir 396
«Tell on, who has permitted thee

alsolhe rede ze reden mit mir?
such speech to speak with me?

des hân ich weizgot niht für guot:
that have I God-knows not for good:

wer ist, der sô tumplîch ist gemuot,
who is, he-who so foolishly is spirited,

der dich hât her zuo mir gesant?
who thee has hither to me sent?

des namen mache mir bekant
his name make me known

und wizze, ez ist mir gar unwert,
and know, it is to-me wholly unwelcome,

daz dû der dinge an mich hâst gegert.»
that thou of-the things of me hast desired.»

«Vrowe, ich nenne iu sînen namen, 397
«Lady, I name you his name,

des er sich nimmer darf geschamen.
for-which he himself never need be-ashamed.

er ist genant von Liehtenstein
he is named of Liechtenstein

her Uolrîch. sîn valsch ist clein
sir Ulrich. his falseness is small

gegen iu, daz weiz ich für wâr.
toward you, that know I for true.

er dienet iu mit triuwen gar:
he serves you with faithfulness wholly:

sô liebes er nie niht gewan
so dear he never anything won

als iuch, guot vrowe wol getân.
as you, good lady well made.

398 Und sold er, liebiu vrowe mîn,
And should he, dear lady mine,

verholn aleine bî iu sîn,
secretly alone by you be,

dâ für sô næme er niht den grâl,
there for so would-take he not the grail,

den der werde Parciphâl
which the worthy Parzival

mit ritterlîcher arebeit
with knightly labor

alsô kummerlîch erstreit.
so toilsomely won-by-fighting.

sîn paradîse, sîn himelrîch
his paradise, his heaven

ist iwer lîp der minneclîch.»
is your person the lovely.»

399 «Nu sage im von mir, höfscher knabe,
«Now tell him from me, courtly boy,

daz er der rede kom gegen mir abe:
that he of-the speech come toward me off:

wan ich hân ir niht für guot.
for I have it not for good.

er sol dar wenden sînen muot,
he shall thither turn his spirit,

daz im ze mâzen sî gestalt.
what to-him to measure be shaped.

mîn lîp sol alsô werden alt,
my person shall so become old,

daz mir daz nimmer wirt bekant,
that to-me that never becomes known,

daz heimlîch minne ist genant.
what secret love is named.

Ich hân im selbe daz gesaget, 400
I have him self that told,

daz er mir dar zuo niht behaget,
that he me there to not pleases,

des sîn tumplîp an mich gert:
which his foolish-person of me desires:

des dunket er mich gar unwert.
therefore seems he me wholly unworthy.

er müet sich selben gar umb niht.
he troubles himself self wholly for nothing.

diu tumpheit nimmer mir geschiht,
the foolishness never to-me happens,

daz ich sô neme den dienest sîn,
that I so take the service his,

dâ von sich krenk diu êre mîn.»
there from itself weaken the honor mine.»

XVI · THE JOURNEY TO ROME

The squire pleads for Ulrich and sings her Song VIII, but she calls Ulrich a fool and threatens him with disgrace. The squire brings her answer back, and Ulrich replies that he will serve her whatever she does; in autumn he journeys to Rome with the squire. He stays sixty days, leaves after Easter, and composes new songs on the way, among them Song IX.

«Nein, vrowe mîn, durch iwer tugent, 401
«No, lady mine, for your virtue,

durch iwer hôchgelobte jugent,
for your highly-praised youth,

durch iwern reinen, süezen muot,
for your pure, sweet spirit,

sît im genædic unde guot.
be to-him gracious and good.

lât in geniezen, daz ir sît
let him enjoy, that you are

gar sînes herzen meienzît.
wholly his heart's May-time.

ir sît, sælic vrowe hêr,
you are, blessed lady noble,

sîn êren gebe, sîn sælden wer.
his honor's giver, his bliss's surety.

402 Ir sît gar sîner freuden trôst.
You are wholly his joy's comfort.

welt ir, er ist trûrens gar erlôst:
(if)-will you, he is of-sadness wholly released:

ir swendet im wol senede clage.
you dispel him well longing lament.

bî mînen triuwen ich iu sage,
by my faithfulness I you tell,

daz mir nie ritter wart bekant
that to-me never knight became known

bî mîner zît über elliu lant,
in my time over all lands,

dem ie sô liebe würd ein wîp,
to-whom ever so dear became a woman,

als im ist iwer werder lîp.
as to-him is your worthy person.

403 Er hât iu, vrowe, liet bî mir
He has you, lady, songs by me

ouch her gesant, diu gerne ir
also hither sent, which gladly you

hœren sült: wan sî sint guot,
hear shall: for they are good,

si machent iuch vrœlîch gemuot.
they make you gladly spirited.

diu wort sint guot, diu wîse niu.
the words are good, the tune new.

er bat si, vrowe, mich singen iu,
he bade them, lady, me sing you,

dô ich nu nâhest von im schiet.
when I now last from him parted.

nu hœret mich! ich kan diu liet:»
now hear me! I know the songs:»

VIII. Daz ist ein tanzwîse, und ist diu ahte wîse.
VIII. That is a dance-tune, and is the eighth tune.

Wol mich, ez ist ergangen,
Well me, it is befallen,

als ich lange hân gegert:
as I long have desired:

Jâ hân ich sie gevangen,
Yes have I her captured,

von der ich sol werden wert.
from whom I shall become worthy.

Sît daz ichs in panden hân,
Since that I-her in bonds have,

sô ist mîn bester wân,
so is my best hope,

sie sül guot an mir begân.
she shall good on me do.

Sie sol mir vreude und êre,
She shall me joy and honor,

dâ bî wernde sælde geben!
there by lasting bliss give!

Odr ich muoz immer mêre
Or I must ever more

sunder trôst in sorgen leben.
without comfort in sorrows live.

Aller mîner vreuden pfant
Of-all my joys' pledge

unde sorgen bant,
and sorrows' bond,

daz stêt allez in ir hant.
that stands all in her hand.

Swie cleine sies enpfinde,
However little she-it feel,

sie muoz mir gebunden sîn.
she must to-me bound be.

Bant, dâ mit ich sie binde,
Bonds, there with I her bind,

daz sint al die sinne mîn,
that are all the senses mine,

Herze und aller mîn gedanc,
Heart and all my thought,

triuwe ân allen kranc,
faithfulness without all weakness,

rehtiu stæte ân allen wanc.
right steadfastness without all wavering.

In mîn vil sendez herze
Into my very longing heart

mitten hân ich sie geleit:
midst have I her laid:

Dâ ligt ouch al mîn smerze,
There lies also all my pain,

dâ ligt ouch mîn klagende leit.
there lies also my lamenting sorrow.

Den zwein, swie leit ez mir sî,
To-the two, however sorrowful it to-me be,

muoz sie ligen bî,
must she lie by,

sien getuo mich beider vrî.
unless-she make me of-both free.

Jâ lâze ich sie wol dingen
Yes let I her well ransom

schône, als ein gevangen sol.
beautifully, as a captive shall.

Mac sie mir helfe bringen
May she me help bring

unde trôst für senede dol,
and comfort for longing suffering,

Habe ir silber unde golt,
Have her silver and gold,

sî mir anders holt:
be-she to-me otherwise devoted:

ich wil wan ir minnen solt.
I will but her love's pay.

Diu minneclîche guote
The lovely good-one

und diu werde hôchgemuot,
and the worthy high-spirited-one,

Waz hilfet al ir huote?
What helps all her guarding?

sie ist vor mir vil unbehuot.
she is from me very unguarded.

Wie kan sie behüeten daz,
How can she guard that,

der ich nie vergaz,
of-whom I never forgot,

ich gedenke ir baz und baz?
I think of-her better and better?

Ir wîplîch güete machet
Her womanly goodness makes

in gedanken mich vil frô.
in thoughts me very glad.

Mîn munt von vreuden lachet,
My mouth from joys laughs,

swenne ich mir gedenke sô,
whenever I to-me think so,

Daz nie wîp wart mêr sô guot
That never woman was more so good

noch sô wolgemuot:
nor so well-spirited:

der gedanc mir sanfte tuot.
the thought me gently does.

Dô sî diu liet gehôrt aldâ, 404
When she the songs heard there,

diu reine, süeze diu sprach sâ:
the pure, sweet-one she spoke at-once:

«diu liet sint dêswâr minneclîch.
«the songs are truly lovely.

waz danne?» sprach diu tugentrîch:
what then?» spoke the virtue-rich-one:

«ich nime mich ir zwâr niht an.
«I take me of-them truly not on.

diu liet und swaz er immer kan
the songs and whatever he ever can

gedienen, daz hebt mich unhô.
serve, that lifts me little.

daz sag im von mir rehte sô.
that tell him from me right so.

Du solt in von mir biten des 405
Thou shalt him from me ask of-this

(nu merke ez rehte: ich sag dir wes),
(now mark it rightly: I tell thee what),

daz er mich lâze gewerbes vrî,
that he me let of-wooing free,

als liep im al sîn êre sî.
as dear to-him all his honor be.

und wil er sichs gelouben niht,
and (if)-will he himself-of-it divest not,

ich füege, daz im dâ von geschiht,
I arrange, that to-him there from happens,

daz ers hât schanden immer mê:
that he-of-it has disgrace ever more:

sô het erz baz verlâzen ê.
so had he-it better left before.

406 Sage im, er sî ein tumber man,
Tell him, he be a foolish man,

daz er mir diene ûf solhen wân,
that he me serve on such hope,

des einem künge wær ze vil.
which for-a king were too much.

von wârheit ich daz sprechen wil:
in truth I that speak will:

ez wart nie man sô hôch geborn,
it was never man so high born,

mir wære diu rede von im zorn.
to-me were the speech from him anger.

mich muoz für wâr des wunder hân,
me must for true of-it wonder have,

daz ers ie muot gein mir gewan.»
that he-of-it ever spirit toward me won.»

407 «Ich sage im daz, vrowe guot.
«I tell him that, lady good.

doch weiz ich wol, er ist sô gemuot,
yet know I well, he is so spirited,

daz er, vil liebiu vrowe mîn,
that he, very dear lady mine,

gein iu niht lât den dienest sîn.
toward you not lets the service his.

ûz iwerm dienst in nimmer nôt
out-of your service him never need

vertrîben mac, niwær der tôt.
drive may, except the death.

ern kumt ûz iwerm dienste niht,
he comes out-of your service not,

daz weiz ich wol, swaz im geschiht.»
that know I well, whatever to-him happens.»

Sus nam er urloup und reit dan, 408
Thus took he leave and rode thence,

hin dâ er mich hete lân.
thither where he me had left.

dô ich den gefüegen boten sach,
when I the courteous messenger saw,

nu sült ir hœren, wie ich sprach:
now shall you hear, how I spoke:

«wis willekomen mir unde got,
«be welcome to-me and God,

dû vil höfscher gefüeger bot.
thou very courtly courteous messenger.

nu sage mir ûf die triwe dîn,
now tell me on the faithfulness thine,

wie sich gehabe diu vrowe mîn.»
how herself fare the lady mine.»

«Si gehabt sich wol, ir lîp ist vrô. 409
«She fares herself well, her person is glad.

si hât enboten iu alsô,
she has announced you thus,

daz ir si lât gar dienstes vrî,
that you her let wholly of-service free,

als liep iu lîp und êre sî.
as dear to-you body and honor be.

und ist, daz ir des niht entuot,
and (if)-is, that you of-it not do,

sô ist für wâr daz gar ir muot,
so is for true that wholly her spirit,

daz sî iu füege alsölhen schaden,
that she you arrange such harm,

daz ir mit leide wert geladen.
that you with sorrow are laden.

410 Si giht, und tuot ir iuchs niht abe,
She declares, and (if)-do you yourself-of-it not off,

daz sî des nimmer ûf gehabe,
that she of-it never up holds,

si füege iu drumbe herzenleit.
she arrange you therefor heart-sorrow.

si hât für wâr mir daz geseit,
she has for true me that said,

daz ez ir sî von iu unwert,
that it to-her be from you unwelcome,

daz ir an sî der dinge gert,
that you of her the things desire,

der an si gert noch nie kein man.
which of her desired yet never any man.

daz dunket sî gar missetân.»
that seems she wholly misdone.»

411 «Nu wizze, friunt, swie sî mir tuot,
«Now know, friend, however she me does,

ez ist mîn wille und ouch mîn muot,
it is my will and also my spirit,

daz ich ir immer dienen wil
that I her ever serve will

mit triuwen an mîn endes zil.
with faithfulness to my end's goal.

si tuo mir übel, si tuo mir wol,
she do me ill, she do me well,

si ist, der ich dâ dienen sol
she is, whom I there serve shall

mit triuwen, al die wîle ich lebe.
with faithfulness, all the while I live.

si muoz sîn mîner vreuden gebe.
she must be of-my joys giver.

Waz danne ob sî mir widersagt? 412
What then if she me renounces?

dar umbe bin ich unverzagt.
there for am I undaunted.

ob sî mir hiute ist gehaz,
if she to-me today is hostile,

sô wil ich gerne dienen baz,
so will I gladly serve better,

daz sî mir fürbaz werde holt.
that she to-me henceforth become devoted.

ob ich ir zorn hân nû versolt,
if I her anger have now deserved,

sô dien ich ir ûf sölhen wân,
so serve I her on such hope,

daz sî mich hulde lâze hân.
that she me favor let have.

Solde ich durch vremden gruoz verzagen, 413
Should I for strange greeting despair,

solt mich ein wörtelîn verjagen
should me a little-word chase

von mînem hôchgedingen hin,
from my high-hope away,

sô het ich niht guoten sin
so had I not good sense

und het ouch niht manlîchen muot.
and had also not manly spirit.

swaz mir diu reine, süeze tuot,
whatever me the pure, sweet-one does,

des sol ich allez dankent sîn
for-it shall I all thanking be

der herzenlieben vrowen mîn.
to-the heart-dear lady mine.

414 Friunt, nu soltu râten mir,
Friend, now shalt-thou counsel me,

wan ich vil wol getrûwe dir.
for I very well trust thee.

sît daz der sumer ist dâ hin,
since that the summer is there gone,

so ist daz mîn muot und ouch mîn sin:
so is that my spirit and also my mind:

ich wil ze Rôme in kurzen tagen
I will to Rome in short days

varen. nû soltû mir sagen,
go. now shalt-thou me tell,

ob dir mîn vart iht wol behage:
whether thee my journey anything well please:

durch mînen willen mir daz sage!»
for my will me that tell!»

415 «Herre, die vart iu niemen sol
«Lord, the journey you no-one shall

leiden: sî behagt mir wol.
spoil: it pleases me well.

ich weiz für wâr, si ist iu guot.
I know for true, it is to-you good.

ez ist ein ritterlîcher muot,
it is a knightly spirit,

daz man dem diene eteswaz,
that one him serve something,

von dem man hât gar allez daz,
from whom one has wholly all that,

guot, sêle und dar zuo den lîp,
goods, soul and there to the body,

liebe friunt, kint unde wîp.»
dear friends, child and wife.»

«Friunt, sît ez dir wol behaget, 416
«Friend, since it thee well pleases,

wis selbe des ouch unverzaget,
be self of-it also undaunted,

du varst dâ hin zehant mit mir.»
thou goest there thither forthwith with me.»

«daz tuon ich gern, herre, und welt ir.»
«that do I gladly, lord, and (if)-will you.»

«jâ, ich gib dir dar genuoc.»
«yes, I give thee there enough.»

sus fuor mit mir der knappe cluoc.
thus went with me the squire clever.

ze Rôme was ich sehzic tage
at Rome was I sixty days

und huop mich danne, als ich iu sage.
and raised me then, as I you tell.

Nâch ôstern ich von danne schiet 417
After Easter I from thence parted

und sang ôt aber niuwe liet
and sang just again new songs

von mîner vrowen, als ich ie
of my lady, as I ever

ze singen pflac, und lie daz nie,
to sing was-wont, and left that never,

ich lobt ir hôhe werdicheit:
I praised her high worthiness:

die hân ich ie gemachet breit.
that have I ever made broad.

ich bin ir êren immer vrô.
I am of-her honors ever glad.

nu hœrt diu liet! diu sprechent sô:
now hear the songs! they speak so:

IX. Ein sincwîse, und ist diu neunte wîse.
IX. A sing-tune, and is the ninth tune.

Nu schouwet, wie des meien zît
Now behold, how the May's time

gezieret hât den grüenen walt,
adorned has the green wood,

und schouwet, wie diu heide breit
and behold, how the heath broad

mit wunneclîchen bluomen stât.
with delightful flowers stands.

Die vogel singent widerstrît:
The birds sing in-contest:

ir freude ist worden manicvalt.
their joy is become manifold.

vil gar verswunden ist ir leit:
very wholly vanished is their sorrow:

der meie sie getrœstet hât.
the May them comforted has.

Der meie trœstet al daz lebet
The May comforts all that lives

wan mich vil minnesiechen man.
except me very love-sick man.

daz herze mîn ist minnewunt:
the heart mine is love-wounded:

des muoz ich sunder freude sîn.
therefore must I without joy be.

Ist daz mîn lîp iht freuden hebet,
(If)-is that my person any joys lifts,

daz herze siht mich weinent an
the heart looks me weeping at

und giht, ez sî vil ungesunt:
and declares, it be very unhealthy:

sô muoz ich lân die vreude mîn.
so must I leave the joy mine.

Ein hôhe minne gernder man
A high love desiring man

mit stætem muote, daz bin ich.
with steadfast spirit, that am I.

mîn hôhe minne gernde gir
my high love desiring longing

daz herze mîn unsanfte treit.
the heart mine uneasily bears.

Vrouwe reine, gar valsches ân,
Lady pure, wholly of-falseness without,

wîbes krône, bedenke dich
woman's crown, consider thee

genædiclîche noch an mir
graciously yet on me

durch dîn vil hôhe werdekeit.
for thy very high worthiness.

Sie jehent, ich solde ûf gotes wege
They declare, I should on God's way

dîn lop niht singen, vrouwe mîn.
thy praise not sing, lady mine.

sît ez in an mir missehaget,
since it them in me displeases,

sô wil ich sprechen mîn gebet.
so will I speak my prayer.

Dîn êre hab got in sîner pflege:
Thy honor have God in his care:

sô müez dîn lîp enpfolhen sîn
so may thy person commended be

Marien der vil hêren maget,
to-Mary the very noble maiden,

diu nie an iemen missetet.
who never against anyone misdid.

XVII · THE FINGER DOUBTED

Ulrich spends the summer at the tournaments of Styria, and when it is over he sends the squire to his lady again with Song X. She says she will always be hostile to the man who sang it, and that the squire lied when he told her Ulrich had lost a finger in her service, since she has heard he still has it. The squire admits the finger is still there but crooked and of little use; she answers that she grants him his finger but will not be lied to, and sends the squire away. Ulrich resolves to cut the finger off and send it to her.

418 Diu liet ich ûf dem wege sanc
The songs I on the way sang

von mîner vrowen âne danc.
of my lady without consent.

daz kom dâ von: der bote mîn
that came there from: the messenger mine

was ze verte; des moht niht sîn,
was on journey; therefore might not be,

daz ichs iht sande ir bî im.
that I-them anything sent her by him.

in disen zîten kom ich hin
in these times came I thither

mit freuden in daz Stîrelant,
with joys into the Styrian-land,

dâ ich vil turnirens vant.
where I much tourneying found.

Des sumers ich ze Stîrelant 419
Of-the summer I in Styrian-land

den helm ofte ze houbet bant.
the helmet often to head bound.

durch di lieben vrowen mîn
for the dear lady mine

sach man mich bî den vînden sîn.
saw one me by the enemies be.

ich was ze dienst ir vil bereit:
I was to service her very ready:

mit lûterlîcher stæticheit
with pure steadfastness

dient ich ir, als ein ritter sol,
served I her, as a knight shall,

der wil, daz man im lône wol.
who wills, that one him reward well.

Der sumer was mit freuden hin. 420
The summer was with joys gone.

dô bat ich vlîziclîchen in
then bade I diligently him

(ich meine den boten mîn), daz er
(I mean the messenger mine), that he

die guoten gesæhe: daz was mîn ger.
the good-one should-see: that was my desire.

er sprach: «ich rîte vil gern dar
he spoke: «I ride very gladly thither

und sage ir iwern willen gar
and tell her your will wholly

und iwer senelîchen leit:
and your longing sorrows:

diu werdent ir von mir geseit.»
they are her by me told.»

421 Do enpfalh ich im mit worten sâ
Then entrusted I him with words at-once

mîn botschaft vil palde dâ
my message very quickly there

und sande ir aber mîniu liet.
and sent her again my songs.

mit freuden er sâ von mir schiet.
with joys he at-once from me parted.

dô er kom zuo der vrowen mîn,
when he came to the lady mine,

diu hiez in willekomen sîn.
she bade him welcome be.

«gnâde», sprach er, «vrowe guot.
«grace», spoke he, «lady good.

wold got, wært ir iht baz gemuot,
would God, were you anything better spirited,

422 Danne dô ich iuch næhste sach!»
Than when I you last saw!»

diu tugende rîche, süeze sprach:
the of-virtue rich, sweet-one spoke:

«sag an, waz tet ich leides dir?
«tell on, what did I of-sorrow thee?

daz soltu rehte sagen mir.
that shalt-thou rightly tell me.

ich bin dir doch ie holt gewesen:
I am to-thee yet ever devoted been:

du maht vor mir vil wol genesen.
thou mayst before me very well be-saved.

swâ dir niht liep von mir geschiht,
wherever to-thee not dear from me happens,

dâ tuon ich dir ouch leides niht.»
there do I thee also of-sorrow nothing.»

«Vrowe, des müez iu lônen got. 423
«Lady, for-it may you reward God.

ich bin ôt aber zuo iu bot.
I am just again to you messenger.

mich hât dâ her zuo iu gesant,
me has there hither to you sent,

der gnâden gert von iwer hant,
who grace desires from your hand,

und enbiut iu, hêre vrowe mîn,
and announces you, noble lady mine,

gruoz und al den dienest sîn,
greeting and all the service his,

triwe, minne, und swaz ein man
faithfulness, love, and whatever a man

enbieten und gedienen kan.
announce and serve can.

424 Des ist er allez iu bereit
Of-it is he all to-you ready

mit ritterlîcher stæticheit.
with knightly steadfastness.

vil reiniu vrowe tugentrîch,
very pure lady virtue-rich,

er dienet iu sô ritterlîch,
he serves you so knightly,

des er wol danc sold von iu hân.
for-which he well thanks should from you have.

er hât durch iuch diu dinc getân,
he has for you the things done,

ob ichz mit hulden sprechen sol,
if I-it with favor speak shall,

des ir im soldet lônen wol.
for-which you him should reward well.

425 Ich weiz wol, daz nie wîp gewan
I know well, that never woman won

sô rehte stæten dienestman:
so right steadfast vassal:

wan er geruowen nimmer mac
for he rest never may

beidiu die naht und ouch den tac
both the night and also the day

von senelîcher arebeit,
from longing labor,

die er von iwern schulden treit.
which he by your faults bears.

ob ir im niht genædic sît,
if you to-him not gracious are,

sîn lîp hât ende in kurzer zît.
his person has end in short time.

Ich sage iu, vrowe, daz er hât 426
I tell you, lady, that he has

durch iuch manic ritterlîche tât
for you many-a knightly deed

getân nu in vil kurzer zît.
done now in very short time.

ir sît, an der sîn vreude lît.
you are, on whom his joy lies.

er hât iu niuwe liet bî mir
he has you new songs by me

dâ her gesant, diu gerne ir
there hither sent, which gladly you

hœren müget: si tuont iuch frô.
hear may: they make you glad.

diu liet diu sprechent von iu sô:
the songs they speak of you so:

X. Ein tanzwîse, und ist diu zehende wîse.
X. A dance-tune, and is the tenth tune.

Wie kanstu, Minne,
How canst-thou, Love,

mit sorgen die sinne,
with sorrows the senses,

den muot betouben mit seneder klage!
the spirit stun with longing lament!

In vreuden wâne
In joys' hope

bin ich vreuden âne
am I of-joys without

von dir gar al mîne besten tage.
by thee wholly all my best days.

An eine stat
At one place

riet mir dîn rât
counseled me thy counsel

dienen vil schône
serve very beautifully

mit stætekeit,
with steadfastness,

dâ mir ze lône
where to-me as reward

geschiht niwan leit.
happens nothing-but sorrow.

«Waz klagest du, tumber,
«What lamentest thou, fool,

sô sælegen kumber,
so blessed trouble,

den ich durch guot dir gerâten hân,
which I for good thee counseled have,

Daz dû der guoten,
That thou to-the good-one,

der reine gemuoten,
the purely spirited-one,

wærest mit triuwen vil undertân?
wert with faithfulness very subject?

Tuot dir den tôt
(If)-does to-thee the death

sô süeziu nôt,
so sweet distress,

sô senftiu swære,
so gentle grief,

sô lieplîch twanc:
so lovely compulsion:

wê! zwîvelære,
woe! doubter,

sô bistu vil kranc!»
so art-thou very weak!»

Wil siez bedenken,
(If)-will she-it consider,

sô muoz mich wol krenken
so must me well weaken

sorg âne trôst, die ich lîde von ir.
sorrow without comfort, which I suffer from her.

Jâ solde ir hulde
Yes should her favor

mîn leit mit gedulde
my sorrow with patience

bedenken und ouch ir güete an mir.
consider and also her goodness on me.

Sît sie mîn lîp
Since her my person

für elliu wîp
before all women

meinet besunder
means especially

von herzen gar:
from heart wholly:

wê! durch welch wunder
woe! for what wonder

nimt sie des niht war?
takes she of-it not heed?

«Dun darft niht sorgen,
«Thou needst not sorrow,

daz ir vor verborgen
that her before hidden

dîn stætiu triuwe die lenge noch sî.
thy steadfast faithfulness the length still be.

Al dîniu tougen
All thy secrets

diu sint âne lougen
they are without denying

ir ougen, ir ôren al sprechende bî.
her eyes, her ears all speaking by.

Wirt sie für wâr
(If)-becomes she for true

an dir gewar,
in thee aware,

daz dich niht krenket
that thee not weakens

ein valscher kranc,
a false weakness,

vil wol bedenket
very well considers

dich ir habedanc.»
thee her thanks.»

Mac sie vil reine
May she very pure-one

besunder daz eine
especially the one-thing

mir ûz bescheiden, waz ir wille sî?
me out declare, what her will be?

Well ich daz brechen
(If)-will I that break

odr immer versprechen
or ever renounce

mit ungedulde, sô lâze mich vrî.
with impatience, so let me free.

Nu trœste mich,
Now comfort me,

Minn, unde sprich,
Love, and speak,

wie ich nâch swære
how I after grief

trôst an ir bejage,
comfort from her win,

und ir bewære
and her prove

mîn triuwe: daz sage!
my faithfulness: that tell!

«Mit stætem muote,
«With steadfast spirit,

mit lîbe, mit guote,
with body, with goods,

mit reiner fuoge, ân all arge site
with pure propriety, without all evil manner

Soltû verschulden
Shalt-thou deserve

die gunst von ir hulden,
the favor of her grace,

daz sie dir herz unde lîp teile mite.»
that she to-thee heart and body share with.»

Sie reine, guot,
She pure, good,

swie sie mir tuot,
however she me does,

sost al mîn êre
so-is all my honor

mîn lîp, mîn leben
my body, my life

ir immer mêre
her ever more

für eigen gegeben.
for own given.

427 Zehant dô sî diu liet vernam,
Forthwith when she the songs heard,

si sprach: «ich bin im immer gram,
she spoke: «I am to-him ever hostile,

der disiu liet gesungen hât,
who these songs sung has,

sît er der rede mich niht erlât,
since he of-the speech me not releases,

er werbe mir umbe die êre mîn.
he woos me for the honor mine.

dâ von wil ich im immer sîn
there from will I to-him ever be

vînt. er ist ein tumber man,
enemy. he is a foolish man,

daz ers ie muot gein mir gewan.
that he-of-it ever spirit toward me won.

Nu enbôt ich im bî dir doch daz, 428
Now announced I him by thee yet that,

daz ich im immer wære gehaz,
that I to-him ever were hostile,

kœme er der rede niht gegen mir abe:
came he of-the speech not toward me off:

und hâstû im, höfscher knabe,
and hast-thou to-him, courtly boy,

des niht geseit, dêst missetân.
of-it not told, that-is misdone.

swaz sô er mir enbieten kan,
whatever so he me announce can,

diu botschaft ist gar enwiht;
the message is wholly worthless;

wan ichs für guot hân von im niht.»
for I-it for good have from him not.»

«Vil hôch gelobtiu vrowe guot, 429
«Very highly praised lady good,

ich sagt im allen iwern muot.
I told him all your spirit.

dô sprach der unverzagte man:
then spoke the undaunted man:

‚swaz sie gein mir gesprechen kan,
‚whatever she toward me speak can,

dar umbe lâze ichz allez niht:
there for leave I-it all not:

ich dien ir, swaz sô mir geschiht,
I serve her, whatever so to-me happens,

mit triwen unz an mînen tôt.'
with faithfulness until to my death.'

die rede er iu bî mir enbôt.»
the speech he you by me announced.»

430 «Ir künnet bêde lôsens vil.
«You can both of-flattery much.

einez ich dir doch sagen wil.
one-thing I thee yet tell will.

du sagest mir (daz ist mir zorn),
thou tellest me (that is to-me anger),

daz er het einen vinger vlorn
that he had a finger lost

in mînem dienest: des ist niht.
in my service: of-it is nothing.

mîn munt von wârheit des giht:
my mouth by truth of-it declares:

er hât in noch, ist mir geseit.
he has it still, is to-me said.

dâ von ist mir dîn mengen leit.»
there from is to-me thy meddling sorrowful.»

431 «Frowe, er hât in; daz ist wâr:
«Lady, he has it; that is true:

er ist aber im erkrumbet gar,
it is however to-him crooked wholly,

daz er im harte cleine frumet
that it him very little profits

und im ze staten lützel kumet:
and to-him to aid little comes:

er mac gerecken in niht vil.
he may stretch it not much.

einez ich iuch niht enhil:
one-thing I you not hide:

ez habet dâ mit vil wol noch er
it holds there with very well still he

in iwerm dienest grôziu sper.»
in your service great spears.»

«Ich gan im sînes vingers wol, 432
«I grant him his finger well,

wan daz man mir niht liegen sol.
except that one me not lie shall.

er hât in noch: des hâstu mir
he has it still: in-that hast-thou me

ein teil gelogen. daz wîze ich dir:
a part lied. that blame I thee:

des wil ich reden mit dir niht mêr.
of-it will I speak with thee no more.

nu var hin reht, als dû füere her,
now go thither right, as thou camest hither,

und tuo dich gegen mir botschaft abe
and do thee toward me of-message off

durch mînen willen, höfscher knabe.»
for my will, courtly boy.»

Sus schiet mîn bot ôt aber von ir 433
Thus parted my messenger just again from her

und kom in kurzen zîten mir.
and came in short times to-me.

dô ich in sach, ich sprach zehant:
when I him saw, I spoke forthwith:

«vil lieber bot, tuo mir bekant
«very dear messenger, make me known

unde sage mir endelîch,
and tell me truly,

waz mir diu süeze, tugenderîch
what me the sweet, virtue-rich-one

bî dir enbiet. und ist ez guot,
by thee announced. and (if)-is it good,

sô bin ich immer hôchgemuot.»
so am I ever high-spirited.»

434 «Si hât iu bî mir niht enboten
«She has you by me nothing announced

und hât sêre mir verboten,
and has sorely me forbidden,

daz ich ir sage von iu niht mê.
that I her tell of you no more.

si giht, ez tuo ir immer wê
she declares, it do her ever woe

und müeze ir sîn von schulden zorn,
and must to-her be by rights anger,

daz ich ir saget, ir het verlorn
that I her told, you had lost

ewern vinger durch si gar.
your finger for her wholly.

si giht, ich habe gesaget unwâr.
she declares, I have told untrue.

435 Ir habt in noch, daz sî ir kunt:
You have it still, that be to-her known:

ir würdet niwan ein lützel wunt;
you became only a little wounded;

und ich hab ir von iu gelogen,
and I have her of you lied,

mit lôsen worten gar betrogen.
with flattering words wholly deceived.

dar umbe sô ist si mir gehaz
there for so is she to-me hostile

und giht doch, sî günne iu des baz,
and declares yet, she grant you of-it better,

daz ir in habt, danne ob er verlorn
that you it have, than if it lost

wære: ir ist diu lüge zorn.»
were: to-her is the lie anger.»

Ich gedâht: «wil mir mîn vrowe sîn 436
I thought: «(if)-will to-me my lady be

gehaz wan durch den vinger mîn,
hostile but for the finger mine,

daz ich den hân, des wirt wol rât,
that I it have, of-that becomes well remedy,

sît er doch krump ein lützel stât.
since it yet crooked a little stands.

ich slahe in abe und sende in ir:
I strike it off and send it her:

sô muoz si doch gelouben mir,
so must she yet believe me,

daz er ist vlorn, sô sî in siht.
that it is lost, when she it sees.

er muoz dâ hin: des lâze ich niht.
it must there away: of-that leave I not.

Ulrich has Ulrich of Hasendorf strike off the finger. He composes a little book and sends the finger with it to his lady, the book wrapped in samite green as grass and bound between two little boards of gold, with a clasp shaped as two little hands; she is dismayed that a sensible man could do such a thing. The second little book begins: the poet laments to Love that his messenger was scorned, and Love counsels faithfulness, steadfast service, chivalry, and an honest messenger who never lies.

Aventiure wie der herre Uolrîch sînen vinger abe sluoc und sant
Adventure how the lord Ulrich his finger off struck and sent

in sîner frowen.
it to-his lady.

437 Dô gie ich von dem boten dan,
Then went I from the messenger thence,

dâ ich vant einen biderben man:
where I found a worthy man:

der was von Hasendorf genant
he was of Hasendorf named

her Uolrîch, der wol bekant
sir Ulrich, who well known

was von sîner frümecheit:
was for his valor:

er was ze dienste mir bereit.
he was to service to-me ready.

den bat ich durch die triuwe sîn,
him bade I for the faithfulness his,

daz er abe slüege den vinger mîn.
that he off struck the finger mine.

Dô sprach er: «neinâ, herre, nein! 438
Then spoke he: «no, lord, no!

sô wæren iwere sinne clein,
so were your senses small,

und wære ein grôziu missetât.
and were a great misdeed.

vergâht iuch niht: daz ist mîn rât.
be-hasty you not: that is my counsel.

ir sült iuch sus verderben niht.
you shall yourself so ruin not.

mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht:
my mouth by truth to-you of-it declares:

ob ir ez tuot, dêst missetân.
if you it do, that-is misdone.

dâ von sô sült irz gern lân.»
there from so shall you-it gladly leave.»

Ich sprach: «zwâr ich lâze sîn niht, 439
I spoke: «truly I leave it not,

swaz schaden mir dâ von geschiht;
whatever harm to-me there from happens;

und man iuch des, ob ich iu ie
and (I)-urge you of-it, if I to-you ever

noch würde liep, daz sült ir hie
yet became dear, that shall you here

erzeigen sô, daz ir slaht abe
show so, that you strike off

den vinger mîn, sît ich in habe
the finger mine, since I it have

ungerne. ez ist friundes muot,
unwillingly. it is friend's spirit,

swes ich iuch bite, daz ir daz tuot.»
whatever I you bid, that you that do.»

440 «Ich tuon daz und rehte, swaz ir welt.
«I do that and right, whatever you will.

ich hân ze friunt iuch mir erwelt
I have as friend you for-me chosen

und bin iu dienstes undertân
and am to-you of-service subject

und wil des nimmer abe gestân.»
and will of-it never off stand.»

dô nam ich sâ daz mezer sîn
then took I at-once the knife his

und satzt ez ûf den vinger mîn
and set it on the finger mine

und sprach: «nu slach dar, biderb man!»
and spoke: «now strike thither, worthy man!»

er sluoc: der vinger der spranc dan.
he struck: the finger it sprang away.

441 Diu wunde diu bluot krefticlîch.
The wound it bled mightily.

dar kom mîn bote zühte rîch,
thither came my messenger of-courtesy rich,

der vil verholne zuo mir gie.
who very secretly to me went.

er sprach: «wie nû? waz tuot ir hie?
he spoke: «how now? what do you here?

habt ir den vinger abe geslagen,
(if)-have you the finger off struck,

sô muoz ich daz von herzen klagen,
so must I that from heart lament,

daz iuch mîn ouge ie gesach
that you my eye ever saw

und ich ie wort gein iu gesprach.»
and I ever word toward you spoke.»

«Friunt, nu lâ dîn zürnen sîn 442
«Friend, now let thy anger be

und füer ir hin den vinger mîn
and bring her thither the finger mine

und sage ir von mir daz für wâr,
and tell her from me that for true,

daz ich ir diene mîniu jâr
that I her serve my years

mit rehten triwen sunder wanc.
with right faithfulness without wavering.

und wil si mirs niht wizen danc,
and (if)-will she me-for-it not know thanks,

daz ich si vor allen vrowen hân
that I her before all ladies have

ze liebe erkorn, dêst missetân.»
as love chosen, that-is misdone.»

«Mir ist leit, daz ir ez habt getân. 443
«To-me is sorrowful, that you it have done.

sît daz aber ez nu ist ergân,
since that however it now is happened,

sô sült ir rihten ein botschaft,
so shall you compose a message,

diu mit süezen worten kraft
which with sweet words power

habe, und sult si senden ir
have, and shall it send her

und ouch den vinger hin bî mir.
and also the finger thither by me.

ich füer si willeclîchen dar.
I bring it willingly thither.

got gebe, daz ich iu wol gevar!»
God grant, that I for-you well fare!»

444 «Ich volge dirs gern, sît ich ez kan.»
«I follow thee-in-it gladly, since I it can.»

zehant ich tihten dô began
forthwith I compose then began

ein vil gefüege büechelîn.
a very fitting little-book.

bî dem sant ich den vinger mîn
by which sent I the finger mine

hin, dâ diu reine, süeze was.
thither, where the pure, sweet-one was.

in einen samît als ein gras
in a samite as a grass

want man daz büechel an der stat.
wrapped one the little-book on the spot.

ein goltsmit ich mir würken bat
a goldsmith I me make bade

445 Zwei britelîn von gold aldâ:
Two little-boards of gold there:

dar in bant man daz büechel sâ.
there in bound one the little-book at-once.

daz diu sperre solde sîn,
what the clasp should be,

daz was alsô zwei hendelîn
that was as two little-hands

gemachet harte lobelîch:
made very praiseworthily:

den vinger dar in meisterlîch
the finger there in masterfully

machte wir. sâ an der stat
made we. at-once on the spot

der bot mich urloubes bat.
the messenger me of-leave bade.

Ich sprach: «nu müez dîner sælde pflegen 446
I spoke: «now may of-thy bliss take-care

got dort und ouch under wegen!»
God there and also under way!»

mit solher rede er von mir reit:
with such speech he from me rode:

ich was hie und het senediu leit.
I was here and had longing sorrows.

dô er hin zuo der guoten quam,
when he thither to the good-one came,

daz büechlin er verholne nam:
the little-book he secretly took:

mit grôzen sorgen er hin gie,
with great sorrows he thither went,

dâ in diu tugentrîch enpfie.
where him the virtue-rich-one received.

Si sprach: «ich wil grüezen dich, 447
She spoke: «I will greet thee,

swie dû doch hâst beswæret mich.
however thou yet hast grieved me.

sage an: sagestû iht niwes mir,
tell on: tellest-thou anything new me,

daz wil ich wol erlouben dir.»
that will I well permit thee.»

«jâ, vrowe», sprach der bot zehant.
«yes, lady», spoke the messenger forthwith.

«iu hât bî mir dâ her gesant
«you has by me there hither sent

mîn herre ein cleinez büechelîn:
my lord a little little-book:

daz bringet iu den vinger sîn.»
that brings you the finger his.»

448 Der bote daz büechelîn gab ir.
The messenger the little-book gave her.

ir sült für wâr gelauben mir,
you shall for true believe me,

dô sî den vinger reht ersach,
when she the finger rightly saw,

die reine, guote, süeze sprach:
the pure, good, sweet-one spoke:

«owê, ditz ist ein grôz geschiht!
«alas, this is a great happening!

ich ensolt der tumpheit trûwen niht,
I should the foolishness trust not,

daz immer ein versunnen man
that ever a sensible man

im selben hete daz getân.»
to-him self had that done.»

449 Daz büechel tet si ûf zehant,
The little-book opened she up forthwith,

dar an si wol geschriben vant,
there on she well written found,

daz ich ir wolde dienen gar
that I her would serve wholly

mit triuwen elliu mîniu jâr,
with faithfulness all my years,

und daz mîn herze, lîp unde leben
and that my heart, body and life

ir gar ze dienste wær gegeben.
her wholly to service were given.

daz büechel ir für wâr des jach.
the little-book her for true of-it declared.

nu sült ir hœren, wie ez sprach:
now shall you hear, how it spoke:

Daz ist ein büechlîn, daz ander.
That is a little-book, the second.

Owê Minne, wâ ist dîn rât? B2,1
Alas Love, where is thy counsel?

wie rehte nâhen ez mir gât,
how right near it me goes,

daz du mir sô lange vrist
that thou to-me so long while

vremde und alsô verre bist
strange and so far art

mit trœstlîcher lêre
with comforting teaching

und doch mit herzen sêre
and yet with heart sorely

mir alsô rehte nâhen lîst
to-me so right near liest

und mir niht wan kumber gîst!
and me nothing but trouble givest!

des mac sich wol dîn güete schamen.
of-it may herself well thy goodness be-ashamed.

du krenkest dînen süezen namen,
thou weakenest thy sweet name,

sît daz du Minne bist genant
since that thou Love art named

und doch gegen mir hâst gewant
and yet toward me hast turned

sô gar unminneclîche site:
so wholly unloving manner:

dâ krenkest dû dîn êre mite.
there weakenest thou thy honor with.

du êrest mangen valschen man,
thou honorest many-a false man,

der dir niht gedanken kan,
who thee not thank can,

und übersihst an êren die,
and overlookest in honors those,

die von dir gewancten nie.
who from thee wavered never.

daz ist an mir wol warden schîn.
that is on me well become shown.

ich was ie der dienest dîn
I was ever the servant thine

und wil halt, swie ez mir ergê,
and will even, however it me befall,

an dir belîben immer mê:
by thee remain ever more:

nu bistu lônes gein mir ze laz.
now art-thou of-reward toward me too slack.

du möhtest einen heiden baz
thou mightest a heathen better

besorgen und bedenken.
provide-for and consider.

wie lange wil du wenken
how long wilt thou waver

dîner trœstlîchen helfe an mir?
of-thy comforting help to me?

nu het ich doch enpfolhen dir
now had I yet entrusted thee

vil verre ûf die genâde dîn
very far on the grace thine

den cleinen gefüegen boten mîn,
the little fitting messenger mine,

den ich ze boten über lant
whom I as messenger over land

der werden, reinen het gesant,
to-the worthy, pure-one had sent,

der minneclîchen, guoten,
to-the lovely, good-one,

der werden, hôchgemuoten,
to-the worthy, high-spirited-one,

der hôhen, der werden,
to-the high, to-the worthy,

der werdesten ûf erden.
to-the worthiest on earth.

ich mein die werden vrowen mîn,
I mean the worthy lady mine,

der ritter ich sol immer sîn
whose knight I shall ever be

und immer mêr vil undertân,
and ever more very subject,

die wîle ich lîp und leben hân.
the while I body and life have.

dem selben armen boten mîn
to-the same poor messenger mine

soldestû geleit gewesen sîn
shouldst-thou escort been be

und in ze hofe haben brâht:
and him to court have brought:

und des er selbe was unverdâht,
and of-which he self was unthought,

des solde in durch dîn êre
that should him for thy honor

bewîset haben dîn lêre.
shown have thy teaching.

dô lieze dû in under wegen:
then leftest thou him under way:

dâ von ist dâ nider gelegen
there from is there down laid

diu botschaft und mîn êre.
the message and my honor.

versmæhet alze sêre
scorned all-too sorely

und verfuort in manigen spot
and led-astray into many mockery

wart diu potschaft und der bot.
was the message and the messenger.

waz aber er verendet habe
what however he accomplished have

mîner langen ungehabe
of-my long ill-bearing

und mîner hercen swære,
and of-my heart's grief,

tuot hin! daz ist ein mære,
do away! that is a tale,

des ich wol sanft enbære.
which I well gently did-without.

B2,58 Waz aber im dort geschæhe
What however to-him there happened

leides unde smæhe,
of-sorrow and scorn,

daz kunde ich ervinden hie
that could I find here

mit deheiner vrâge nie;
with any asking never;

wan daz ich leit und ungemach
except that I sorrow and discomfort

wol an sînen geberden sach,
well in his bearing saw,

und daz ich in sît nimmer mê
and that I him since never more

mit deheiner slahte vlê,
with any kind entreaty,

mit süezer bet, mit scherpfer drô
with sweet request, with sharp threat

erbiten weder sus noch sô
persuade neither thus nor so

noch ertwingen kunde,
nor compel could,

daz er noch ze einer stunde
that he yet at one hour

ze hove wære wider komen
to court were back come

und daz het aldâ vernomen,
and that had there heard,

wie man mîn dâ gedæhte,
how one of-me there thought,

ob mich mîn vrowe ze æhte
whether me my lady to outlawry

oder ze banne hete brâht,
or to ban had brought,

oder wes ir wære gein mir gedâht.
or what her were toward me thought.

dô brâht er mir ein mære,
then brought he me a tidings,

des ein zwîvelære
of-which a doubter

villîhte möhte erschrocken sîn,
perhaps might frightened be,

ein rede, diu mir die sinne mîn
a speech, which me the senses mine

het verirret und al den muot;
had confused and all the spirit;

wan daz ir güete ist alsô guot,
except that her goodness is so good,

swaz sî gein mir gesprechen kan,
whatever she toward me speak can,

dâ sol ich nimmer niht an
there shall I never anything on

verdenken noch versinnen,
misthink nor misconstrue,

wan genâden unde minnen.
except grace and loving.

sold ich durch vremden gruoz verzagen,
should I for strange greeting despair,

sold mich ein wortelîn verjagen
should me a little-word chase

von mînem hôchgedingen hin,
from my high-hope away,

sone het ich herze noch sin.
so-not had I heart nor sense.

sold ich alsô kêren
should I so turn

von mînen besten êren,
from my best honors,

die ich ze der werlt haben sol,
which I to the world have shall,

wie kunde mir danne gelingen wol?
how could to-me then succeed well?

wie sold ich armer denne leben?
how should I poor-one then live?

wolt ir mir solhen rât geben,
would you me such counsel give,

herzen meisterinne?
heart's mistress?

ich mein iuch, vrow Minne.
I mean you, lady Love.

des getrûwe ich iwern gnâden niht,
of-it trust I your grace not,

daz ir der werden zuoversiht,
that you the worthy confidence,

die ich gein mîner vrowen hân
which I toward my lady have

mich immer heizet abe gestân.
me ever bid off stand.

wan des volg ich iwerre lêre
for in-that follow I your teaching

noch iwerm râte niht mêre
nor your counsel any more

danne einem sêre tobenden man,
than a sorely raving man,

der rât und sinne nie gewan,
who counsel and senses never won,

und bit mir alsô helfen got,
and bid me so help God,

daz mir mîn selbes bot
that to-me my own messenger

in mînem seneden gedingen
in my longing hope

ie getorste bringen
ever dared bring

von mîner vrowen mære
of my lady tidings

sô gar untrœstebære,
so wholly uncomforting,

er het ez sô tiuwer
he had it so dearly

erarnet in dem fiuwer,
earned in the fire,

daz er wære al gar verbrant;
that he were all wholly burned;

wan daz er mîner vrowen hant
except that he my lady's hand

vil niuwens het gerüeret:
very newly had touched:

er wære alsô zerfüeret,
he were so scattered,

reht als diu leuber tuot der wint
right as the leaves does the wind

immer, sô si ervalbet sint.
ever, when they withered are.

und daz er sô wol vor mir genas,
and that he so well from me escaped,

sô nâhen im der tôt was,
so near to-him the death was,

des danke wan der vrowen mîn.
for-it thank but the lady mine.

hie mit sol sî geêret sîn.
here with shall she honored be.

ob ez mîn vînt wære,
if it my enemy were,

der mir herzen swære
who to-me heart's grief

tæt âne alle schulde,
did without all fault,

dem wold ich durch ir hulde
to-him would I for her favor

erbieten dienst und êre,
offer service and honor,

geruochte sîs, diu hêre.
deigned she-it, the noble-one.

nu geruochet si aber, diu reine,
now deigns she however, the pure-one,

leider alze kleine
alas all-too little

triwe unde dienste von mir.
faithfulness and services from me.

sælic Minne, daz clag ich dir
blessed Love, that lament I thee

und pit dich, vrowe hêre,
and bid thee, lady noble,

râtes und lêre:
of-counsel and teaching:

der bedarf ich beider sêre.
of-it need I both sorely.

«Und kunde ich, als dîn kumber stât, B2,137
«And could I, as thy trouble stands,

vriundes lêre und vriundes rât
friend's teaching and friend's counsel

ûf ein sô vrîez leben
on a so free life

nâch mînem willen wol gegeben,
after my will well given,

sô helfe mir got, den gæbe ich dir,
so help me God, that gave I thee,

und woldestûs getrûwen mir.
and wouldst-thou-it trust me.

ich enweiz niht râtes alse guot
I know no counsel so good

als triwe unde stæter muot
as faithfulness and steadfast spirit

gein werdes wîbes hulden.
toward worthy woman's favor.

dâ mit mac man verschulden
there with may one earn

ir vreundes gruoz, ir herzen gunst.
her friend's greeting, her heart's favor.

bezzer lêre und bezzer kunst,
better teaching and better art,

bezzer rât und bezzer sinne
better counsel and better senses

zerwerben werde minne,
to-win worthy love,

diu was ie vil unvernomen.
that was ever very unheard.

wie sol man baz ze heile komen,
how shall one better to luck come,

danne daz man werden wîben sî
than that one to-worthy women be

mit triuwen stætes dienstes bî
with faithfulness of-steadfast service by

und alles des vil unverzaget,
and of-all that very undaunted,

dâ mit man ir gunst bejaget?
there with one her favor wins?

daz ist ôt diu werde ritterschaft,
that is just the worthy chivalry,

dâ mit man mit der tugende kraft
there with one with the virtue's power

allen schanden widerstê.
all disgraces withstands.

ich enweiz niht sô guotes mê:
I know nothing so good more:

daz selbe daz was ie mîn rât.
the same that was ever my counsel.

sît den rât dîn herze hât,
since the counsel thy heart has,

sô kum des râtes nimmer abe:
so come of-the counsel never off:

und als ich dir gerâten habe,
and as I thee counseled have,

sô habe in stætem muote
so have in steadfast spirit

den rât in stæter huote,
the counsel in steadfast guard,

daz dû dem besten wîbe,
that thou to-the best woman,

ir herzen und ir lîbe,
her heart and her person,

dîne zît und dîne jâr
thy time and thy years

lebest sunder wenken gar.
livest without wavering wholly.

wirt sî, diu reine guote,
(if)-becomes she, the pure good-one,

diu reineclîch gemuote,
the purely spirited-one,

stætes muotes an dir gewar,
of-steadfast spirit in thee aware,

kanstuz alsô bringen dar,
(if)-canst-thou-it so bring thither,

sô kan sî, diu hêre,
so can she, the noble-one,

vreude, sælde und êre
joy, bliss and honor

dir füegen immer mêre.
thee arrange ever more.

Nu clagest aber dû den boten dîn, B2,178
Now lamentest however thou the messenger thine,

ez sül im misseboten sîn
it shall to-him ill-received be

mit smæhen alsô sêre,
with scorns so sorely,

daz er sît immer mêre
that he since ever more

ze keinen zîten sider
at no times since

getörste komen wider.
dared come back.

daz soldes du wol ze mâzen clagen:
that shouldst thou well in measure lament:

umbe einen gar verzagten zagen
about a wholly faint-hearted coward

lâ dir niht wesen swære.
let thee not be grievous.

ich sage dir wol ein mære,
I tell thee well a tidings,

daz des selben boten sint
that of-the same messenger are

bruoder unde bruoder kint
brothers and brother's children

wol drîzic in dem lande,
well thirty in the land,

daz man âne angest sande
that one without fear sent

ir ieslîchen über tûsent lant.
of-them each over thousand lands.

du hâst in doch in dîner hant,
thou hast him yet in thy hand,

und mager ez selbe hœren wol,
and may-he it self hear well,

ob ichz von im sprechen sol,
if I-it of him speak shall,

der dir ze boten rehte tauc;
who to-thee as messenger rightly suits;

wan er nie wort gelauc
for he never word lied

noch geliuget umb ein hâr,
nor lies by a hair,

und sold er leben tûsent jâr.
and should he live thousand years.

den selben soltu senden dar
the same shalt-thou send thither

und sage im dînen willen gar,
and tell him thy will wholly,

unde doch niht anders mê,
and yet not otherwise more,

wan alsô dîn wille stê:
except as thy will stand:

ich meine in dem herzen dîn.
I mean in the heart thine.

dâ bî lâ dir verboten sîn
there by let to-thee forbidden be

liegen unde smeichen.
lying and flattering.

des pflegent die muotes weichen:
that practice the of-spirit weak:

dâ mit soltû niht werben.
there with shalt-thou not woo.

du muost für wâr verderben,
thou must for true perish,

wil dû der guoten liegen
(if)-wilt thou the good-one lie

und sî mit worten triegen.»
and her with words deceive.»

The book continues: the poet denies deceit, sends the finger as a pledge of faithfulness, and begs Love to unlock his lady's heart, which Love promises to do. The lady keeps the finger in her box but says his service is lost. Ulrich plans to ride in a lady's guise, dressed as a queen, from the sea at Venice to Bohemia, giving a ring to every knight who breaks a spear with him, and she answers that the journey will win him praise.

B2,212 Triegen? war umb sprichestu daz?
Deceive? where for speakest-thou that?

du weist ez wol und niemen baz,
thou knowest it well and no-one better,

wie sî mîn herze meinet
how her my heart loves

und nâch ir hulden weinet,
and after her favor weeps,

alsô nâch trôste kleiniu kint,
as after comfort little children,

die dürftic unde weisen sint.
who needy and orphans are.

swer die trœstet, der tuot wol.
whoever them comforts, he does well.

nu bin ich ouch mit seneder dol
now am I also with longing suffering

und mit kumberlîcher swære
and with troublesome grief

weiz got vil weisenbære,
knows God very orphan-like,

und ist ôt niemen, der mir sî
and is just no-one, who to-me be

mit trôste in mîner swære bî.
with comfort in my grief by.

vil lîhte wære ez etswer,
very easily were it someone,

wan daz ich des trôstes ger
except that I of-the comfort desire

von niemen in der werlde mê,
from no-one in the world more,

sô ich nimmer frô gestê,
so I never glad stand,

wan von ir einer güete.
except from her alone's goodness.

si eine mac mîn gemüete
she alone may my mind

trœsten und untrœsten sô,
comfort and uncomfort so,

daz ich bin immer mêre frô
that I am ever more glad

oder immer mêre an vreuden tôt.
or ever more in joys dead.

erkande aber sî die senden nôt
knew however she the longing distress

und di senedebæren leit,
and the longing-bearing sorrows,

die von ir mîn herze treit,
which from her my heart bears,

sô rehte guot erkenne ich sie,
so right good know I her,

daz si mich doch eteswie
that she me yet somehow

trœste in mîner swære.
comfort in my grief.

und ob ich ein heiden wære,
and if I a heathen were,

sie müeste mich geniezen lân,
she must me enjoy let,

daz ich si ûz al der werlde hân
that I her out-of all the world have

und ûz allen wîben ûz erwelt
and out-of all women out chosen

und ir hân sô gar verselt
and to-her have so wholly handed-over

daz herze mîn und al den lîp.
the heart mine and all the body.

si reine, süeze, sælic wîp,
she pure, sweet, blessed woman,

si vrowe ob al den freuden mîn,
she lady above all the joys mine,

si lieze mich ir weisen sîn
she let me her orphan be

und trôste mich an weisen stat.
and comforted me in orphan's place.

die wîle aber mich gelückes rat
the while however me fortune's wheel

von hôhem muote zücket
from high spirit snatches

und mich mit sorgen drücket,
and me with sorrows presses,

sô saget mir mîn selbes lôz,
so tells me my own lot,

ez sî mîn sender kumber grôz
it be my longing trouble great

weisen kumbers hûsgenôz.
orphan trouble's housemate.

Alsô raubt ir minne mich. B2,255
So robs her love me.

ie dar under sô sorge ich,
ever there under so sorrow I,

wie ich ir bewære
how I her prove

daz rehte wâre mære,
the right true tidings,

daz ich ir âne argen sin
that I to-her without evil mind

sô rehte gar einvaltic bin,
so right wholly simple am,

daz wenken unde liegen,
that wavering and lying,

smeichen unde triegen,
flattering and deceiving,

und swaz den muot von stæte nimt
and whatever the spirit from steadfastness takes

und gegen vrowen niht enzimt,
and toward ladies not befits,

daz ich daz nie gein ir gewan.
that I that never toward her won.

ich bin ir stæter dienestman.
I am her steadfast vassal.

des sende ich ir ein stætez pfant:
for-it send I her a steadfast pledge:

ich sende ir ûz mîner hant
I send her out-of my hand

mîner vinger einen;
of-my fingers one;

und möht ich ir bescheinen
and might I her show

mîn inneclîchez meinen baz,
my inward meaning better,

sô helfe mir got, ich tæte daz.
so help me God, I did that.

der ist in ir dienste verzert:
it is in her service consumed:

mir ist der wille vil unerwert,
to-me is the will very unhindered,

ich welle ir weizgot, sol ich leben,
I will her God-knows, (if)-shall I live,

noch michel mêre zinses geben:
yet much more tribute give:

ich meine guot, herze unde lîp.
I mean goods, heart and body.

si reine, süeze, sælic wîp,
she pure, sweet, blessed woman,

si vrowe ob al den freuden mîn,
she lady above all the joys mine,

si müeze mir genædic sîn!
she may to-me gracious be!

den vinger, den ich ir hân gesant
the finger, which I her have sent

ûz mîner dienden zeswen hant,
out-of my serving right hand,

der was ze dienste ir geborn:
it was to service her born:

nu ist er in ir dienste verlorn.
now is it in her service lost.

des mag er sî wol riuwen:
therefore may it her well rue:

wan er hât ir mit triuwen
for it has her with faithfulness

gedient unz an sîn ende.
served until to its end.

ich hân in ûz mîner hende
I have it out-of my hand

ir umb anders niht gesant,
her for else nothing sent,

wan daz er mîner triuwen pfant
except that it of-my faithfulness pledge

gegen ir immer mêre sî,
toward her ever more be,

sô daz ich alles valsches vrî
so that I of-all falseness free

gegen ir sî, die wîle ich lebe,
toward her be, the while I live,

und daz ich ir diu jâr mîn gebe
and that I her the years mine give

ze dienste immer sunder wanc.
to service ever without wavering.

daz ist mîn muot und mîn gedanc
that is my spirit and my thought

mit triuwen immer sunder kranc.
with faithfulness ever without weakness.

Vil werdiu Minne, nu bit ich dich B2,298
Very worthy Love, now bid I thee

durch dîne tugent, daz du mich
for thy virtue, that thou me

dir lâzest wol enpfolhen sîn
to-thee lettest well commended be

gein der vil lieben vrowen mîn.
toward the very dear lady mine.

nu var mit mînem boten dar
now go with my messenger thither

und hilf im, daz er sich bewar
and help him, that he himself keep

mit fuoge, mit rede, als er sol.
with propriety, with speech, as he shall.

du maht mir dâ gehelfen wol.
thou mayst me there help well.

als sî vernem den boten mîn,
when she hear the messenger mine,

sô sol dâ sâ dîn helfe sîn
so shall there at-once thy help be

und sol ûf sliezen mir daz tor,
and shall up unlock me the gate,

dâ ich bin lange gewesen vor
where I am long been before

und kan ouch nimmer komen drin,
and can also never come therein,

mir helfe drin dîn güetlich sin.
me help therein thy kindly mind.

ich meine ir herze: daz ist verspart
I mean her heart: that is locked

und vor mir manicvalt bewart:
and from me manifold guarded:

dâ soltu durch mich komen für
there shalt-thou for me come before

und sliuz ûf dir und mir die tür.
and unlock up for-thee and me the door.

und hilfestû mir, vrowe, dar in,
and (if)-helpest-thou me, lady, there in,

dîn eigen ich dâ immer bin.
thy own I there ever am.

in dem himelrîche
in the kingdom-of-heaven

wære ich gewislîche
were I surely

sô gern niht: daz ist alsô.
so gladly not: that is so.

mîn muot müest stîgen immer hô,
my spirit must climb ever high,

solde ich dar inne gesinde sîn,
should I there in household be,

in dem herzen der vrowen mîn.
in the heart of-the lady mine.

sô wær ich alles des gewert,
so were I of-all that granted,

des mir der muot ze freuden gert.
which to-me the spirit to joys desires.

ich wær sælic, ich wær rîch:
I were blessed, I were rich:

sô lebt niht mannes mir gelîch.
so lived no man to-me like.

jâ wil ich ûf die triuwe mîn
yes will I on the faithfulness mine

ir immer drumbe diende sîn,
her ever therefor serving be,

daz sî mich in ir herzen grunt
that she me in her heart's ground

hûse. mir ist für wâr daz kunt,
houses. to-me is for true that known,

daz nie herze sô reinez wart
that never heart so pure was

noch vor wandel baz bewart
nor from blemish better kept

danne ir herze wandels frî.
than her heart of-blemish free.

ir ist sô hôhe tugende bî,
to-her is so high virtue by,

daz ich ir hulden immer ger.
that I her favor ever desire.

nu hilf mir, Minne, daz sî mich wer
now help me, Love, that she me grant

ir hulden durch den willen dîn
her favor for the will thine

und ouch durch den dienest mîn:
and also for the service mine:

der sol ir immer stæte sîn.
which shall to-her ever steadfast be.

B2,341 «Guot ritter, friunt, geloube daz,
«Good knight, friend, believe that,

kund ich dir wol gehelfen baz,
could I thee well help better,

danne ich gehalf noch ritter ie,
than I helped yet knight ever,

der sich mit dienste an mich lie,
who himself with service to me left,

daz tæt ich dir mit triwen gar.
that did I thee with faithfulness wholly.

sît du mir dienst dîniu jâr,
since thou me servest thy years,

sô wil ich ûf die triuwe mîn
so will I on the faithfulness mine

hin varn mit dem boten dîn
thither go with the messenger thine

ze dîner vrowen wandels frî
to thy lady of-blemish free

und wil ir nâhen wesen bî,
and will her near be by,

dâ dîn bot wirbet die botschaft.
where thy messenger conducts the message.

sô wil ich sâ mit mîner kraft
so will I at-once with my power

sliezen ûf ir herzen tor.
unlock up her heart's gate.

du solt niht lange sîn hie vor:
thou shalt not long be here before:

wir süln dâ gesinde sîn
we shall there household be

in dem herzen der vrowen dîn.
in the heart of-the lady thine.

dâ vinde wir gesindes vil,
there find we of-household much,

des ich ein teil dir nennen wil:
of-which I a part thee name will:

zuht unde wîplîch güete,
courtesy and womanly goodness,

scham unde guot gemüete,
modesty and good mind,

senfte sit, wîplîch gelâze,
gentle manner, womanly bearing,

an allen dingen rehtiu mâze,
in all things right measure,

werdicheit und êre,
worthiness and honor,

hôher tugende lêre,
high virtue's teaching,

süeze grüeze, güetlîchiu wort,
sweet greetings, kindly words,

lieplîch blicke, freuden hort.
lovely glances, joys' hoard.

ich wære an guoten witzen blint,
I were in good wits blind,

wolde ich die tugende, die dâ sint,
would I the virtues, which there are,

alle nennen sunderlîch:
all name separately:

sô wær ich niht wohl sinne rîch.
so were I not well of-senses rich.

niht mêr ich dâ von sprechen sol:
not more I there of speak shall:

ir herze ist allez tugende vol.
her heart is all of-virtue full.

dar inne sul wir gesinde sîn,
there in shall we household be,

ich unde dû, geselle mîn.
I and thou, companion mine.

des kan si niht geweigern mir:
that can she not refuse me:

ich helf uns drin, dir unde mir.»
I help us therein, thee and me.»

B2,377 Viel süeze Minne, nu lôn dir got,
Very sweet Love, now reward thee God,

daz dû wil selbe sîn mîn bot
that thou wilt self be my messenger

hin zuo der lieben vrowen mîn!
thither to the dear lady mine!

daz wil ich immer diende sîn.
that will I ever serving be.

mit maniger hande ritterspil
with many kinds knightly-game

sol ich iu beiden dienen vil,
shall I you both serve much,

dir unde mîner vrouwen.
thee and my lady.

man sol mich offte schouwen
one shall me often see

in iuwerm dienest harnaschvar,
in your service armor-colored,

und sol daz sîn mit triuwen gar.
and shall that be with faithfulness wholly.

swaz sô ich minne gernder man
whatever so I love desiring man

mit lîbe, mit guote gedienen kan,
with body, with goods serve can,

der dienst wirt an iuch geleit
the service is on you laid

mit lûterlîcher stæticheit.
with pure steadfastness.

ich bin ze dienste iu geborn
I am to service to-you born

und hân ze freuden iuch erkorn:
and have to joys you chosen:

des hât diu stæte mîn gesworn.
that has the steadfastness mine sworn.

Dô sî gelas daz büechelîn, 450
When she read the little-book,

dô sprach si sâ: «geselle mîn,
then spoke she at-once: «companion mine,

waz sol ich gegen dir sprechen mê?
what shall I toward thee speak more?

mir tuot des vingers sterben wê;
to-me does of-the finger's death woe;

doch durch dîns herren liebe niht:
yet for thy lord's love not:

wan daz dîn munt gein mir des giht,
except that thy mouth toward me of-it declares,

er hab in von den schulden mîn
he have it by the faults mine

verlorn, des muoz ich trûric sîn.»
lost, therefore must I sad be.»

451 «Frowe, ich sagiu, wie ez ergie:
«Lady, I tell-you, how it befell:

dô ich nu næhste von iu hie
when I now last from you here

schiet und ich im sagte daz,
parted and I him told that,

daz ir dar umbe mir gehaz
that you there for to-me hostile

wæret, daz ich, vrowe mîn,
were, that I, lady mine,

iu saget, er het den vinger sîn
you told, he had the finger his

von iwern schulden gar verlorn:
by your faults wholly lost:

daz liegen wære iu an mich zorn.
the lying were to-you at me anger.

452 Dô erz vernam, er gie von mir.
When he-it heard, he went from me.

vrowe, daz sült gelauben ir,
lady, that shall believe you,

daz er sâ an derselben stat
that he at-once at the-same place

einen ritter des erpat,
a knight of-it begged,

der im den vinger ûz der hant
who him the finger out-of the hand

sluoc. dô kom ouch ich zehant
struck. then came also I forthwith

dar, dâ ich im bluoten sach
thither, where I him bleed saw

die hant. vil leide mir geschach.»
the hand. very sorrowful to-me happened.»

«Nu rîte hin wider und sage im daz, 453
«Now ride thither back and tell him that,

er möhte den vrowen verre baz
he might the ladies far better

gedienen, ob er in hete noch,
serve, if he it had yet,

den vinger sîn; und sage im doch,
the finger his; and tell him yet,

daz ich in welle hie behaben,
that I it will here keep,

in mîner lade alsô begraben,
in my box so buried,

daz ich in sehe wol alle tage.
that I it see well all days.

ûf mîn wârheit im daz sage.
on my truth him that tell.

Du sage im von mir, höfscher knabe, 454
Thou tell him from me, courtly boy,

daz ich den vinger hie behabe,
that I the finger here keep,

des tuo ich niht ûf solhen muot,
that do I not on such spirit,

daz im sîn dienst immer guot
that to-him his service ever good

gegen mir werd als umb ein hâr.
toward me become as by a hair.

ob er mir diente tûsent jâr,
if he me served thousand years,

der dienst wære gar verlorn:
the service were wholly lost:

des hât diu stæte mîn gesworn.»
that has the steadfastness mine sworn.»

Mit solher rede er zuo mir quam.
With such speech he to me came.

dô ich die botschaft vernam,
when I the message heard,

ich het vil hôher freuden hort
I had very high joys' hoard

dâ von, daz sî den vinger dort
there from, that she the finger there

het behabet. des was ich frô
had kept. of-it was I glad

und sprach sâ wider den boten sô:
and spoke at-once to the messenger so:

«ich muoz von herzen frô des sîn,
«I must from heart glad of-it be,

daz sî dort hât den vinger mîn.
that she there has the finger mine.

Ich weiz wol, swenne sî in siht, 456
I know well, whenever she it sees,

so erlæt si des ir güete niht,
so releases her of-it her goodness not,

si müeze an mich gedenken sâ.
she must on me think at-once.

dâ von ist mir liep, daz si in dâ
there from is to-me dear, that she it there

hât behabet, daz tuot mir wol.
has kept, that does me well.

ich diene ir immer, als ich sol.
I serve her ever, as I shall.

an ir gar al mîn freude lît:
on her wholly all my joy lies:

si ist mînes herzen meienzît.
she is my heart's May-time.

Bote, nu soltu râten mir 457
Messenger, now shalt-thou counsel me

durch dîne triuwe, waz ich ir
for thy faithfulness, what I her

diene, daz si dunke guot.
serve, that her seem good.

ich bin alsô gein ir gemuot,
I am so toward her spirited,

daz ich ir immer dienen wil.
that I her ever serve will.

ich dient ir gern, und kund ich vil.
I served her gladly, and could I much.

ich weiz für wâr wol, sî ist sô guot,
I know for true well, she is so good,

daz si mir noch genâde tuot.
that she me yet grace does.

458 Got hât mich in ir dienest brâht.
God has me into her service brought.

ich sage dir, wes ich hân gedâht.
I tell thee, what I have thought.

ich wil in einer vrowen wîs
I will in a lady's way

durch si werben umbe prîs.
for her strive for prize.

der süeze got müeze mich bewarn!
the sweet God may me keep!

ich wil mit ritterschefte varn
I will with chivalry go

hin ze Beheim von dem mer.
thither to Bohemia from the sea.

gein mir kumt ritter wol ein her.
toward me comes knights well an army.

459 Ich wil mich von dem lande steln,
I will me from the land steal,

mîn vart vor allen liuten heln
my journey from all people hide

(daz sol bî disem winder sîn),
(that shall by this winter be),

und varn als ein bilgerîn,
and go as a pilgrim,

der durch got hinze Rôme vert
who for God toward Rome goes

(den willen niemen mir erwert),
(the will no-one me prevents),

ze Venedige verholne sîn
at Venice secretly be

reht unz an des meien schîn.
right until to the May's shine.

Und wil mich dâ bereiten wol, 460
And will me there prepare well,

reht als ein küneginne sol.
right as a queen shall.

vil wünneclîchiu vrowencleit
very delightful lady's-clothes

die werdent dâ an mich geleit.
they are there on me laid.

nu merke reht, waz ich dir sage:
now mark rightly, what I thee tell:

ich wil mich nâch sande Georien tage
I will me after Saint George's day

an dem andern morgen heben
on the second morning raise

(got müeze mir gelücke geben!)
(God may me fortune give!)

Von dem mer ze Meisters her. 461
From the sea to Mestre hither.

swelch ritter mit mir danne ein sper
whichever knight with me then a spear

verstichet durch die vrowen sîn,
breaks for the lady his,

dem wil ich geben ein vingerlîn
to-him will I give a finger-ring

von golde: daz sol wesen guot.
of gold: that shall be good.

daz gib ich im ûf solhen muot,
that give I him on such spirit,

daz er ez gebe, diu im sî
that he it give, to-her-who to-him be

diu næhste sînem herzen bî.»
the nearest to-his heart by.»

462 «Herre, ich râte iu, als ich sol.
«Lord, I counsel you, as I shall.

mügt ir die vart verenden wol
(if)-may you the journey complete well

an lîbe, an guote, sô wizet daz,
in body, in goods, so know that,

daz ritters lîp gefuor nie baz.
that knight's person fared never better.

ez wirt ein ritterlîchiu vart,
it becomes a knightly journey,

ob iwer fuoge daz bewart,
if your propriety that keeps,

daz iuch erkennet under wegen
that you recognizes under way

niemen: des sült ir wol pflegen.»
no-one: of-that shall you well take-care.»

463 Bot, ich wil die vart sô varn,
Messenger, I will the journey so go,

daz ich daz trûwe wol bewarn,
that I that trust well to-keep,

daz iemen wizze, wer ich bin.
that anyone know, who I am.

dar an kêre ich gar mînen sin.
there on turn I wholly my mind.

ez sol mîn hôch gemuoter lîp
it shall my high spirited person

gekleidet sîn reht als ein wîp.
clothed be right as a woman.

mîn vart diu muoz alsô geschehen,
my journey it must so happen,

daz mich sol nimmer man gesehen.
that me shall never man see.

Ich wil verbinden mich sô gar, 464
I will bind me so wholly,

daz ich die vart alsô bewar,
that I the journey so keep,

daz nimmer mînen blôzen lîp
that never my bare person

beschowet weder man noch wîp.
beholds neither man nor woman.

mîn antlütz und die hende mîn
my face and the hands mine

sol allez gar verborgen sîn,
shall all wholly hidden be,

daz iemen wize, wer ich sî.
that anyone know, who I be.

der wille ist mînem herzen bî.
the will is to-my heart by.

Bot, durch alle triuwe dîn, 465
Messenger, by all faithfulness thine,

nu var ôt aber ze der vrowen mîn
now go just again to the lady mine

und sage ir, wie ich welle varn.
and tell her, how I will go.

bit sî ir güete an mir bewarn
bid her her goodness on me keep

alsô, daz sî mit willen mir
so, that she with will me

erlaube, daz ich den dienest ir
permit, that I the service her

diene, als ich doch willen hân.
serve, as I yet will have.

ob sî daz tuot, dêst wol getân.»
if she that does, that-is well done.»

466 Der bot sâ zuo der vrowen fuor,
The messenger at-once to the lady went,

der er des ûf sîn sælde swuor,
to-whom he of-it on his bliss swore,

daz ich ir diente mîniu jâr
that I her served my years

mit triuwen sunder wenken gar.
with faithfulness without wavering wholly.

mîn vart er ir vil rehte saget:
my journey he her very rightly told:

er sprach: «vrowe, ob iu behaget
he spoke: «lady, if you pleases

sîn ritterlîcher dienest niht,
his knightly service not,

daz ist unbilde, ob daz geschiht.»
that is outrage, if that happens.»

467 Sî sprach: «bote, du solt im sagen,
She spoke: «messenger, thou shalt him tell,

von mir die botschaft niht verdagen.
from me the message not conceal.

und ist, daz er die vart getuot,
and (if)-is, that he the journey makes,

als dû mir sagest, si ist im guot:
as thou me tellest, it is to-him good:

im wirt dar umbe ein sölher solt,
to-him becomes there for a such pay,

daz im di biderben werdent holt.
that him the worthy-ones become devoted.

ob ez im gegen mir niht enfrumt,
if it him toward me not profits,

an lobe ez im ze staten kumt.»
in praise it to-him to aid comes.»

Der bot mit freuden von ir fuor 468
The messenger with joys from her went

zuo mir; er vant mich bî der Muor
to me; he found me by the Mur

ze Liehtensteine: dâ was ich.
at Liechtenstein: there was I.

dô ich in sach, des vreut ich mich.
when I him saw, of-it rejoiced I myself.

ich sprach: «vil wol gezogner knabe,
I spoke: «very well bred boy,

sage mir, ob sich wol gehabe
tell me, whether herself well fare

diu herzenliebiu vrowe mîn:
the heart-dear lady mine:

sô wil ich hôhes muotes sîn.»
so will I of-high spirit be.»

Er sprach: «si ist schœn und dar zuo frô. 469
He spoke: «she is beautiful and there to glad.

si hât enboten iu alsô
she has announced you thus

umb iwer vart, ob ir di tuot,
about your journey, if you it make,

si sî iu endelîchen guot.
it be to-you truly good.

ob sî iu niht ze staten kumt
if she you not to aid comes

gein ir, an êren si iuch gefrumt.
toward her, in honors it you profits.

si trœstet iuch des endelîch,
she comforts you of-it truly,

daz ir dâ von wert êren rîch.»
that you there from are of-honors rich.»

Ulrich winters in Venice and has women's clothes, braids, and white arms made, and he sends out a letter. In it Queen Venus announces the route day by day, the terms, and a closing tournament. After Saint George's Day he leaves Mestre in a white procession. At Treviso the podestà forbids jousting until Count Meinhard of Gorizia and the ladies persuade him.

Âventiure, wie der herre Uolrîch küneginne wîse fuor durch diu
Adventure, how the lord Ulrich in-queen's way went through the

lant mit ritterschefte.
lands with chivalry.

Dô ich die botschaft vernam,
When I the message heard,

mîn lîp was frô, daz herze sam,
my person was glad, the heart likewise,

daz ir mîn vart geviele wol:
that her my journey pleased well:

des wart ich aller freuden vol.
therefore became I of-all joys full.

alzehant bereit ich dô
forthwith readied I then

mich unde was von herzen vrô,
me and was from heart glad,

daz mîn geverte si dûhte guot:
that my journey her seemed good:

dâ von was ich vil hôchgemuot.
there from was I very high-spirited.

Mîn lîp bereitet palde wart 471
My person readied quickly was

ûf die vil ritterlîchen vart.
on the very knightly journey.

ich huob mich als ein bilgerîn
I raised myself as a pilgrim

sâ von dem lande: daz muost sîn.
at-once from the land: that must be.

durch heln ich taschen unde stap
for hiding I pouch and staff

sâ nam (ein priester mir daz gap),
at-once took (a priest me that gave),

als ich ze Rôme wolde varn.
as I to Rome would go.

ich bat mich sêre got bewarn.
I bade me sorely God keep.

Ze Venedige ich vil palde quam. 472
To Venice I very quickly came.

ein herberge mîn lîp dâ nam
a lodging my person there took

vil verre von den leuten hin.
very far from the people away.

daz tet ich wan ûf sölhen sîn,
that did I but on such purpose,

daz niemen mich erkande dâ:
that no-one me recognized there:

daz behuot ich dâ und anderswâ.
that guarded I there and elsewhere.

den winder allen ich dâ lac.
the winter all I there lay.

nu hœret, wes mîn lîp dâ pflac!
now hear, what my person there did!

473 Ich hiez mir snîden vrowen cleit:
I bade me cut lady's clothes:

zwelf röckel wurden mir bereit
twelve little-skirts were me readied

und drîzic vrowen ermel guot
and thirty lady's sleeves good

an kleiniu hemde, daz was mîn muot.
on fine shifts, that was my spirit.

dar zuo ich willeclîch gewan
there to I willingly got

zwên schœne zöpfe wol getân,
two beautiful braids well made,

die ich mit perlîn wol bewant,
which I with little-pearls well wound,

der ich dâ wunder veile vant.
of-which I there wonders for-sale found.

474 Man sneit mir sâ an der zît
One cut me at-once at the time

drî wîze capen von samît.
three white capes of samite.

die setel wâren silberwîz,
the saddles were silver-white,

dar an der meister grôzen vlîz
there on the master great diligence

mit sîner meisterschefte leit.
with his mastery laid.

von wîzzem tuoche man drüber sneit
of white cloth one over-them cut

lanc unde wît vil meisterlîch.
long and wide very masterfully.

die zeume wâren kosterîch.
the bridles were costly.

Zwelf knappen sneit man sâ zehant 475
Twelve squires cut one at-once forthwith

von wîzem tuoche guot gewant.
of white cloth good garment.

man machet mir ouch wol hundert sper
one made me also well hundred spears

von silber wîz nâch mîner ger.
of silver white after my desire.

ich dâ von wil niht sprechen mê.
I there of will not speak more.

ez was ouch wîz alsam ein snê,
it was also white like a snow,

swaz al die mîne fuorten an:
whatever all the mine wore on:

daz was gar wîz alsam ein swan.
that was wholly white like a swan.

Mîn helm was wîz, mîn schilt alsam. 476
My helmet was white, my shield likewise.

fünf wîze samît ich dô nam,
five white samites I then took,

dar ûz man mir drî decke sneit
there out-of one me three covers cut

ûf mîniu orsse ze wâppencleit.
on my horses as coat-of-arms.

mîn wâppenroc der muoste sîn
my surcoat it must be

ein wol gevalden röckelin
a well pleated little-skirt

von kleinem wîzen tuoche guot:
of fine white cloth good:

daz fuort ich an durch hôhen muot.
that wore I on for high spirit.

477 Man brâht mir mîniu ros zehant
One brought me my horses forthwith

vil gar verholne durch diu lant:
very wholly secretly through the lands:

des muosten ouch die knehte mîn
therefore must also the servants mine

von vremden landen alle sîn.
from foreign lands all be.

di vlizen willeclîchen sich
they strove willingly themselves

mîn vart ze helen: des bat ich.
my journey to hide: for-it bade I.

mîn nam vil wol verswigen wart
my name very well kept-silent was

von in für wâr gar al die vart.
by them for true wholly all the journey.

478 Ich und die mîne wol bereit
I and the mine well readied

wâren: des was ich gemeit.
were: of-it was I joyful.

dô sant ich einen brief zehant
then sent I a letter forthwith

bî einem boten in diu lant,
by a messenger into the lands,

dâ ich durch wolde varn.
where I through would go.

ich bat den boten daz bewarn,
I bade the messenger that keep,

daz er dâ iemen nande mich.
that he there anyone named me.

er sprach: «zewâre, daz tuon ich.»
he spoke: «truly, that do I.»

Sâ an den brief geschriben wart 479
At-once on the letter written was

vil meisterlîch gar al mîn vart,
very masterfully wholly all my journey,

al die herberge mîn,
all the lodging mine,

swâ ich des nahtes wolde sîn.
wherever I of-the night would be.

an den brief manz allez schreip.
on the letter one-it all wrote.

nâch dem boten ich beleip
after the messenger I remained

volleclîch wol drîzic tage.
fully well thirty days.

nu hœret mich! den brief ich sage:
now hear me! the letter I tell:

Diu werde küneginne Venus, gottinne über die minne, Enbiutet B
The worthy queen Venus, goddess over the love, Announces

al den rittern, die ze Langparten und ze Friûl und ze Kernden
all the knights, who in Lombardy and in Friuli and in Carinthia

und ze Stîr und ze Œsterrîch und ze Bêheim gesezzen sint, ir
and in Styria and in Austria and in Bohemia settled are, her

hulde und ir gruoz und tuot in kunt, daz si durch ir liebe zuo
favor and her greeting and makes them known, that she for their love to

in varn wil, und wil si lêren mit wiegetânen dingen si werder
them go will, and will them teach with what-kind things they worthy

vrowen minne verdienen oder erwerben suln. Si tuot in kunt,
ladies' love earn or win shall. She makes them known,

daz si sich hebet des næhsten tages nâch sande Georjen tage
that she herself raises of-the next day after Saint George's day

ûz dem mer ze Meisters, und wil varn unz hin ze Bêheim mit
out-of the sea to Mestre, and will go until thither to Bohemia with

sôgetânen dingen. Swelch ritter gegen ir kumt und ein sper wider
such-made things. Whichever knight toward her comes and a spear against

si enzwei gestichet, dem gibt si ze miet ein guldîn vingerlîn: daz
her in-two breaks, to-him gives she as reward a golden finger-ring: that

sol er senden dem wîbe, diu im diu liebest ist. Daz vingerlîn hât
shall he send to-the woman, who to-him the dearest is. The finger-ring has

di kraft, swelher vrowen man ez sendet, diu muoz immer deste
the power, whichever lady one it sends, she must ever the-more

schœner sîn und muoz in sunder valsch minnen, den der irz
beautiful be and must him without falseness love, him who her-it

hât gesant. Stichet mîn vrowe Vênus deheinen ritter nider, der
has sent. (If)-thrusts my lady Venus any knight down, he

sol envier enden in die werlt nîgen einem wîbe ze êren. Stichet
shall in-four ends into the world bow to-a woman to honor. (If)-thrusts

aber sî dehein ritter nider, der sol elliu diu örsse haben, diu
however her any knight down, he shall all the horses have, which

si mit ir füeret. Si vert des êrsten tages ze Tervîs, des andern
she with her leads. She goes of-the first day to Treviso, of-the second

tages an den Plât, des dritten tages ze Schetschîn, des vierden
day to the Piave, of-the third day to Sacile, of-the fourth

tages ze sande Uolrîch, des fünften tages ze Clemûn, des sehsten
day to Saint Ulrich, of-the fifth day to Gemona, of-the sixth

tages zer Clûse, des sibenden tages ze dem Tor, des ahten
day at-the Chiusa, of-the seventh day to the Thörl, of-the eighth

tages ze Villach. Dâ lît si den neunten tac stille. Des zehenden
day to Villach. There lies she the ninth day still. Of-the tenth

tages ze Veltkirchen, des einleften tages ze sante Vîte, des
day to Feldkirchen, of-the eleventh day to Saint Veit, of-the

zwelften tages ze Vrisach, des drîzehenden tages ze Scheuflich,
twelfth day to Friesach, of-the thirteenth day to Scheifling,

des vierzehenden tages ze Judenburc, des fünfzehenden tages ze
of-the fourteenth day to Judenburg, of-the fifteenth day to

Knütelvelde, des sehzehenden tages ze Liuben, des sibenzehenden
Knittelfeld, of-the sixteenth day to Leoben, of-the seventeenth

tages ze Kapfenberc, des ahzehenden tages ze Murzuslage, des
day to Kapfenberg, of-the eighteenth day to Mürzzuschlag, of-the

niunzehenden tages ze Glokenz. An dem zweinzigestem tage
nineteenth day to Gloggnitz. On the twentieth day

ist si dâ über tac, an dem ein und zweinzigestem tage ist si
is she there over day, on the one and twentieth day is she

ze Niünkirchen; an dem zwein und zweinzigestem tage ist si
at Neunkirchen; on the two and twentieth day is she

ze der Niwenstat; an dem drî und zweinzigestem tage ist si
at the Neustadt; on the three and twentieth day is she

ze Dreskirchen; an dem vier und zweinzigesten tage ist si ze
at Traiskirchen; on the four and twentieth day is she at

Wiene; an dem fünf und zweinzigestem tage ist si dâ über tac;
Vienna; on the five and twentieth day is she there over day;

an dem sehs und zweinzigestem tage ist si ze Niuwenburc; an
on the six and twentieth day is she at Neuburg; on

dem siben und zweinzigestem tage ist si ze Mistelbach; an dem
the seven and twentieth day is she at Mistelbach; on the

aht und zweinzigestem tage ist si ze Velsperc; an dem neun und
eight and twentieth day is she at Feldsberg; on the nine and

zweinzigestem tage ist si enhalp der Tye ze Bêheim: dâ hât
twentieth day is she beyond the Thaya in Bohemia: there has

ir vart ein ende. Si wil ûf der vart ir antlütze noch ir hende
her journey an end. She will on the journey her face nor her hands

niemen lâzen sehen, si wil ouch wider niemen ein wort sprechen.
no-one let see, she will also to no-one a word speak.

Si gebiutet, von dem tage und ir vart ein ende hât, an dem
She commands, from the day and her journey an end has, on the

ahten tage einen turnei ze Niuwenburc: swelch ritter ir vart
eighth day a tournament at Neuburg: whichever knight her journey

vernimet und gegen ir niht enkumt, den tuot si in der minne
hears and toward her not comes, him puts she in the love's

æhte und in aller guoten wîbe æhte. Si hât ir herberge dar
outlawry and in all good women's outlawry. She has her lodgings there

umbe alle an geschriben, daz ein ieslîch ritter wize, wâ oder
for all on written, that an each knight know, where or

wenne er gegen si komen sül, dâ ez sich im aller beste füege.
when he toward her come shall, where it itself him of-all best suits.

480 Swâ der brief kom in diu lant
Wherever the letter came into the lands

und mîne vart dâ tet bekant,
and my journey there made known,

des wâren alle die ritter vrô.
of-it were all the knights glad.

wan teutschiu lant di stuonden sô,
for German lands they stood so,

daz niemen was dâ êren rîch,
that no-one was there of-honors rich,

er müeste varen ritterlîch
unless-he must go knightly

und wesen durch vrowen hôchgemuot.
and be for ladies high-spirited.

des was dô site und wær noch guot.
that was then custom and were still good.

481 Die ritter gar bereiten sich.
The knights wholly readied themselves.

dô het ouch ich bereitet mich.
then had also I readied me.

ich huop mich nâch sende Georjen tage
I raised myself after Saint George's day

des næhsten tages, als ich iu sage,
of-the next day, as I you tell,

eines morgens harte fruo.
one morning very early.

diu leute sêre zogten zuo:
the people sorely drew to:

umb mich wart ein vil grôz gedranc.
around me was a very great throng.

ûf ritterschaft stuont mîn gedanc.
on chivalry stood my thought.

Mîn marschalc und mîn koch für reit 482
My marshal and my cook before rode

selbe fünfte: von dem wart mir bereit
self fifth: by whom was me readied

vil guot ritterlîch gemach.
very good knightly ease.

nâch dem man sâ dô füeren sach
after whom one at-once then carry saw

ein banir wîz alsam ein swan:
a banner white like a swan:

bî der sô riten zwêne man,
by which so rode two men,

der busûnen lût erschal.
the trumpets' sound rang-out.

ze Meisters wart vil grôzer schal.
at Mestre was very great clamor.

Man zôch dar mîn soumer drî. 483
One led thither my sumpter-horses three.

den liefen drî garzûne bî:
by-them ran three grooms beside:

den was ouch louffen wol geslaht.
to-them was also running well natural.

man zôch dar nâch driu örse bedaht,
one led there after three horses covered,

der ieglîches ein knappe pflac.
of-which each a squire tended.

ûf ir einem ie ein satel lac:
on of-them one each a saddle lay:

der was starc unde silberwîz:
which was strong and silver-white:

dar an lac guotes meisters vlîz.
there on lay good master's diligence.

484 Man fuort ouch bî dem rosse hie
One led also by the horse here

mînen wîzen schilt, daz ich nie
my white shield, that I never

sô wol gemachten hab gesehen:
so well made have seen:

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen.
of-it must I from the truth declare.

dâ bî fuort man den helm mîn:
there by led one the helmet mine:

der moht ouch lichter niht gesîn.
it might also brighter not be.

er was gekrœnet meisterlîch:
it was crowned masterfully:

diu krône diu was kosterîch.
the crown it was costly.

Dar nâch ein holreblâser sluoc 485
There after a fife-blower beat

einen sumber meisterlîch genuoc.
a drum masterfully enough.

dar nâch vier knehte schône riten
there after four servants beautifully rode

vil wol gecleit nâch knehte siten:
very well clad after servants' custom:

der ieslîcher fuorte her
of-whom each carried hither

in sîner hant driu groziu sper,
in his hand three great spears,

gebunden zuo einander wol.
bound to one-another well.

die knehte wâren zühte vol.
the servants were of-courtesy full.

Dar nâch zwô magde wolgetân 486
There after two maidens well-made

riten; swaz die fuorten an,
rode; whatever they wore on,

daz was von wîzer varbe gar;
that was of white color wholly;

si wâren selbe wol gevar.
they were self well colored.

dar nâch zwêne fideler guot
there after two fiddlers good

riten, die mich hôch gemuot
rode, who me high spirited

machten: wan si fidelten hô
made: for they fiddled high

ein reisenot: diu tet mich vrô.
a traveling-tune: it made me glad.

487 Dar nâch ich selbe kom geriten,
There after I self came ridden,

in einer kappen wol gesniten:
in a cape well cut:

diu was von wîzem samît gar.
it was of white samite wholly.

einen huot ich fuorte, der was clâr,
a hat I wore, which was bright,

wîz mit perlîn wol bestreut.
white with little-pearls well strewn.

mîn minne gernde herze freut
my love desiring heart rejoices

sich, daz ich der vrowen mîn
itself, that I the lady mine

mit ritterschaft solde dienende sîn.
with chivalry should serving be.

488 Zwên zöpfe brûn, grôz unde lanc
Two braids brown, great and long

ich fuorte, daz ir lenge swanc
I wore, that their length swung

vil vaste über den gürtel mîn:
very fast over the girdle mine:

die muosten ouch mit berlîn sîn
they must also with little-pearls be

bewunden meisterlîche wol.
wound masterfully well.

mîn herze was hôhes muotes vol.
my heart was of-high spirit full.

ein röckelîn daz fuort ich an,
a little-skirt that wore I on,

daz vrowe bezzerz nie gewan.
that lady better-one never got.

Ich fuort ein hemde, daz was planc, 489
I wore a shift, that was white,

ze mâzzen als daz röckel lanc,
in measure as the little-skirt long,

dar an zwêne vrowenermel guot.
there on two lady's-sleeves good.

ich was vil ritterlîch gemuot.
I was very knightly spirited.

hantschuohe von sîden wol geworht
gloves of silk well worked

ich fuort. mîn lîp was unervorht.
I wore. my person was unafraid.

sus huob ich mich dâ von dem mer:
thus raised I me there from the sea:

bî mir was leute wol ein her.
by me was people well an army.

Sie wâren dar durch schowen komen. 490
They were thither for watching come.

dô hiez ich vrâgen des di fromen,
then bade I ask of-it the valiant,

ob iemen wære ritter dâ.
whether anyone were knight there.

si sprâchen: «liebiu vrowe, jâ:
they spoke: «dear lady, yes:

ir ist hie tûsent oder baz,
of-them is here thousand or better,

die vil ungerne mîdent daz,
who very unwillingly avoid that,

daz sî mit iu niht stechent hie;
that they with you not joust here;

wan daz der potestât sî niht lie.
except that the podestà them not let.

491 Der von Tervîs der ist sô gemuot,
He of Treviso he is so spirited,

er giht, er müez im geben guot,
he declares, he must him give goods,

fünf tûsent pfunt und dannoch mêr,
five thousand pounds and yet more,

swer mit iu versteche ein sper.
whoever with you break a spear.

er hât vil leide uns dran getân.
he has very sorrowful us thereon done.

er ist ein sô zorniger man,
he is a so angry man,

daz er ûf freude ahtet niht:
that he on joy reckons not:

vil selten man in lachen siht.»
very seldom one him laugh sees.»

492 Sus zoget ich sâ von Meisters dan
Thus drew I at-once from Mestre thence

(in vrowen wîs und was ein man)
(in lady's way and was a man)

vil hôhes muotes hinz Tervîs.
very of-high spirit toward Treviso.

dar was ein grâve durch hôhen prîs
there was a count for high prize

mit funfzic ritern schône komen.
with fifty knights beautifully come.

des wart dâ vil wol war genomen;
of-it was there very well heed taken;

vil lieplîch er enpfangen wart:
very lovingly he received was:

ez was von Gorze grâve Meinhart.
it was of Gorizia count Meinhard.

Zehant alsô er dar bequam, 493
Forthwith as he thither came,

und daz der biderbe daz vernam,
and that the worthy-one that heard,

daz man mich dâ niht stechen lie,
that one me there not joust let,

dô sprach er: «wie ist daz komen, wie?»
then spoke he: «how is that come, how?»

man sagt, ez hab der potestât
one says, it have the podestà

verboten. «daz ist ein missetât»,
forbidden. «that is a misdeed»,

sprach der êre gernde man,
spoke the honor desiring man,

«und sul wir hie niht freude hân.
«and shall we here not joy have.

Dêswâr ez wirt versuochet paz!» 494
Truly it is tried better!»

zehant er ûf sîn pferde saz
forthwith he upon his horse sat

und reit vil palde sâzehant,
and rode very quickly forthwith,

mit rittern vil hin, dâ er vant
with knights many thither, where he found

den potestât, und sprach alsô:
the podestà, and spoke thus:

«herre, ir sült uns lâzen vrô
«lord, you shall us let glad

hie mit iwern hulden sîn.
here with your favor be.

des bit ich durch den dienest mîn.»
of-it bid I for the service mine.»

495 Er sprach: «ich were iu freuden niht:
He spoke: «I deny you joys not:

swelch freude uns âne schaden geschiht,
whatever joy to-us without harm happens,

der gan ich iu zewâre wol.
that grant I you truly well.

wan einez ich iu sagen sol:
except one-thing I you tell shall:

ich wil des niht enheine wîs,
I will of-it not in-any way,

daz ieman ie hie ze Tervîs
that anyone ever here at Treviso

kom in deheiniu wâppenkleit:
came into any coats-of-arms:

daz sî iu gar von mir verseit.
that be to-you wholly by me refused.

496 Der geste ist komen her ze vil;
Of-the guests is come hither too many;

dâ von ichs nicht gestaten wil,
there from I-it not permit will,

daz iemen harnasch hie leg an.
that anyone harness here lay on.

dêswâr ich wære ein tumber man,
truly I were a foolish man,

wolde ich der tumpheit hie gestaten.
would I the foolishness here permit.

ez kœme uns lîhte ze grôzen unstaten;
it came to-us easily to great harm;

dâ von sîn iezuo niht geschiht.
there from of-it now nothing happens.

daz habet von mir für unzuht niht.»
that have from me for discourtesy not.»

Sus schiet er von dem potestât 497
Thus parted he from the podestà

und reit mit zorne in di stat,
and rode with anger into the town,

dâ er vil schœner vrowen vant.
where he very beautiful ladies found.

den allen klaget er alzehant:
to-them all lamented he forthwith:

er sprach: «ir schœnen vrowen guot,
he spoke: «you beautiful ladies good,

durch iwern reinen, süezen muot
for your pure, sweet spirit

lât iu daz allen sîn geklaget:
let to-you that all be lamented:

mir hât der potestât versaget,
me has the podestà refused,

Daz er uns niht lâze stechen hie. 498
That he us not let joust here.

daz geschach doch für wâr nie
that happened yet for true never

deheinem ritter hie ze Tervîs.
to-any knight here at Treviso.

er giht, er welle dehein wîs
he declares, he will in-no way

sîn uns hie niht gestaten:
of-it us here not permit:

er fürhtet, ez kom der stat ze unstaten.
he fears, it came to-the town to harm.

der leute ist komen her ze vil;
of-the people is come hither too many;

dar umb ers niht gestaten wil.»
there for he-it not permit will.»

499 Die vrowen sprâchen alzehant:
The ladies spoke forthwith:

«er sol des werden wol erwant.
«he shall of-it be well turned.

wir süln in biten komen her.
we shall him bid come hither.

wir wænen niht, daz er entwer
we think not, that he deny

uns vrowen, swes wir in gepiten.
us ladies, whatever we him command.

wir süln in biten mit süezen siten:
we shall him bid with sweet manners:

er verzîhet nimmer gar
he refuses never wholly

sô mange vrowen wol gevar.»
so many ladies well colored.»

500 Ein ritter kom nâch im geriten
A knight came after him ridden

vil snelleclîch mit höfschen siten.
very swiftly with courtly manners.

sâ in der zît dô kom ouch ich.
at-once in the time then came also I.

man sach vil ritterlîchen mich
one saw very knightly me

mit schalle zogen durch di stat.
with clamor draw through the town.

vil müeziclîch ich rîten bat:
very leisurely I ride bade:

ich zogte in hôhem muote dar.
I drew in high spirit thither.

mich gruozt manic vrowe wol gevar.
me greeted many-a lady well colored.

Des wart gehôhet mîn gedanc. 501
Therefore was heightened my thought.

umb mich dêswâr was grôz gedranc.
around me truly was great throng.

dô kom ich in die herberge mîn,
then came I into the lodging mine,

dâ ich des nahtes solde sîn.
where I of-the night should be.

indes kom der potestât
meanwhile came the podestà

hin zuo den vrowen, als man bat.
thither to the ladies, as one bade.

dâ gruozt in sâ an der stunt
there greeted him at-once at the hour

vil manic rôsenvarber munt.
very many-a rose-colored mouth.

Des neic er in wol zühteclîch. 502
For-it bowed he them well courteously.

die vrowen schœne minneclîch
the ladies beautiful lovely

sprâchen: «ir sült uns gewern,
spoke: «you shall us grant,

des wir gemeine gar an iuch gern.
what we in-common wholly of you desire.

ir sült die küneginne ir spil
you shall the queen her game

hie lâzen haben reht, swie si wil,
here let have right, however she wills,

daz wir ir ritterschaft hie sehen.
that we her chivalry here see.

daz sült ir lân durch uns geschehen.»
that shall you let for us happen.»

503 Er sprach: «ungern ich iuch entwer.
He spoke: «unwillingly I you deny.

ich wil dem grâven hie zwei sper
I will to-the count here two spears

erlauben wan durch iwer bet.»
permit but for your request.»

dâ trat hin für sâ an der stet
there stepped thither forth at-once on the spot

von Eppenstein her Liutfrit:
of Eppenstein sir Liutfrid:

er bat mit zühteclîchem sit,
he bade with courteous manner,

daz man ein sper erloubet im dâ.
that one a spear permitted him there.

die vrowen sprâchen: «herre, jâ.»
the ladies spoke: «lord, yes.»

504 «Des wil ich iuch verzîhen niht.
«That will I you refuse not.

für namens sîn niht mêr geschiht.»
for truly of-it nothing more happens.»

der grâve schiet mit vreuden dan:
the count parted with joys thence:

zehant er wâppen sich began.
forthwith he arm himself began.

gezimirt wart er ritterlîch:
crested was he knightly:

sîn wâppencleit was kosterîch.
his coat-of-arms was costly.

ich sag iu, als ich beste kan,
I tell you, as I best can,

wie dâ gezimirt wart der man:
how there crested was the man:

Sîn helm gar lieht von golde was 505
His helmet wholly bright of gold was

und herte alsam ein adamas.
and hard like an adamant.

dar umbe von vedern was ein kranz.
there around of feathers was a garland.

der kranz gemachet was vil ganz:
the garland made was very whole:

die vedern wârn geslizen abe;
the feathers were split off;

dar an gehangen rîchiu habe:
there on hung rich goods:

von silber bleter harte vil.
of silver leaves very many.

gebunden was an ieslîch kil
bound was on each quill

Von pfâbesvedern ein koste guot. 506
Of peacock-feathers a cost good.

sus fuort den helm der hôchgemuot,
thus wore the helmet the high-spirited-one,

den hôher koste nie bevilt.
whom high cost never vexed.

ich sagiu, wie er fuort den schilt.
I tell-you, how he wore the shield.

gehalbirt nâch dem swerte zetal.
halved after the sword downward.

daz ober teil daz was gemâl
the upper part that was painted

reht als ein lieht saphîre plâ:
right as a bright sapphire blue:

dar ûf sô was geslagen dâ
there upon so was struck there

507 Von golde ein leu gekrœnet wol:
Of gold a lion crowned well:

des krône was edeler steine vol.
whose crown was of-noble stones full.

daz nider teil gab sölhen schîn:
the lower part gave such shine:

von kelen rôt, wîz von hermelîn,
of gules red, white of ermine,

ze aht stucken meisterlîch gesniten.
in eight pieces masterfully cut.

der meister het ouch niht vermiten,
the master had also not omitted,

er het mit porten hie unde dâ
he had with braids here and there

wol ûz genomen rôt, wîz, golt, plâ.
well out taken red, white, gold, blue.

508 Sîn wâpenroc, sîn decke was
His surcoat, his horse-cloth was

von samît grüen alsam ein gras,
of samite green like a grass,

gehowen ûf einander wol.
hewn upon one-another well.

diu beide wâren schilde vol
they both were of-shields full

gestreut, als er den schilt dô truoc.
strewn, as he the shield then bore.

sîniu sper ouch grôz genuoc
his spears also great enough

wârn und grüen alsam ein clê.
were and green like a clover.

dem biderben was nâch êren wê.
to-the worthy-one was after honors woe.

Ein gürtel und ein heftelîn 509
A girdle and a little-brooch

er fuort: diu gâben liehten schîn.
he wore: they gave bright shine.

sîn halsperc und sîn hosen guot
his hauberk and his hose good

die lûhten reht als ysen tuot,
they shone right as iron does,

daz wol ze vlîze ist geworht.
which well with diligence is worked.

der hôchgemuot im kleine vorht.
the high-spirited-one to-himself little feared.

er fuort zwêne sporn nâch golde var.
he wore two spurs after gold colored.

sus was bereitet der schanden bar.
thus was readied the of-disgraces bare-one.

XXI · TREVISO

At Treviso Ulrich jousts on a bridge with Count Meinhard, and Liutfrid of Eppenstein spears his horse. Next morning Venus, in a white samite cape and veiled, goes to Mass among the ladies. When he offers the pax to a countess, she bids him lift the veil, and she kisses him. At the Piave he jousts with Reinprecht of Mureck, who rides in a silk shift, and with Italian knights.

Ez saz der milte, hôchgemuot 510
There sat the generous, high-spirited-one

ûf ein ros snel unde guot:
on a horse swift and good:

daz fuor in sprungen durch die stat.
that went in leaps through the town.

bî im man sêre wîchen bat.
by him one sorely give-way bade.

si ruoften alle: «wîchâ, wîch!»
they called all: «give-way, give-way!»

sus kom der vreche, muotes rîch
thus came the bold-one, of-spirit rich

vil ritterlîchen her gevarn.
very knightly hither gone.

die vrowen in bâten got bewarn.
the ladies him bade God keep.

511 Nu was ouch ich vil wol bereit
Now was also I very well ready

in mîniu wîzen wâpencleit.
in my white coats-of-arms.

gekrœnet was der helm mîn:
crowned was the helmet mine:

diu krône gap vil liehten schîn.
the crown gave very bright shine.

die zöpfe mîn die wâren lanc:
the braids mine they were long:

ir lenge unz ûf den satel swanc.
their length until onto the saddle swung.

ein netze von berlîn was ir dach,
a net of little-pearls was their roof,

dar durch man sî doch plecken sach.
there through one them yet glint saw.

512 Ich fuort ein röckel, daz was wîz,
I wore a little-skirt, that was white,

dar an mit valden grôzer vlîz
there on with pleats great diligence

von vrowen henden was geleit.
by ladies' hands was laid.

mîn gürtel drîer vinger breit
my girdle three fingers wide

was mit golde wol beslagen:
was with gold well studded:

der muost den liuten wol behagen.
it must to-the people well please.

von golde ein kostlîch heftelîn
of gold a costly little-brooch

fuort ich vor an dem buosem mîn.
wore I before on the bosom mine.

Ich reit ein ros starc, snel genuoc, 513
I rode a horse strong, swift enough,

daz mich gewalticlîchen truoc.
which me mightily carried.

daz was verdaht wîz von samît:
that was covered white with samite:

diu decke was lanc unde wît,
the covering was long and wide,

gesniten meisterlîche gar.
cut masterfully wholly.

mîn schilt was wîz nâch silber var,
my shield was white after silver colored,

mîn sper was wîz, der harnisch mîn
my spear was white, the harness mine

kunde ouch liehter niht gesîn.
could also brighter not be.

514 Sus kom ich durch die stat geriten
Thus came I through the town ridden

in vrowen kleit nâch riters siten.
in lady's clothes after knight's custom.

in allen den gazzen was gedranc.
in all the lanes was throng.

mîn ros vil kleiner sprünge spranc.
my horse very small leaps leapt.

von Tervîs der potestât
of Treviso the podestà

mit vlîze gebôt, mit zühten bat,
with diligence commanded, with courtesies bade,

daz man uns dâ rûmte einen rinc:
that one us there cleared a ring:

daz was gar ein verloren dinc.
that was wholly a lost thing.

515 Für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil:
For true I you that tell will:

der leute was komen dar sô vil,
of-the people was come thither so many,

daz man uns dô dehein wîs
that one us then in-no way

in al der stat dâ ze Tervîs
in all the town there at Treviso

niht mohte gemachen einen rûm.
not might make a room.

wir kômen zuo einander kûm.
we came to one-another barely.

ûf einer brucke daz geschach,
on a bridge that happened,

daz ich den hôchgemuoten sach.
that I the high-spirited-one saw.

Diu brucke dâ über ein wazzer gie, 516
The bridge there over a water went,

dar abe die leute dort unde hie
there off the people there and here

der potestât al gemeine treip,
the podestà all in-common drove,

daz ir vil lützel dâ beleip.
that of-them very few there remained.

dar ûffe muost wir justirens pflegen.
there upon must we of-jousting take-care.

mit manger schœnen vrowen segen
with many-a beautiful lady's blessing

wurd wir gesegent an der stunt:
were we blessed at the hour:

daz tet manc rôsenrôter munt.
that did many-a rose-red mouth.

Dô ich in sach sô schône komen, 517
When I him saw so beautifully come,

mîn orsse mit sporn wart genomen:
my horse with spurs was taken:

als tet ouch er daz sîne sâ.
as did also he the his at-once.

wir kômen gegen einander dâ,
we came toward one-another there,

reht als wir zesamen vlugen.
right as we together flew.

unser ougen uns niht trugen:
our eyes us not deceived:

unser beider tyost geriet,
our both joust succeeded,

reht dâ sich schilt und helm schiet.
right where itself shield and helmet parted.

518 Von den speren wart dâ krach:
From the spears was there crash:

diu drumzun man ûf vliegen sach.
the splinters one up fly saw.

die schilt einander ruorten dâ.
the shields one-another touched there.

bald andriu sper gab man uns sâ:
quickly other spears gave one us at-once:

dâ mit wart ritterlîch geriten
there with was knightly ridden

und vælen beidenthalp vermiten.
and missing on-both-sides avoided.

ich und der grâve muotes rîch
I and the count of-spirit rich

verstâchen sehs sper ritterlîch.
used-up six spears knightly.

519 Der tugentrîche grâve bant
The virtue-rich count bound

den helm dô abe. ich ... sant
the helmet then off. I (lacuna) sent

im ein guldîn vingerlîn:
him a golden finger-ring:

daz solt er geben der vrowen sîn,
that should he give the lady his,

diu im was liep für elliu wîp.
who to-him was dear before all women.

dâ bî solt ir vil werder lîp
there by should her very worthy person

erkennen sînen stæten muot.
know his steadfast spirit.

daz vingerlîn was dâ zuo guot.
the finger-ring was there to good.

Von Eppenstein her Leutfrit 520
Of Eppenstein sir Liutfrid

gein mir dô kom nâch riters sit,
toward me then came after knight's custom,

gezimirt dêswâr ritterlîch.
crested truly knightly.

der starke man was guotes rîch
the strong man was of-goods rich

und bî der Muore wol bekant.
and by the Mur well known.

er fuort ein sper in sîner hant:
he carried a spear in his hand:

daz was grôz, geverbet rôt,
that was great, colored red,

als im sîn hôher muot gebôt.
as him his high spirit commanded.

Ich gedâht: «ditz ist ein starke man, 521
I thought: «this is a strong man,

und der sîn ritterschaft wol kan.»
and who his chivalry well knows.»

dô machet ich den buneiz lanc.
then made I the charge long.

sîn sper im alze nider sanc:
his spear to-him all-too low sank:

mîn ros er durch den hals dô stach.
my horse he through the neck then thrust.

mîn sper ûf sîner prüst ich brach.
my spear on his breast I broke.

mîn ros spranc hôch in ungehabe:
my horse sprang high in ill-bearing:

dâ muost ich palde sitzen abe.
there must I quickly sit off.

522 Nu was ouch nuo der tac zergân:
Now was also now the day perished:

diu ritterschaft muost ende hân.
the chivalry must end have.

in mîne herberge fuor ich.
into my lodging went I.

die ritter heten alle mich
the knights had all me

dêswâr vil gern dô gesehen:
truly very gladly then seen:

des enmoht dâ niht geschehen,
that might there not happen,

wan ich mich ûf der vart nie
for I me on the journey never

deheinen man gesehen lie.
any man see let.

523 Ez wart von mir ûf al der vart
It was by me on all the journey

mit guotem willen wol bewart,
with good will well kept,

daz iemen mohte erkennen mich.
that anyone might recognize me.

des huote vil vlîziclîchen ich.
of-that guarded very diligently I.

ich wolt sô komen durch diu lant,
I would so come through the lands,

daz iemen würde dâ bekant,
that anyone became there known,

von wanne ich wære oder wer:
from where I were or who:

daz was gar mînes herzen ger.
that was wholly my heart's desire.

Des andern morgens, dô der tac 524
Of-the second morning, when the day

vil lieht erschein (dannoch ich lac
very brightly appeared (still I lay

an mînem bette, wizzet daz),
on my bed, know that),

zwei hundert vrowen oder baz
two hundred ladies or more

für mîn herberge wârn komen
before my lodging were come

und heten gerne daz vernomen,
and had gladly that heard,

wenne ich ze kirchen wolde gân.
when I to church would go.

manic man ouch vrâgen des began.
many-a man also ask of-it began.

Ein mîn kneht die vrowen sach: 525
A my servant the ladies saw:

zuo mir mit zühten er dô sprach:
to me with courtesies he then spoke:

«wol ûf, vil liebiu vrowe mîn:
«well up, very dear lady mine:

ich mein iuch, edeliu künegîn!
I mean you, noble queen!

ich enweiz, ob ir ez habt vernomen:
I not-know, whether you it have heard:

die vrowen die sint alle komen
the ladies they are all come

ûz der stat zuo iu dâ her.
out-of the town to you there hither.

ir liget ze lange», sô sprach er.
you lie too long», so spoke he.

526 Dô von mir rehte wart vernomen
When by me rightly was heard

zuo mir sô maniger vrowen komen,
to me so many ladies come,

dô legt ich sâ an mînen lîp
then laid I at-once on my body

kleider, die ein werdez wîp
clothes, which a worthy woman

wol mit êren het getragen.
well with honors had worn.

waz daz wære, lât michz iu sagen:
what that were, let me-it you tell:

ich legt an ein hemde blanc,
I laid on a shift white,

kleine, ze rehter mâze lanc.
fine, to right measure long.

527 Dâ muosten an zwên ermel sîn:
There must on two sleeves be:

daz nim ich ûf die triwe mîn,
that take I on the faithfulness mine,

daz ich nie bezer hân gesehen:
that I never better have seen:

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen.
of-it must I from the truth declare.

dar nâch leit ich ein röckel an:
there after laid I a little-skirt on:

daz was cleine, wîz als ein swan,
that was fine, white as a swan,

daz vrowe bezzerz nie getruoc.
that lady better-one never wore.

daz muoste sîn doch guot genuoc.
that must be yet good enough.

Von einem wîzen samît an 528
Of a white samite on

ich leit ein cappen, daz nie man
I laid a cape, that never man

samît gesach sô kosterîch;
samite saw so costly;

dar in von golde wunneclîch
there in of gold delightfully

was geworht manic schœne tier.
was worked many-a beautiful beast.

ir sült für wâr gelauben mir:
you shall for true believe me:

diu kappe was meisterlîch gesniten,
the cape was masterfully cut,

den vollen lanc, nâch vrowen siten.
the full long, after ladies' customs.

Diu hûbe mîn ouch muoste sîn 529
The cap mine also must be

vil guot, dar an die zöpfe mîn
very good, there on the braids mine

gemachet dêswar wâren wol.
made truly were well.

von reht ich iu noch sagen sol
by right I you yet tell shall

ein teil von mînen zöpfen mê.
a part of my braids more.

mit perlîn wîz alsam ein snê
with little-pearls white like a snow

hiez ich sî bewinden sâ
bade I them wind at-once

vil minneclîchen hie unde dâ.
very lovingly here and there.

530 Mit einer rîsen (diu was guot)
With a veil (which was good)

verbant ich mich: ez was mîn muot
bound I me: it was my spirit

daz an mir iemen solde sehen
that on me anyone should see

iht anders wan der ougen breben.
anything else except the eyes' flashing.

sus wart gekleidet mir der lîp
thus was clothed to-me the body

in vrowen kleit. reht als ein wîp
in lady's clothes. right as a woman

ich satzt ûf einen phâbenhuot:
I set on a peacock-hat:

der was von hôher koste guot.
which was of high cost good.

531 Zwêne hantschuohe an den henden mîn
Two gloves on the hands mine

ich truoc: die muosten ouch guot sîn.
I wore: they must also good be.

vil hôhes muotes ich dô gie,
very of-high spirit I then went,

dâ mich manic rôter munt enpfie.
where me many-a red mouth received.

ir gruoz was gegen mir alsus:
their greeting was toward me thus:

«got wilkomen, küneginne Vênus!»
«God welcome, queen Venus!»

sus gruozten mich die vrowen gar:
thus greeted me the ladies wholly:

ir was vil mangiu drunder clâr.
of-them was very many-a there-under bright.

Dô ich der vrowen gruoz enpfie, 532
When I the ladies' greeting received,

von Gorze der grâve daz niht lie,
of Gorizia the count that not omitted,

er hüebe dâ ein buhurt sâ.
he raised there a buhurt at-once.

ez wart wol ritterlîche dâ
it was well knightly there

vor uns vrowen dâ geriten
before us ladies there ridden

mit kunst nâch ritterlîchen siten.
with skill after knightly customs.

der buhurt vaste gie entwer,
the buhurt fast went across,

sus unde sô, hin unde her.
thus and so, thither and hither.

Ir sült für wâr gelauben daz: 533
You shall for true believe that:

fünf hundert ritter oder baz
five hundred knights or more

dâ ûf den buhurt wâren komen.
there onto the buhurt were come.

dâ wart von schilden stôz vernomen
there was from shields thrust heard

und von scheften krachâ crach.
and from shafts crack-ho crack.

die ritter man unmüezic sach:
the knights one busy saw:

durch diu vil reinen süezen wîp
for the very pure sweet women

dô manger urbart wol den lîp.
then many-a-one stripped well the body.

534 Dô bat ich sâ den buhurt lân:
Then bade I at-once the buhurt leave:

daz wart vil schier durch mich getân.
that was very soon for me done.

sâ ich dô ze kirchen gie.
at-once I then to church went.

ein grævinne mir die capen vie:
a countess me the cape caught:

mit ir vil linder wîzer hant
with her very soft white hand

habet sî mir vor ûf mîn gewant.
held she me before on my garment.

sus wîste sî ze kirchen mich:
thus led she to church me:

in hôhem muot den dienst nam ich.
in high spirit the service took I.

535 Ê ich ze kirchen was bekomen,
Before I to church was come,

mîn kamerære het genomen
my chamberlain had taken

einen tebich wunneclîch
a carpet delightful

und einen bolster kosterîch:
and a cushion costly:

ob einem gevalden stuol daz lac;
over a folded stool that lay;

dar über ich mich ze neigen pflac.
there over I me to bow was-wont.

ich bat got mîner êren pflegen
I bade God of-my honors take-care

durch sîne güete ûf mînen wegen.
for his goodness on my ways.

Ein pfaffe ein schœne messe sanc. 536
A priest a beautiful mass sang.

umb mich von vrowen was gedranc:
around me from ladies was throng:

dô ich ze dem opfer wolde gân,
when I to the offering would go,

die leute pat man ûf hôher stân.
the people bade one up higher stand.

mîn opfer ich sô blîde an vie:
my offering I so gladly on began:

dô ich her von dem opfer gie,
when I hither from the offering went,

daz man daz pæze sâ dar truoc,
that one the pax at-once thither carried,

gelachet wart des dâ genuoc.
laughed was of-it there enough.

Daz pæce ab einem buoch ich nam, 537
The pax from a book I took,

verbunden gar; daz doch niht zam.
bound wholly; which yet not befitted.

der grævinne bôt ichz dâ.
to-the countess offered I-it there.

diu hôch geborne diu sprach sâ:
the high born-one she spoke at-once:

«ir sult di rîsen fürder nemen:
«you shall the veil away take:

sô mac daz pæce mir gezemen.»
so may the pax me befit.»

zehant dô sî daz wort gesprach,
forthwith when she the word spoke,

die rîsen ich von dem munde prach.
the veil I from the mouth broke.

538 Diu schœne lachen des began:
The beautiful-one laugh of-it began:

si sprach: «wie nû? ir sît ein man:
she spoke: «how now? you are a man:

daz hân ich kürzlîch wol gesehen.
that have I just-now well seen.

waz danne? der kus sol doch geschehen.
what then? the kiss shall yet happen.

ich wil durch elliu guoten wîp
I will for all good women

iuch küssen, sît daz iwer lîp
you kiss, since that your person

hât vrowen cleit an sich geleit:
has lady's clothes on itself laid:

des sol mîn kus iu sîn bereit.»
therefore shall my kiss to-you be ready.»

539 Dô sî daz pæze von mir enpfie,
When she the pax from me received,

und daz der süeze kus ergie,
and that the sweet kiss befell,

dâ von wart ich vil hôchgemuot;
there from became I very high-spirited;

wan vrowenküssen sanfte tuot.
for lady's-kissing gently does.

daz ist für wâr den allen kunt,
that is for true to-those all known,

die ie gekusten vrowen munt,
who ever kissed lady's mouth,

daz nie niht alsô süezes wart
that never anything so sweet was

sô vrowenkus von hôher art.
as lady's-kiss of high kind.

Ein hôch geboren reine wîp, 540
A high born pure woman,

diu rôten munt hât, schœnen lîp,
who red mouth has, beautiful person,

swâ diu küsset einen man,
wherever she kisses a man,

der vrowenkus erkennen kan,
who lady's-kiss know can,

der ist des immer mêre vrô.
he is of-it ever more glad.

umb vrowenküssen stât ez sô,
about lady's-kissing stands it so,

daz ez tuot noch baz denne wol
that it does yet better than well

und machet ein herze freuden vol.
and makes a heart of-joys full.

Nu was diu messe gesungen gar. 541
Now was the mass sung wholly.

ich und manic vrowe wol gevar
I and many-a lady well colored

giengen von der kirchen sâ.
went from the church at-once.

vil grôz gedranc hie unde dâ
very great throng here and there

was in den gazzen über al.
was in the lanes over all.

von busûnen grôzen schal
of trumpets great clamor

hôrt man vor uns vrowen dô.
heard one before us ladies then.

man was uns an ze sehen vrô.
one was us at to look glad.

542 Für mîne herberge ich dô quam,
Before my lodging I then came,

dâ ich urloup vil schône nam
where I leave very beautifully took

von maniger vrowen minneclîch.
from many-a lady lovely.

ich schiet von in vil muotes rîch.
I parted from them very of-spirit rich.

si pâten mîn got alle pflegen:
they bade of-me God all take-care:

ûz reinem herzen gie ir segen.
out-of pure heart went their blessing.

glücke ich sît dâ von gewan:
luck I since there from won:

got vrowen niht verzîhen kan.
God ladies not refuse can.

543 Den potestât dâ von der stat
The podestà there of the town

manic hôchgemuoter ritter bat,
many-a high-spirited knight bade,

daz er mich lieze dâ stechen mêr.
that he me let there joust more.

«ich tuon sîn niht», alsô sprach er.
«I do of-it not», so spoke he.

«swer mit ir mêr tyostiren wil,
«whoever with her more joust will,

es sî lützel oder vil,
it be little or much,

der zog mit ir unz an den Plât.
he draw with her until to the Piave.

daz erloub ich», sprach der potestât.
that permit I», spoke the podestà.

Alzehant ich dô enbeiz; 544
Forthwith I then breakfasted;

dar nâch ich mich mit willen vleiz,
there after I me with will strove,

daz ich rite schône durch die stat.
that I rode beautifully through the town.

die mîne ich des alle bat.
the mine I of-it all bade.

ich het an schœne vrowenkleit.
I had on beautiful lady's-clothes.

in hôhem muote ich dô ûz reit;
in high spirit I then out rode;

dô zoget ich vil schône dan:
then drew I very beautifully thence:

mit mir reit dan manic werder man.
with me rode thence many-a worthy man.

Ich zogte mit vreuden an den Plât. 545
I drew with joys to the Piave.

an einer harte schœnen stat
at a very beautiful place

sach ich halten einen man,
saw I halt a man,

den ich vil wol genennen kan:
whom I very well name can:

er hiez von Mûrekke her Reinpreht.
he was-called of Mureck sir Reinprecht.

er was genæmen wîben reht:
he was to-pleasing women right:

den allen er ze dienen pflac;
to-them all he to serve was-wont;

dâ von er selten eine lac.
there from he seldom alone lay.

546 Sus was gemuot der rîche man.
Thus was spirited the rich man.

er fuort von guoten sîden an
he wore of good silk on

ein hemde wîz alsam ein snê.
a shift white like a snow.

niht anders harnasches fuort er mê
not other harness wore he more

wan einen helm, schilt unde sper.
except a helmet, shield and spear.

sus kom er gestapfet her.
thus came he trotting hither.

sîn orsse sach man verdecket sîn
his horse saw one covered be

mit samît und mit paltekîn.
with samite and with brocade.

547 Alzehant bereit ich mich:
Forthwith readied I me:

die wîle muost er enhalten sich.
the while must he halt himself.

ich wart vil kürzlîch wol bereit
I became very shortly well ready

in mîniu wîzen wâpencleit.
in my white coats-of-arms.

den helm mîn ich dô ûf bant,
the helmet mine I then up bound,

ich nam ein sper in mîne hant:
I took a spear into my hand:

daz was wîz, ze mâzen grôz.
that was white, in measure great.

ich was gar ungemüetes plôz.
I was wholly of-ill-humor bare.

Er kom geleisiret her. 548
He came couched hither.

ez was von golde lieht sîn sper:
it was of gold bright his spear:

daz sluog er under den arm sîn.
that struck he under the arm his.

dô satzt ich ûf mîn diech daz mîn.
then set I on my thigh the mine.

sîn sper er durch den schilt mîn stach,
his spear he through the shield mine thrust,

daz ez diu tyost vil cleine brach:
that it the joust very small broke:

daz mîne wart dâ geneiget nie.
the mine was there lowered never.

diu tyost sus beidenthalp ergie.
the joust thus on-both-sides befell.

Diu tyost was ritterlîch ergân. 549
The joust was knightly befallen.

dô gab ich dem vil rîchen man
then gave I to-the very rich man

ein vingerlîn, daz was golt:
a finger-ring, that was gold:

daz het er ritterlîch geholt;
that had he knightly fetched;

des man in hôhe danken sach.
for-which one him highly thank saw.

her Herman von Plintenpach
sir Hermann of Plintenbach

dô mich bestuont, und Walhe drî:
then me engaged, and Italians three:

den was ouch hôchgemüete bî.
to-them was also high-spirit by.

After more jousts at the Piave, Venus lodges at Sacile, and next day before a forest he jousts with the count of Gorizia and his company, then with Otto of Spengenberg. At Gemona a maiden brings him Sir Matthew's spear, and the two joust; that evening a noble lady has a little skirt holding gifts hidden among his washing. After a second joust with Matthew, Ulrich jousts at Chiusa with Heinrich of Lienz and reaches the Thörl, where the duke of Carinthia razes Goldberg that night and next morning waits on a meadow with a hundred knights.

550 Von den wart ritterlîch geriten
By them was knightly ridden

und vælen endeclîch vermiten.
and missing finally avoided.

der iegelîchem gab ich dô
of-them to-each gave I then

ein vingerlîn: ir muot stuont hô.
a finger-ring: their spirit stood high.

vier sper ich selbe dâ verstach.
four spears I self there used-up.

alzehant dô daz geschach,
forthwith when that happened,

dô zogt ich schône hinze Schetzîn,
then drew I beautifully toward Sacile,

dâ ich des nahtes wolde sîn.
where I of-the night would be.

551 Dâ wart ich enpfangen wol.
There was I received well.

die line dâ wâren vrowen vol,
the windows there were of-ladies full,

die alle wol enpfiengen mich;
who all well received me;

dâ von vil hôch gemuot wart ich.
there from very high spirited became I.

di naht ich dâ gemaches pflac.
the night I there of-ease took-care.

sâ dô mir kom der ander tac,
at-once when to-me came the second day,

vil wol ich dô gewâpent wart
very well I then armed was

und huob mich aber ûf mîne vart.
and raised me again on my journey.

Vor einem vôreis wunneclîch 552
Before a forest delightful

het mir der grâve tugendrîch
had me the count virtue-rich

von Gorz gewartet, und manic man,
of Gorizia awaited, and many-a man,

der ich niht gar genennen kan.
whom I not wholly name can.

zwelf ich ir under helme sach.
twelve I of-them under helmet saw.

zuo den mînen ich dô sprach:
to the mine I then spoke:

«ich sihe hie ritter tyoste gern:
«I see here knights joust desirous:

der sül wir schône sî gewern.»
of-it shall we beautifully them grant.»

553 Ûf mîn ros ich palde saz,
Upon my horse I quickly sat,

des schildes ich dâ niht vergaz,
of-the shield I there not forgot,

den helm mîn ich sâ ûf bant,
the helmet mine I at-once up bound,

ich nam ein sper in mîne hant.
I took a spear into my hand.

si gâhten vaste gegen mir her.
they hastened fast toward me hither.

der grâve ein wol geverbetez sper
the count a well colored spear

verstach mir ûf den helm mîn:
used-up on-me on the helmet mine:

daz mîn brast an dem halse sîn.
so-that mine broke on the neck his.

554 Ûf mir dâ wurden siben sper
On me there were seven spears

verstochen wol nâch ritters ger
used-up well after knight's desire

und dêswâr wol ritterlîch.
and truly well knightly.

man sach mich dâ vil muotes rîch:
one saw me there very of-spirit rich:

einlef sper mit mîner hant
eleven spears with my hand

dâ wurden ritterlîch verswant.
there were knightly used-up.

fünf riter dâ vermisten mîn:
five knights there missed me:

den gab ouch ich niht vingerlîn.
to-them gave also I not finger-ring.

Den helm mîn ich dô abe bant. 555
The helmet mine I then off bound.

dô huob sich ûf dem velde zehant
then raised itself on the field forthwith

vil manic tyost hie unde dâ.
very many-a joust here and there.

der grâve von Gorze der stach sâ
the count of Gorizia he thrust at-once

einem ritter abe den helm sîn:
to-a knight off the helmet his:

diu tyost kund schœner niht gesîn,
the joust could more-beautiful not be,

wan er vil kûme dâ gesaz.
for he very barely there sat.

von rehter wârheit wizzet daz.
by right truth know that.

Wol hundert ritter oder mê 556
Well hundred knights or more

dâ tâten an einander wê
there did on one-another woe

mit ritterlîcher arebeit.
with knightly labor.

durch wîp und durch ir werdecheit
for women and for their worthiness

tet ez dâ manger alsô wol,
did it there many-a-one so well,

alsô man vrowen dienen sol.
as one ladies serve shall.

der tet ez sus, der tet ez sô,
this-one did it thus, that-one did it so,

der wart trûric, der wart vrô.
this-one became sad, that-one became glad.

557 Dô muost ouch ich nu zogen dan:
Then must also I now draw thence:

di ritterschaft sach man sich zerlân.
the chivalry saw one itself dissolve.

si zogten mit mir ritterlîch
they drew with me knightly

des tages reht unz hinz sant Uolrîch:
of-the day right until toward Saint Ulrich:

dâ wolt ich haben gemach di naht.
there would I have ease the night.

des andern tages, dô mit maht
of-the second day, when with might

des tages schîn di naht vertreip,
the day's shine the night drove-off,

niht langer ich aldâ beleip.
not longer I there remained.

558 Ich wâpent snelleclîchen mich,
I armed swiftly me,

dar nâch vil schire sô zogt ich
there after very soon so drew I

ûf daz velt mit wîzen spern:
onto the field with white spears:

ich wolde sî tyostirens wern,
I would them of-jousting grant,

die dar durch vrowen wâren komen.
who thither for ladies were come.

von einem het ich dâ vernomen,
of one had I there heard,

der het dar vrowenklênât prâht:
who had thither lady's-jewels brought:

dem was tyostirens wol gedâht
to-him was of-jousting well thought

Von Spengenberc her Otte er hiez. 559
Of Spengenberg sir Otto he was-called.

der hôchgemuot daz niht enliez,
the high-spirited-one that not omitted,

er zoget nâch mir gezimirt wol,
he drew after me crested well,

reht als ein vrowenritter sol.
right as a lady's-knight shall.

sîn zimir gap vil liehten schîn:
his crest gave very bright shine:

ein rîsen umbe den helm sîn
a veil around the helmet his

er dâ fuorte, diu was guot.
he there wore, which was good.

sus zoget nâch mir der hôchgemuot.
thus drew after me the high-spirited-one.

Uns was zesamen beiden ger. 560
To-us was together both desire.

wir fuorten zwei vil starkiu sper:
we carried two very strong spears:

dô machte wir den buneiz lanc.
then made we the charge long.

ze vellen mich was sîn gedanc:
to fell me was his thought:

ich dâht ouch: «ich sol disen man
I thought also: «I shall this man

sô treffen, ob er sitzen kan,
so hit, whether he sit can,

daz ers bedarf wol endelîch,
that he-it needs well truly,

wil er niht werden schanden rîch.»
(if)-will he not become of-disgraces rich.»

561 Gein mir vil vaste sô treip er:
Toward me very fast so drove he:

von sprungen gesenket wart sîn sper.
from leaps lowered was his spear.

mîn orsse ein teil ich warf von im
my horse a part I turned from him

(den man ze vellen was mîn sin),
(the man to fell was my mind),

vil balde ich wider ûf in treip:
very quickly I back on him drove:

an sînem halse mîn tyost beleip;
on his neck my joust remained;

dâ von der hôch gemuote man
there from the high spirited man

vil nâch ein vallen het getân.
very nearly a falling had done.

562 Ir sült gelauben mir, daz er
You shall believe me, that he

ûf mir verstach ein grôzez sper.
on me used-up a great spear.

von unser beider speres krach
from our both spears' crash

die drumzun man ûf vliegen sach.
the splinters one up fly saw.

im entwischte zoum und stegereif:
him escaped bridle and stirrup:

den satelbogen er begreif;
the saddle-bow he seized;

dâ bî er sich berihte wider:
there by he himself righted back:

er wære gevallen anders nider.
he were fallen otherwise down.

Mit im selbe sehsten ich dâ stach, 563
With him self sixth I there thrust,

daz nie dehein vælen dâ geschach.
that never any missing there happened.

den gab ich allen vingerlîn
to-them gave I all finger-rings

und bant abe sâ den helm mîn.
and bound off at-once the helmet mine.

zehant gein Clemûn sô zogt ich.
forthwith toward Gemona so drew I.

dâ het ein ritter schône sich
there had a knight beautifully himself

gein mir geleit her an daz velt
toward me laid hither on the field

in ein vil wunneclîch gezelt.
in a very delightful tent.

Her Mathie er was genant. 564
Sir Matthew he was named.

ûf êre het er den muot gewant:
on honor had he the spirit turned:

er was dêswâr vil tugende rîch.
he was truly very of-virtue rich.

er het ein maget minneclîch
he had a maiden lovely

gein mir gesant: diu fuort dart her
toward me sent: who carried there hither

in ir hant gegen mir ein sper.
in her hand toward me a spear.

ein vil schœne pferd si reit
a very beautiful horse she rode

und was dêswâr wol gekleit.
and was truly well clad.

565 Dô mich diu reine, guote sach,
When me the pure, good-one saw,

diu schœne ûz rôtem munde sprach:
the beautiful-one out-of red mouth spoke:

«got wilkomen, küneginne Vênus!
«God welcome, queen Venus!

iu hat her Mathie bî mir sus
to-you has sir Matthew by me thus

enboten, daz ir, vrowe, sît
announced, that you, lady, are

im willekomen âne strît.
to-him welcome without strife.

von hertzen er iuch gerne siht:
from heart he you gladly sees:

des liuge ich iu von im niht.
in-that lie I you of him not.

566 Er hât gesant iu bî mir her,
He has sent you by me hither,

vil liebiu vrowe, ditze sper.
very dear lady, this spear.

gein iu sîn bote ich, vrowe, des bin,
toward you his messenger I, lady, of-it am,

daz irz verstechen sült ûf in.
that you-it use-up shall on him.

des hiez er mich mit schœnen siten
of-it bade he me with beautiful manners

iuch vil zühteclîchen biten.
you very courteously ask.

nu nemt ez, liebiu vrowe mîn,
now take it, dear lady mine,

als liep iu alle vrowen sîn.»
as dear to-you all ladies be.»

Daz sper ich willeclîchen nam 567
The spear I willingly took

und dancte der botschaft, als daz zam,
and thanked for-the message, as that befitted,

und hiez der minneclîchen meit
and bade the lovely maid

sagen, ich wære sîn bereit
tell, I were of-it ready

allez willeclîchen ir,
all willingly her,

swaz sî gesaget hete mir.
whatever she told had me.

diu maget mir danken des began
the maiden me thank for-it began

und reit in hôhem muote dan.
and rode in high spirit thence.

Dô wâpent ich mich alzehant: 568
Then armed I me forthwith:

den helm ich ze houbet pant,
the helmet I to head bound,

ich nam den schilt und ouch ein sper.
I took the shield and also a spear.

dô kom ouch er gestapfet her.
then came also he trotting hither.

ûf einem anger daz geschach,
on a meadow that happened,

daz ich den êre gernden sach.
that I the honor desiring-one saw.

er was gezimirt als ein man,
he was crested as a man,

der vrowen gruoz verdienen kan.
who ladies' greeting earn can.

569 An sînem sper ein rîsen guot
On his spear a veil good
er fuort und was vil hôch gemuot,
he carried and was very high spirited,
und fuort ouch ûf dem helm sîn
and wore also on the helmet his
ein schapel: daz gap liehten schîn.
a chaplet: that gave bright shine.
von golde und ouch von perlîn lieht
of gold and also of little-pearls bright
was ez gemachet: ich liug iu niht.
was it made: I lie you not.
diu im daz kleined het gegeben,
she-who him the jewel had given,
er moht ze dienst ir gerne leben.
he might to service her gladly live.

570 Nu wâr ouch wir zesamen dâ
Now were also we together there
dêswâr komen alsô nâ,
truly come so near,
daz zîtlîch was der buneiz.
that timely was the charge.
unser ietweder sich dô vleiz,
our each himself then strove,
daz er kœm schône dar geriten,
that he came beautifully thither ridden,
und vælen würde dâ vermiten.
and missing were there avoided.
mit sporn wir zesamen triben:
with spurs we together drove:
diu sper ouch dâ niht ganz beliben.
the spears also there not whole remained.

Ein schœne tyost aldâ geschach. 571
A beautiful joust there happened.

den helm ich im von dem houbet stach:
the helmet I him from the head thrust:

diu rîse vor an dem spere sîn
the veil before on the spear his

beleip mir in dem schilde mîn.
remained to-me in the shield mine.

sîn tyost vil wîte luken bort
his joust very wide hole bored

oben, dâ des schildes ort
above, there the shield's point

mir dacte daz winster ahselpein.
me covered the left shoulder-bone.

sîn tyost dâ vollecl îchen schein.
his joust there fully shone.

Sîn helm im schir wart ûf gehaben. 572
His helmet him soon was up lifted.

ich sach gezimirt gegen mir haben
I saw crested toward me halt

dannoch sehs ritter und niht mêr:
still six knights and not more:

der ieslîcher fuort ein sper
of-whom each carried a spear

ze mâzen grôz in sîner hant.
in measure great in his hand.

di wurden von mir an gerant.
they were by me on charged.

ir deheines vermisset ich dâ:
of-them none missed I there:

ir trâffen mich wan viere sâ.
of-them hit me but four at-once.

573 Die zwên aldâ vermisten mîn:
The two there missed me:

die sach man dâ von trûric sîn.
them saw one there from sad be.

der wirt selbe fünfte dâ wol holt
the host self fifth there well fetched

diu vingerl mîn, der minne solt:
the finger-rings mine, the love's pay:

diu gab ich in ûz mîner hant.
they gave I them out-of my hand.

den helm mîn ich sâ abe bant:
the helmet mine I at-once off bound:

in mîn herberge ich dô reit,
into my lodging I then rode,

dô ich vant guot gemach bereit.
where I found good ease ready.

574 Dô ich des âbendes het gemach,
When I of-the evening had ease,

die ritter man dô komen sach
the knights one then come saw

mit einem buhurt wunneclîch.
with a buhurt delightful.

dâ wart geriten riterlîch
there was ridden knightly

vor der herberge mîn.
before the lodging mine.

der buhurt künde niht gesîn
the buhurt could not be

schœner, danne er was aldâ.
more-beautiful, than it was there.

dô saz ich in einem venster sâ
then sat I in a window at-once

Und sach der riter arebeit. 575
And saw the knights' labor.

ich het mich wunneclîch gecleit
I had me delightfully clad

alsô von reht ein künegîn.
as by right a queen.

ez sâhen gern diu ougen mîn
it saw gladly the eyes mine

der ritter ritterlîche tât.
the knights' knightly deed.

swelch ritter hôchgemüete hât,
whichever knight high-spirit has,

den sol man hôher minne wern,
him shall one high love grant,

ob er ir kan mit zühten gern.
if he her can with courtesies desire.

Des buhurts was ouch nû genuoc. 576
Of-the buhurt was also now enough.

ûz mîner herberge man dô truoc
out-of my lodging one then carried

den rittern guotes wînes vil.
to-the knights good wine much.

nâch arbeit manic man trinken wil.
after labor many-a man drink will.

ich hiez in schenken über al,
I bade them pour over all,

in kopfe, in napfe, in silberschal.
in cups, in bowls, in silver-dishes.

si alle man mir dâ nîgen sach;
them all one me there bow saw;

dâ mit si fuoren an ir gemach.
there with they went to their ease.

577 Dô het der kamerære mîn
Then had the chamberlain mine
ze wesche gegeben vier röckelîn.
to washing given four little-skirts.
ein edeliu vrowe des wart gewar:
a noble lady of-it became aware:
alzehant dô sande dar
forthwith then sent thither
ein röckel daz vil schœne wîp.
a little-skirt the very beautiful woman.
si gebôt der weschen an den lîp,
she commanded the washerwoman on the life,
daz siz pürge under diu röckel mîn.
that she-it hid under the little-skirts mine.
dâ was an ein guot heftelîn.
there was on a good little-brooch.

578 Ein brief, ein gürtel, ein tschapel
A letter, a girdle, a chaplet
was drin gewunden. tugend snel
was therein wound. virtue quick
was diu frowe, diu ez tet
was the lady, who it did
dêswâr vil gar âne mîne bet.
truly very wholly without my request.
mîn kamerære ez sô enpfie,
my chamberlain it so received,
daz er sîn wart dâ inne nie:
that he of-it became there aware never:
ez wart gar âne di wizen sîn
it was wholly without the knowledge his
verborgen in diu röckel mîn.
hidden in the little-skirts mine.

Seht, alsô fuort er ez von dan; 579
See, so carried he it from thence;

dâ von er zorn sît gewan.
there from he anger since won.

diu naht was hin, der tac was komen.
the night was gone, the day was come.

ein messe wart von mir vernomen
a mass was by me heard

verholn. dar nâch wart ich bereit
secretly. there after became I ready

vil wol in mîniu wâpencleit,
very well in my coats-of-arms,

sô wol, daz ich ê nie wart baz.
so well, that I before never was better.

ich wolte ôt aber fürbaz.
I would just again further.

Mîn busûnær die bliesen dô 580
My trumpeters they blew then

ein süeze wîse mit schalle hô:
a sweet tune with clamor high:

den rittern tet man dâ mit kunt,
to-the knights made one there with known,

daz ich bereit was an der stunt.
that I ready was at the hour.

zehant sich wâpen dô began
forthwith himself arm then began

vil manic hôch gemuoter man:
very many-a high spirited man:

in den gazzen hin unde her
in the lanes hither and thither

fuort man helm, schilt unde sper.
carried one helmet, shield and spear.

581 Dô zoget ich sâ ûf daz velt.
Then drew I at-once onto the field.

her Mathie het sîn gezelt
sir Matthew had his tent

mir aber ûf den wec geslagen.
for-me again on the way pitched.

daz hôrt man mich ze mâzen clagen.
that heard one me in measure lament.

ez hielt der wol gemuote man
there halted the well spirited man

vor sînem gezelt dâ ûf dem plân:
before his tent there on the plain:

er het gezimirt schône sich.
he had crested beautifully himself.

dô sach er zuo im stapfen mich.
then saw he to him trot me.

582 Des was er inneclîchen vrô:
Of-it was he inwardly glad:

sîn orsse mit sporn nam er dô.
his horse with spurs took he then.

dâ wart ein tyost sô ritterlîch
there was a joust so knightly

geriten und sô wünneclîch,
ridden and so delightful,

daz ich nie schœner hân gesehen:
that I never more-beautiful have seen:

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen.
of-it must I from the truth declare.

die schilde von der tyost sich cluben,
the shields from the joust themselves split,

die sprîzel von den scheften stuben.
the splinters from the shafts flew.

Nu wâren ûz der stat ouch her 583
Now were out-of the town also hither

wol drîzic ritter oder mêr
well thirty knights or more

gezimirt ûf den rinc bekomen,
crested onto the ring come,

der orsse mit sporn wart genomen.
the horses with spurs were taken.

dâ wart vil manic schœn puneiz
there was very many-a beautiful charge

geriten. maniger sich des vleiz,
ridden. many-a-one himself of-it strove,

daz er dâ sper verstæche vil:
that he there spears used-up many:

des brust wart dâ der tyoste zil.
whose breast became there the joust's goal.

Dâ wart tyostiret harte wol. 584
There was jousted very well.

daz velt gelac drumzen vol:
the field lay of-splinters full:

etlîch schilt aldâ gelac,
some shield there lay,

der von tyoste vallens pflac.
which from joust falling did.

mit einlef rittern ich dâ stach:
with eleven knights I there thrust:

niün sper ich ûf den zebrach,
nine spears I on them broke,

ir zweier ich vervælte dâ.
of-them two I missed there.

dô bant ich abe den helm sâ.
then bound I off the helmet at-once.

585 Siben vingerlîn ich dâ hin
Seven finger-rings I there away

gab: ez dûhte si hôch gewin.
gave: it seemed them high gain.

di sî gedient dâ heten wol,
which they served there had well,

die sach man dâ von vreuden vol.
them saw one there from of-joys full.

die vier, der sper dâ ganz beliben,
the four, whose spears there whole remained,

den tac mit zürnen sî vertriben:
the day with anger they spent:

daz sî gevælet heten mîn,
that they missed had me,

dâ von sach man si trûric sîn.
there from saw one them sad be.

586 Von Clemûn ich zogte sâ.
From Gemona I drew at-once.

urloup nam manic ritter dâ
leave took many-a knight there

von mir mit zühteclîchen siten.
from me with courteous manners.

nimêr wan drî mit mir riten:
no-more than three with me rode:

daz eine was von Lüenz her Heinrîch
the one was of Lienz sir Heinrich

und zwêne Walhe muotes rîch:
and two Italians of-spirit rich:

swie ich ir niht genennen kan,
however I them not name can,

ez wârn zwêne biderbe man.
they were two worthy men.

Ze Clûse het ich di naht gemach. 587
At Chiusa had I the night ease.

des andern morgens fruo ich stach
of-the second morning early I thrust

mit dem von Lüenz ritterlîch:
with the of Lienz knightly:

der was vil hôhes lobes rîch.
who was of-very high praise rich.

er und ouch die gesellen sîn
he and also the companions his

dâ dienten wol driu vingerlîn.
there served well three finger-rings.

gar sunder vælen daz geschach,
wholly without missing that happened,

daz unser tyost sehs sper dâ brach.
that our joust six spears there broke.

Mîn muot vil hôhe stuont enpor. 588
My spirit very high stood aloft.

des tages ich zogt unz hinz dem Tor;
of-the day I drew until toward the Thörl;

dâ ich niht ritterschefte vant.
where I not chivalry found.

der werde fürst ûz Kerndenlant
the worthy prince out-of Carinthia's-land

gewan dô bî der selben naht
won then by the same night

mit sîner fürstenlîcher maht
with his princely might

ein hûs hiez Golperc, daz ist wâr:
a house was-called Goldberg, that is true:

daz hiez er nider prechen gar.
that bade he down break wholly.

589 Des andern morgens huob ich mich
Of-the second morning raised I me

vruo von dem Tor. dô het ouch sich
early from the Thörl. then had also himself

der fürst von Kernden schôn geleit
the prince of Carinthia beautifully laid

ûf einen grüenen anger breit.
on a green meadow broad.

durch ein ymbîz er dâ lac,
for a meal he there lay,

des er ûf grase ie gerne pflac.
which he on grass ever gladly did.

wol hundert ritter oder baz
well hundred knights or more

bî im dâ lac, gelaubet daz.
by him there lay, believe that.

XXIII · THE UNKNOWN LADY'S GIFT

The duke and his knights greet Venus in Slovene; fifty knights arm, and fifteen spears are broken on him. At Villach Ulrich finds a strange little skirt among his clothes, holding a girdle, a chaplet, a brooch, and a letter in which an unknown lady sends him her jewels. At Feldkirchen he refuses Sir Zacheus of Himmelberg, who rides out dressed as a monk, and at Saint Veit twenty-five knights joust with him. When the monk rides into the ring again, Ulrich refuses him a second time.

590 Dô ich in vor mir ligen sach,
When I them before me lie saw,

mîn munt ûz hôhem muote sprach:
my mouth out-of high spirit spoke:

«ich sihe dort ligen ritterschaft
«I see there lie chivalry

gein mir mit ritterlîcher craft:
toward me with knightly force:

des pin ich herzenlîchen vrô.»
of-it am I heartily glad.»

mîn busûner hiez ich dô
my trumpeters bade I then

blâsen unde machen schal:
blow and make clamor:

ir blâsen suoze, lût erhal.
their blowing sweetly, loud resounded.

Dô der herzoge und di sîn 591
When the duke and the his

erhôrten schal von den busîn,
heard clamor from the trumpets,

si sprâchen: «wer zoget zuo uns, wer?»
they spoke: «who draws to us, who?»

man saget: «diu künginne vert dâ her,
one said: «the queen goes there hither,

als ir ir briefe habt vernomen.»
as you her letters have heard.»

si sprâchen: «diu sî willekomen!
they spoke: «she be welcome!

die sül wir schôn enpfâhen hie.»
her shall we beautifully receive here.»

ir antpfanc ritterlîch ergie.
their receiving knightly befell.

Der fürste und die gesellen sîn 592
The prince and the companions his

mich hiezen willekomen sîn.
me bade welcome be.

ir gruoz was gegen mir alsus:
their greeting was toward me thus:

«buge waz primi, gralva Venus!»
«God you receive, royal Venus!»

des neig ich zühteclîchen dâ.
for-it bowed I courteously there.

sie hiezen mich des vrâgen sâ,
they bade me of-it ask at-once,

ob ich tyostiren wolde dâ.
whether I joust would there.

ich sprach ûz hôhem muote: «jâ!»
I spoke out-of high spirit: «yes!»

593 Alzehant sich dô began
Forthwith himself then began

dâ wâpen manic biderbman.
there arm many-a worthy-man.

ir wurden kürzlîch wol bereit
of-them were shortly well ready

funfzic schôn in wâpencleit:
fifty beautifully in coats-of-arms:

die sach man alle tyostirens gern
them saw one all of-jousting desirous

under schilde mit den spern.
under shields with the spears.

nu was ouch ich gezimirt wol
now was also I crested well

und ritterlîches muotes vol.
and of-knightly spirit full.

Der dâ des êrsten gegen mir quam 594
He-who there of-the first toward me came

gezimirt, als im wol gezam,
crested, as him well befitted,

daz was für wâr ein biderbman.
that was for true a worthy-man.

von Osterwitze der schenke Herman
of Osterwitz the cupbearer Hermann

was der tugende rîch genant.
was the of-virtue rich named.

von sîner frümicheit wîte erkant
for his valor widely known

was er und vil hôchgemuot:
was he and very high-spirited:

er het vor schanden sich behuot.
he had from disgraces himself guarded.

Wir beide ein tyost dâ ritterlîch 595
We both a joust there knightly

vil schône riten. wîchâ, wîch!
very beautifully rode. give-way, give-way!

ruoft man dô beide dort unde hie.
called one then both there and here.

unser tyost alsus ergie,
our joust thus befell,

daz man diu sper dâ presten sach:
that one the spears there burst saw:

ûf beiden helmen daz geschach.
on both helmets that happened.

daz fiur dâ ûz den helmen spranc.
the fire there out-of the helmets sprang.

der tyost muost man uns wizen danc.
for-the joust must one us know thanks.

596 Ein ander sper gab man mir sâ.
An other spear gave one me at-once.

nu was ouch komen gegen mir dâ
now was also come toward me there

von Vinkensteine mîn her Kol:
of Finkenstein my sir Kol:

der kunde dêswâr tyostiren wol.
who could truly joust well.

daz wart dâ volleclîchen schîn,
that became there fully shown,

wan er mir an dem helm mîn
for he me on the helmet mine

ein sper dâ ritterlîch verstach:
a spear there knightly used-up:

daz mîne in sînem schilt ich prach.
the mine in his shield I broke.

597 Ich wil ez iu kurzlîche sagen
I will it you briefly tell

und doch die wârheit niht verdagen:
and yet the truth not conceal:

ez wurden dâ funfzehen sper
there were there fifteen spears

ûf mir verstochen und niht mêr
on me used-up and not more

in hôhem muote ritterlîch.
in high spirit knightly.

ob ichs iu nant gar sunderlîch,
if I-them you named wholly separately,

die dâ wol dienten vrowen danc,
who there well served ladies' thanks,

sô deuht daz mær iuch lîht zelanc.
so seemed the tale you easily too-long.

Ahzehen sper verstach dâ ich. 598
Eighteen spears used-up there I.

dar nâch sach man abe pinden mich
there after saw one off bind me

mit hôhem muote den helm mîn.
with high spirit the helmet mine.

ich gab dâ funfzehen vingerlîn
I gave there fifteen finger-rings

den, die sî gedienten dâ.
to-those, who them served there.

dar nâch sach man mich zogen sâ
there after saw one me draw at-once

mit vreuden hin ze Villach,
with joys thither to Villach,

dâ man mich dêswâr gern sach.
where one me truly gladly saw.

Durch daz Rastal sâ zehant 599
Through the Rosental at-once forthwith

dô zogt der fürst ûz Kerndenlant.
then drew the prince out-of Carinthia's-land.

mit mir fuor al sîn ritterschaft
with me went all his chivalry

ze Villach, dâ vil manic schaft
at Villach, there very many-a shaft

wart verstochen ritterlîch.
was used-up knightly.

dâ was manic ritter muotes rîch:
there was many-a knight of-spirit rich:

dâ wart tyostiret von in wol
there was jousted by them well

mit mir, als ich iu sagen sol.
with me, as I you tell shall.

600 Des nahtes het ich dâ ze Villach
Of-the night had I there at Villach

mit vreuden dêswâr guot gemach.
with joys truly good ease.

sâ dô der ander tac bequam,
at-once when the second day came,

ein schœne messe ich dô vernam.
a beautiful mass I then heard.

ich het an mînen lîp geleit
I had on my body laid

vil wunneclîcheu vrowenkleit.
very delightful lady's-clothes.

blîde hin ze kirchen und von dan
gladly thither to church and from thence

gie ich: des lachet dô manic man.
went I: of-it laughed then many-a man.

601 Alzehant ich dô enbeiz;
Forthwith I then breakfasted;

dar nâch ich mich mit willen fleiz,
there after I me with will strove,

daz ich gezimirt würde wol.
that I crested were well.

ez was vil hôhes muotes vol
it was of-very high spirit full

daz minnengernde herze mîn.
the love-desiring heart mine.

dô schowet ich al mîn röckelîn
then looked-at I all my little-skirts

sunderlîchen alzehant:
separately forthwith:

ein vremdez röckel ich dâ vant.
a strange little-skirt I there found.

Dô ich daz röckelîn ersach, 602
When I the little-skirt saw,

zuo mînem kameræ̈re ich dô sprach:
to my chamberlain I then spoke:

«wie nû? wer hât ditz her gegeben?
«how now? who has this hither given?

daz sag, als liep dir sî daz leben!»
that tell, as dear to-thee be the life!»

er sprach: «vrowe, ich enweiz sîn niht.»
he spoke: «lady, I know of-it not.»

«daz wære ein wunderlîch geschiht.
«that were a wondrous happening.

wer solt dir hân ditz röckelîn
who should thee have this little-skirt

gegeben gar âne di wizen dîn?»
given wholly without the knowledge thine?»

Daz röckel ich zehant ûf bant; 603
The little-skirt I forthwith up bound;

dar inne ich einen gürtel vant,
there inside I a girdle found,

ein tschapel und ein heftelîn:
a chaplet and a little-brooch:

diu driu niht bezzer kunden sîn.
the three not better could be.

ein tiütscher brief ouch dâ bî lac:
a German letter also there by lay:

dar umbe ich grôzes zornes pflac;
there for I of-great anger was;

ich sprach: «du solt gelouben mir,
I spoke: «thou shalt believe me,

ditz kleinœd birt unsælde dir!»
this jewel bears misfortune for-thee!»

604 Er sprach: «vil liebiu vrowe mîn,
He spoke: «very dear lady mine,

lât iwer zürnen gegen mir sîn.
let your anger toward me be.

und wizze ich, wer ez her habe gegeben,
and (if)-know I, who it hither have given,

daz lât mir gân an mîn leben.»
that let me go on my life.»

den brief ich mir an der stat
the letter I me on the spot

vil snellîchen lesen bat.
very swiftly read bade.

den brief ich hôrt: balde daz geschach.
the letter I heard: quickly that happened.

nu sült ir hœren, wie er sprach:
now shall you hear, how it spoke:

d Vênus, vil edeliu künegîn,
Venus, very noble queen,

gruoz und al den dienest mîn
greeting and all the service mine

enbiut ich iu gar sunder wanc.
announce I you wholly without wavering.

iu suln alle vrowen wizen danc,
you shall all ladies know thanks,

daz ir durch unser werdicheit
that you for our worthiness

habt vrowenkleit an iuch geleit
have lady's-clothes on you laid

und dâ mit êret elliu wîp.
and there with honor all women.

des wirt getiwert iwer lîp.
therefore is ennobled your person.

ir sult von mir enpfâhen
you shall from me receive

mîn kleinœd sunder smâhen,
my jewel without scorn,

daz ich ze lieb iu hân gesant.
which I to love for-you have sent.

ich wil iu wesen unbekant
I will to-you be unknown

durch mîn êre und durch anders niht:
for my honor and for else nothing:

und swâ iu êre und liep geschiht,
and wherever to-you honor and love happens,

des bin ich inneclîche vrô.
of-it am I inwardly glad.

mîn muot der stât gein iu alsô,
my spirit it stands toward you so,

got müeze iu lîbes und êren pflegen
God may you of-body and honors take-care

ûf iwern ritterlîchen wegen!
on your knightly ways!

mit triuwen gib ich iu den segen.
with faithfulness give I you the blessing.

Sâ dô ich den brief vernam, 605
At-once when I the letter heard,

alzehant ein bote quam,
forthwith a messenger came,

der sprach: «vil edeliu künegîn,
who spoke: «very noble queen,

ir solt nû gewâpent sîn.
you shall now armed be.

iu sî für wâr von mir geseit:
to-you be for true by me said:

die ritter sint nu gar bereit
the knights are now wholly ready
und zogent ûf daz velt dâ hin.
and draw onto the field there thither.
ir bote zuo iu, vrowe, ich des bin.»
their messenger to you, lady, I of-it am.»

606 Ich sprach: «des bin ich harte vrô»
I spoke: «of-it am I very glad»
und wâpent mich zehant aldô.
and armed me forthwith there.
ich wart vil schône dâ bereit
I became very beautifully there ready
in snêwîzziu wâpenkleit
in snow-white coats-of-arms
und zogt hin ûf daz velt zehant,
and drew thither onto the field forthwith,
dâ ich wol vierzic ritter vant
where I well forty knights found
under helme mit den spern
under helmet with the spears
halden. tyostirens sach man si gern.
halt. of-jousting saw one them desirous.

607 Von Vrowenstein her Swikkêr
Of Frauenstein sir Swikker
fuort gegen mir ein starkez sper,
carried toward me a strong spear,
daz er mir ûf der brust verstach,
that he me on the breast used-up,
daz ez diu tyost vil kleine brach.
so-that it the joust very small broke.

mîn sper ouch dâ niht ganz beleip:
my spear also there not whole remained:

di tyost ich im vil nâhen treip,
the joust I him very near drove,

daz der hurt dâ was nâch ergân.
that the charge there was nearly gone.

dô kom gein mir ein biderb man,
then came toward me a worthy man,

Der vrî vor allen schanden was: 608
Who free from all disgraces was:

er hiez der biderb Ruodolf von Ras.
he was-called the worthy Rudolf of Ras.

der was gezimirt harte wol:
he was crested very well:

sîn lîp was aller tugende vol:
his person was of-all virtues full:

er was vil ritterlîch gemuot,
he was very knightly spirited,

dêswâr ein edel ritter guot.
truly a noble knight good.

daz wart wol schîn an manger stat;
that was well shown in many-a place;

ûz êren er nie fuoz getrat.
out-of honors he never foot stepped.

Dô der vil biderbe gegen mir her 609
When the very worthy-one toward me hither

sô schône kom, dô was mîn ger,
so beautifully came, then was my desire,

daz unser tyost dâ würde guot.
that our joust there became good.

der biderbe, reine, hôchgemuot
the worthy, pure, high-spirited-one

stach mir dâ abe den helm mîn.
thrust me there off the helmet mine.

ich wunt in in den arm sîn.
I wounded him in the arm his.

daz was mir leit: des het ich reht:
that was to-me sorrowful: of-it had I right:

er was mir holt mit triuwen sleht.
he was to-me devoted with faithfulness straight.

Hurtâ, hurtâ! wie ez dô gie
Charge-ho, charge-ho! how it then went

ûf dem velde dort unde hie!
on the field there and here!

dâ wart tyostiret harte wol:
there was jousted very well:

daz velt gelac drumzen vol.
the field lay of-splinters full.

fünfzehen sper ich dâ verstach.
fifteen spears I there used-up.

alzehant dô daz geschach,
forthwith when that happened,

ich zogt sâ in di herberge mîn
I drew at-once into the lodging mine

und gap dâ hin zwelf vingerlîn
and gave there away twelve finger-rings

Den, die sî gedienten dâ, 611
To-those, who them served there,

und entwâpent mich ouch sâ
and unarmed me also at-once

und kleidet mich sâ als ein wîp.
and clothed me at-once as a woman.

in eine line saz dâ mîn lîp.
in a window sat there my person.

dô man mich in der line ersach,
when one me in the window saw,

nu hœret reht, waz dâ geschach:
now hear rightly, what there happened:

sich huop vor mir ein ritterspil:
itself raised before me a knightly-game:

dâ wart getyostiret vil.
there was jousted much.

Ez wurden dâ wol funfzic sper 612
There were there well fifty spears

vor mir verstochen oder mêr:
before me used-up or more:

ûf dem market daz geschach.
on the market that happened.

die tyost ich alle besunder sach.
the jousts I all separately saw.

bî mîner höfscheit sô sült ir
by my courtliness so shall you

für wâr daz wol gelauben mir,
for true that well believe me,

daz ez dâ wart vil wol getân
that it there was very well done

von manigem hôchgemuoten man.
by many-a high-spirited man.

613 Nu seig ouch nû der âbent zuo.
Now sank also now the evening to.

si heten von dem morgen fruo
they had from the morning early

unz an den âbent ungemach:
until to the evening discomfort:

di naht dâ maniger gern sach,
the night there many-a-one gladly saw,

dem lîht von müede was vil wê.
to-whom perhaps from weariness was very woe.

sô wold ouch maniger gern mê
so would also many-a-one gladly more

sîner vrowen dienen dâ:
his lady serve there:

daz understuont der âbent sâ.
that prevented the evening at-once.

614 Sâ dô der dritte tac erschein,
At-once when the third day appeared,

dô was ich warden des en ein,
then was I become of-it at one,

daz ich wold aber fürbaz.
that I would again further.

ir sult für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

ich was vil herzenlîchen vrô.
I was very heartily glad.

hin ze Veltkirchen zogt ich dô,
thither to Feldkirchen drew I then,

mit mir wol zweinzic ritter guot:
with me well twenty knights good:

die wâren ritterlîch gemuot.
who were knightly spirited.

Des tages dô ich dar solde komen 615
Of-the day when I thither should come

und daz mîn kunft dâ wart vernomen,
and that my coming there was heard,

die ritter von dem lande dâ
the knights of the land there

dô zogten alle gegen mir sâ
then drew all toward me at-once

gezimirt und gewâpent wol;
crested and armed well;

der ich ein teil iu nennen sol:
of-whom I a part you name shall:

von Havenerpurc mîn her Gotfrit
of Hafnerburg my sir Gottfried

dâ gegen mir kom nâch ritters sit,
there toward me came after knight's custom,

Und ouch sîn bruoder her Arnolt. 616
And also his brother sir Arnold.

von den beiden wart geholt
by the both was fetched

zwei vingerlîn dêswâr vil wol.
two finger-rings truly very well.

dâ kom von Treven mîn her Kol,
there came of Treffen my sir Kol,

her Bernhart und ouch her Uolrîch;
sir Bernhard and also sir Ulrich;

von Himelberc der muotes rîch
of Himmelberg the of-spirit rich

(her Zacheus was er genant),
(sir Zacheus was he named),

von sînem gesange wîte erkant.
for his singing widely known.

617 Der het an sînen lîp geleit
He had on his body laid

über daz harnasch münches kleit,
over the harness monk's clothes,

ein münches cappen swarz gevar,
a monk's cowl black colored,

und het ûf sînem helm ein hâr:
and had on his helmet a hair:

ein breitiu blatte was dem geschorn.
a broad tonsure was to-it shorn.

er het vil tiure des gesworn,
he had very dearly of-it sworn,

daz er dâ nider die künegîn
that he there down the queen

stæche: daz was der wille sîn.
thrust: that was the will his.

618 Einlef ritter dâ gein mir
Eleven knights there toward me

schône kômen: nimêr was ir;
beautifully came: no-more was of-them;

ûf den ich zehen sper verstach.
on whom I ten spears used-up.

ir ieslîcher ouch zebrach
of-them each also broke

sîn sper ûffe mir dêswâr.
his spear on me truly.

der nâch dem münch dâ was gevar,
he-who after the monk there was colored,

der kom gegen mir ûf den rinc.
he came toward me onto the ring.

daz was gar ein verloren dinc.
that was wholly a lost thing.

Dô ich in sach sus gegen mir komen, 619
When I him saw thus toward me come,

der helm mîn wart abe genomen.
the helmet mine was off taken.

ich hiez im sagen an der stat,
I bade him tell on the spot,

sît er an im het münches wât
since he on him had monk's garb

und münch ouch wold für ritter sîn,
and monk also would for knight be,

sô wolde ouch dâ diu künegîn
so would also there the queen

mit im niht ritterschefte pflegen:
with him not chivalry practice:

des het si sich durch zuht bewegen.
of-it had she herself for courtesy resolved.

In mîn herberge ich dô reit, 620
Into my lodging I then rode,

dâ guot gemach was mir bereit.
where good ease was to-me ready.

gemaches pflac ich dâ di naht.
of-ease took-care I there the night.

sâ dô der ander tac mit maht
at-once when the second day with might

erschein, dô schiet ich sâ von dan.
appeared, then parted I at-once from thence.

mir het der münch dâ leit getan:
to-me had the monk there sorrow done:

der truoc ich im von schulden nît.
for-it bore I him by rights grudge.

des tages zogt ich unz hin ze sant Vît.
of-the day drew I until thither to Saint Veit.

621 Dô ich ze sant Vîte zuo gereit
When I to Saint Veit to rode

und daz mîn kunft dâ wart geseit,
and that my coming there was told,

di ritter dâ niht langer biten,
the knights there not longer waited,

mit vreuden sî dâ gegen mir riten.
with joys they there toward me rode.

ich wart von in enpfangen wol,
I was by them received well,

alsô man friunt enpfâhen sol.
as one friends receive shall.

ir gruoz was gegen mir zühte rîch:
their greeting was toward me of-courtesy rich:

des neig ich in vil minneclîch.
for-it bowed I them very lovingly.

622 Mit freuden rit wir in di stat.
With joys rode we into the town.

den rittern ich dô sagen bat,
to-the knights I then tell bade,

swer mit mir wolde dyostiren dâ,
whoever with me would joust there,

daz der sich solde wâpen sâ.
that he himself should arm at-once.

des wâren alle di ritter vrô:
of-it were all the knights glad:

alzehant sich wâpent dô
forthwith themselves armed then

wol fümf und zweinzic ritter wert,
well five and twenty knights worthy,

der lîp ie hôhes muotes gert.
whose person ever high spirit desires.

Ich wart gewâpent ouch ze vlîz. 623
I was armed also with diligence.

ein niwe decke von silber wîz
a new covering of silver white

wart dâ ûf mîn orsse geleit.
was there on my horse laid.

ein röckel was mîn wâpenkleit:
a little-skirt was my coat-of-arms:

daz was wîz alsam ein snê.
that was white like a snow.

waz sol ich iu sagen mê?
what shall I you tell more?

ich wart gezimirt ê nie baz.
I was crested before never better.

dâ mit ich ûf mîn orsse gesaz
there with I on my horse sat

Und bant sâ ûf den helm mîn. 624
And bound at-once up the helmet mine.

man sach mich hôhes muotes sîn.
one saw me of-high spirit be.

die zöpfe mîn di wâren lanc:
the braids mine they were long:

ûf ritterschaft stuont mîn gedanc.
on chivalry stood my thought.

ich gedâht: «hie ist manic biderb man,
I thought: «here is many-a worthy man,

den ich wol aller êren gan
whom I well all honors grant

und doch der êren, daz dâ bî
and yet of-the honors, that there by

mîn êre iht deste minner sî.
my honor anything the less be.

625 Ûf daz velt zoget ich zehant,
Onto the field drew I forthwith,

dâ ich die êre gernden vant
where I the honor desiring-ones found

gegen mir halten mit den spern:
toward me halt with the spears:

man sach si schône tyostirens gern.
one saw them beautifully of-jousting desirous.

ein sper ich in di hant dô nam.
a spear I into the hand then took.

ein biderb man dô gegen mir quam,
a worthy man then toward me came,

von Eichelsperc mîn her Reinher,
of Eichelberg my sir Reinher,

der ie gein schanden was ze wer.
who ever against disgraces was on defense.

626 Eine schœne tyost wir beide riten,
A beautiful joust we both rode,

alsô daz vælen wart vermiten.
so that missing was avoided.

diu ougen uns dâ niht entrugen:
the eyes us there not deceived:

die sprîzeln harte hôhe vlugen.
the splinters very high flew.

sâ dô diu schœne tyost geschach,
at-once when the beautiful joust happened,

do bestuont mich der von Lebnach:
then engaged me the of Lebnach:

her Kuonrât hiez der biderb man,
sir Konrad was-called the worthy man,

der lop bî sîner zît gewan.
who praise in his time won.

Dar nâch her Kuone von Vrîberc, 627
There after sir Kuno of Friedberg,

der mit dem lîbe ie ritters werc
who with the body ever knight's work

tet unde mit dem guote niht
did and with the goods not

(manic sîn lantman von im des giht),
(many-a his countryman of him of-it declares),

und von dem Berge her Jâcob,
and of the Berg sir Jacob,

des herze ie warp nâch hôhem lob.
whose heart ever strove after high praise.

mit mir der ritterlîchen stach
with me he knightly thrust

und ouch her Kuonrât von Teinach.
and also sir Konrad of Teinach.

Von Nuzperc mîn her Ruodelîn: 628
Of Nussberg my sir Rudolf:

der kunde tiuwerr niht gesîn.
he could dearer not be.

her Gundacker von Vrowenstein,
sir Gundaker of Frauenstein,

des guot umb êre ie was gemein.
whose goods for honor ever was common.

mit mir dâ bêde ritterlîch
with me there both knightly

stâchen, und ouch her Heinrîch:
thrust, and also sir Heinrich:

von Grîffenvels der biderbe hiez,
of Griffenfels the worthy-one was-called,

der selten iht durch vorhte liez.
who seldom anything for fear left.

629 Von Gurnetz der hôchgemuot Wülfinc
Of Gurnitz the high-spirited Wülfing

kom schône gegen mir ûf den rinc,
came beautifully toward me onto the ring,

gezimirt ouch vil wunneclîch.
crested also very delightfully.

von Grâvenstein her Heinrîch
of Grafenstein sir Heinrich

kom ouch vil schône gegen mir dâ.
came also very beautifully toward me there.

mit den beiden ich dô sâ
with the both I then at-once

vil ritterlîch zwei sper verstach.
very knightly two spears used-up.

alzehant dô daz geschach,
forthwith when that happened,

630 Dô was der münch ôt aber komen
Then was the monk just again come

ûf den rinc. der het genomen
onto the ring. who had taken

in sîne hant ein niuwez sper:
into his hand a new spear:

mit mir ze tyostiren was sîn ger.
with me to joust was his desire.

dô ich in gegen mir halten sach,
when I him toward me halt saw,

mîn munt ûz ungemüete sprach:
my mouth out-of ill-humor spoke:

«dêswâr ich stiche mit iu niht:
«truly I thrust with you not:

mîn zunge von wârheit iu des giht.»
my tongue by truth to-you of-it declares.»

The next morning six knights joust with Venus, and the monk, refused once more, vows to keep following until Venus jousts with him. When the knights plead for him, Venus jousts with him and hurls him behind his horse. Venus rides on to Friesach, where a buhurt fills the evening, and jousts there with Konrad of Neudeck. At Scheifling he jousts with Ilsung, whose crest rings with five hundred bells, then at Judenburg, Knittelfeld, and Leoben, and rides toward Kapfenberg.

Den helm zehant ich abe bant. 631
The helmet forthwith I off bound.

in mîn herberge ich zehant
into my lodging I forthwith

fuor unde het die naht gemach.
went and had the night ease.

dô ich den andern tac ersach,
when I the second day saw,

do bereit ich mich aber ûf di vart.
then readied I me again on the journey.

vil wol ich aber gewâpent wart
very well I again armed was

und hiez die ritter vrâgen sâ,
and bade the knights ask at-once,

ob iemen wold tyostiren dâ.
whether anyone would joust there.

Dô daz den rittern wart geseit, 632
When that to-the knights was said,

ir wart vil kürzlîch dâ bereit
of-them were very shortly there ready

sehse des morgens und niht mêr.
six of-the morning and not more.

der ieslîcher het sîn sper
of-whom each had his spear

nâch tyost gern in sîner hant.
after joust desirous in his hand.

dô ich si dô bereite vant
when I them then ready found

und alle gegen mir tyoste gern,
and all toward me of-joust desirous,

ich gedâht: «ich sol iuch schire wern.»
I thought: «I shall you soon grant.»

633 Alzehant ein sper nam ich.
Forthwith a spear took I.

dô het von Osterwizze sich
then had of Osterwitz himself

her Ortolf verre für genomen.
sir Ortolf far forth taken.

man sach uns gegen einander komen
one saw us toward one-another come

ritterlîchen und alsô,
knightly and so,

daz dâ di drumzen vlugen hô.
that there the splinters flew high.

diu sper man schôn dâ bresten sach:
the spears one beautifully there burst saw:

an bêden helsen daz geschach.
on both necks that happened.

Von Karlesperc her Wîchart sâ 634
Of Karlsberg sir Wichart at-once

gegen mir kom müezlîchen dâ;
toward me came leisurely there;

dâ von sîn sper ouch ganz beleip.
there from his spear also whole remained.

vil ritterlîch dô gegen mir treip
very knightly then toward me drove

von Strâzpurc mîn her Engelram:
of Strassburg my sir Engelram:

ich tet gein im zewâr alsam.
I did toward him truly likewise.

wir tâten beide der tyoste reht.
we did both the joust's right.

dô kom gein mir her Engelbreht
then came toward me sir Engelbrecht

Von Strâzburc, ein ritter wert, 635
Of Strassburg, a knight worthy,

des herze ie hôhes prîses gert:
whose heart ever high prize desires:

er hete vil ritterlîche sit.
he had very knightly manner.

dô kom gein mir sâ her Sîfrit:
then came toward me at-once sir Siegfried:

der Sahse sô was er genant
the Saxon so was he named

und ze Kernden wol bekant.
and in Carinthia well known.

er was für wâr ein höfscher man;
he was for true a courtly man;

dâ von er vreunde vil gewan.
there from he friends many won.

636 Der münch kom aber in münches wîs
The monk came again in monk's way

und wold an mir dâ hôhen prîs
and would on me there high prize

vil gern wolde haben bejaget.
very gladly would have won.

dô wart im sâ von mir gesaget
then was him at-once by me told

(mîn bote mit zühten im daz seit),
(my messenger with courtesies him that told),

die wîle er an fuorte münches kleit,
the while he on wore monk's clothes,

daz ich mit im dâ stæche niht:
that I with him there thrust not:

ez wære an êren mir enwiht.
it were in honors to-me worthless.

637 Der münch ûz hôhem muote sprach:
The monk out-of high spirit spoke:

«sô var ich ir doch immer nâch,
«so go I her yet ever after,

swelhes endes si hinnen vert,
whichever way she hence goes,

daz mir mit fuoge daz niemen wert.
that me with propriety that no-one prevents.

si müeze mit mir tyostirens pflegen,
she must with me of-jousting take-care,

des hân ich mich für wâr bewegen:
of-it have I me for true resolved:

daz benimt mir nimmer nôt,
that takes from-me never need,

ez tuo aleine der gemeine tôt.»
it do alone the common death.»

Di ritter riten alle dô 638
The knights rode all then

zuo mir mit zuht und sprâchen sô:
to me with courtesy and spoke so:

«vrowe, ir sült uns alle gewern,
«lady, you shall us all grant,

des wir mit zühten an iuch gern,
what we with courtesies of you desire,

daz ir mit disem münche hie
that you with this monk here

ein sper verstechet. enruochet, wie
a spear use-up. care-not, how

er sich gein iu gekleidet hât:
he himself toward you clothed has:

sîn muot iedoch ûf êre stât.»
his spirit yet on honor stands.»

Ich sprach: «sît irs mit zühten gert, 639
I spoke: «since you-it with courtesies desire,

sô sol er sîn durch iuch gewert.»
so shall he of-it for you granted-be.»

ein sper bat ich mir palde geben;
a spear bade I me quickly give;

den buneiz lanc sach man mich heben.
the charge long saw one me raise.

ir sült für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

ich was im herzenlîch gehaz:
I was to-him heartily hostile:

ez was gar alle der wille mîn,
it was wholly all the will mine,

daz ich im træffe den helm sîn.
that I him hit the helmet his.

640 Ich sag iu, wie diu tyost geschach:
I tell you, how the joust happened:

sîn sper er ritterlîch verstach.
his spear he knightly used-up.

dâ mit sô stach ouch in mîn hant
there with so thrust also him my hand

hinder daz orsse ûf daz lant,
behind the horse onto the land,

daz er sinnelôs gelac.
that he senseless lay.

sîn val mich harte ringe wac.
his fall me very lightly weighed.

dâ muoste der biderbe lîden spot:
there must the worthy-one suffer mockery:

des valles manic munt lobt got.
for-the fall many-a mouth praised God.

641 Ich het in nâch dem willen mîn
I had him after the will mine

gestochen durch den helm sîn.
thrust through the helmet his.

im und den andern ich dô sâ
him and the others I then at-once

gap vierzên vingerlîn aldâ.
gave fourteen finger-rings there.

dâ mit sô schiet ich sâ von dan
there with so parted I at-once from thence

mit vreuden als ein sælic man.
with joys as a blessed man.

des tages ich ze Frisach reit
of-the day I to Friesach rode

alsam ein vrowe wol gekleit.
like a lady well clad.

Ze Frisach was manic ritter guot, 642
At Friesach was many-a knight good,

di mîn dâ piten. durch hôhen muot
who of-me there waited. for high spirit

und durch diu reinen süezen wîp
and for the pure sweet women

was dâ der hôch gemuoten lîp.
was there the high spirited-ones' person.

ich wart von in enpfangen sâ
I was by them received at-once

dêswâr vil minneclîchen dâ:
truly very lovingly there:

si riten gegen mir ûz der stat,
they rode toward me out-of the town,

als sî ir grôziu zuht des bat.
as them their great courtesy of-it bade.

Ir gruoz und ouch daz danken mîn 643
Their greeting and also the thanking mine

sach man mit zuht gemenget sîn.
saw one with courtesy mingled be.

ir was vil maniger muotes rîch:
of-them was very many-a-one of-spirit rich:

si vrâgten mich vil zühteclîch
they asked me very courteously

ob ich des tages wolde stechen dâ.
whether I of-the day would joust there.

ich sprach ûz hôhem muote: «jâ!»
I spoke out-of high spirit: «yes!»

si bâten mich gemeine duo,
they bade me in-common then,

daz ich pite unz des morgens fruo.
that I waited until of-the morning early.

644 «Swaz ir gebietet, daz sol sîn»,
«Whatever you command, that shall be»,

sprach ich. in die herberge mîn
spoke I. into the lodging mine

fuor ich mit hôhem muote dô.
went I with high spirit then.

man sach mich sîn mit zühten vrô:
one saw me be with courtesies glad:

ûf minnen lôn stuont mîn gedanc.
on love's reward stood my thought.

vor mîner herberge was gedranc:
before my lodging was throng:

sich huop ein buhurt, der was grôz:
itself raised a buhurt, which was great:

mit schilden wart dâ stôzâ stôz.
with shields was there thrust-ho thrust.

645 Dâ wart vil ritterlîch geriten
There was very knightly ridden

mit kunst nâch ritterlîchen siten:
with skill after knightly customs:

man sach dâ schilde bresten vil.
one saw there shields burst many.

daz ritterlîche ritters spil
the knightly knight's game

wart unz an den âbent gar:
was until to the evening wholly:

diu orsse dâ wurden scheumevar.
the horses there became foam-colored.

der tac was vil nâch zergân:
the day was very nearly perished:

dô muosten sî ir buhurt lân.
then must they their buhurt leave.

Diu naht gemechlîch ende nam. 646
The night comfortably end took.

sâ dô der ander tac bequam,
at-once when the second day came,

di hôchgemuoten sach man sich
the high-spirited-ones saw one themselves

wâpen: alsô tet ich mich.
arm: so did I me.

ûf daz velt wir zogten dô.
onto the field we drew then.

ich was vil hertzenlîchen vrô,
I was very heartily glad,

daz ich der lieben vrowen mîn
that I the dear lady mine

des tages solde aber dienende sîn.
of-the day should again serving be.

Ûf dem velde vor der stat 647
On the field before the town

hielt von Nîdekke her Kuonrât,
halted of Neudeck sir Konrad,

gezimirt als ein biderbe man.
crested as a worthy man.

er rant mich ritterlîchen an:
he charged me knightly on:

sîn buneiz der wart schœne und lanc.
his charge it became beautiful and long.

nâch vrowen lôn stuont sîn gedanc.
after ladies' reward stood his thought.

sîn orsse mit sporn er vaste treip:
his horse with spurs he fast drove:

daz mîn ouch des niht sust beleip.
that mine also of-it not thus remained.

648 Ich sage iu, wie diu tyost geschach:
I tell you, how the joust happened:

sîn sper er ritterlîch verstach,
his spear he knightly used-up,

daz ichs an mînem halse enpfant.
so-that I-it on my neck felt.

ich wunte in in sîn zeswen hant:
I wounded him in his right hand:

daz was mir inneclîche leit
that was to-me inwardly sorrowful

durch sîne hôhe werdicheit.
for his high worthiness.

er was dêswâr ein ritter guot,
he was truly a knight good,

vil ritterlîch, manlîch gemuot.
very knightly, manly spirited.

649 Von Buhse her Otte und her Dietrîch
Of Buchs sir Otto and sir Dietrich

mîn vælte dâ, doch ritterlîch.
me missed there, yet knightly.

daz was den biderben beiden zorn,
that was to-the worthy both anger,

daz sî diu vingerlîn verlorn
that they the finger-rings lost

heten. alsô stuont ir muot:
had. so stood their spirit:

man sach si werben mêr umb guot
one saw them strive more for goods

danne umb der werden minne solt.
than for the worthy-ones' love's pay.

si wâren breiten huoben holt.
they were to-broad farmsteads devoted.

Mit siben rittern stach ich dâ 650
With seven knights thrust I there

und zogt ouch dô von danne sâ.
and drew also then from thence at-once.

fünf vingerlîn gab hin dâ ich.
five finger-rings gave away there I.

dar nâch sach man danne rîten mich
there after saw one then ride me

gegen Scheuflich sâ zehant
toward Scheifling at-once forthwith

in daz werde Stîrelant.
into the worthy Styrian-land.

niunzehen ritter mit mir riten:
nineteen knights with me rode:

nimêr wan fünfe mîn dâ biten.
no-more than five of-me there waited.

Si riten gegen mir ritterlîch 651
They rode toward me knightly

und gruozten mich vil minneclîch:
and greeted me very lovingly:

«Vênus, vil edeliu künegîn,
«Venus, very noble queen,

ir sült got willekomen sîn
you shall God welcome be

ze freuden her in ditze lant.»
to joys hither into this land.»

des neig ich zühteclîch zehant.
for-it bowed I courteously forthwith.

…
(lacuna)

…
(lacuna)

652 Ze Scheuflich ich di naht beleip.
At Scheifling I the night remained.

sâ dô di naht der tac vertreip,
at-once when the night the day drove-off,

ich wâpent ritterlîche mich:
I armed knightly me:

als tâten ouch di ritter sich,
as did also the knights themselves,

die tyostirens wolden pflegen.
who of-jousting would take-care.

di heten sich ouch des bewegen,
they had themselves also of-it resolved,

daz mans gezimirt schône vant.
that one-them crested beautifully found.

dô zogten wir ûf daz velt zehant.
then drew we onto the field forthwith.

653 Wol mich, daz ich si nennen sol!
Well me, that I them name shall!

der dâ gezimirt gegen mir wol
who there crested toward me well

kom, reht als ein biderbe man,
came, right as a worthy man,

der tyost und ritterschaft wol kan,
who joust and chivalry well knows,

von Scheuflich her Ilsunc er hiez,
of Scheifling sir Ilsung he was-called,

des hertze nie niht des geliez,
whose heart never anything of-that left,

dâ von ein ritter wirdet wert.
there from a knight becomes worthy.

er was, der hôhes prîses gert.
he was, who high prize desires.

Fünf hundert schellen oder mêr 654
Five hundred bells or more

fuort an im der muotes hêr.
carried on him the of-spirit lordly-one.

sîn orsse vil kleiner sprunge spranc:
his horse very small leaps leapt:

sîn zimir dâ sô lûte erklanc,
his crest there so loudly rang,

daz man dâ bî gehôrte niht.
that one there by heard nothing.

silbervel und goltvel lieht,
silver-fur and gold-fur bright,

zendâl rôt, grüen als ein gras,
taffeta red, green as a grass,

dâ sunderbâr gehouen was.
there separately hewn was.

Gezimirt was der lantman mîn, 655
Crested was the countryman mine,

daz nie kein ritter umb den Rîn
that never any knight about the Rhine

gezimirt wart für wâr nie baz:
crested was for true never better:

von rehter wârheit sprich ich daz.
by right truth speak I that.

er fuort ein sper in sîner hant,
he carried a spear in his hand,

daz man vil wol gekleidet vant;
which one very well clothed found;

dar an vil kleiner schellen hie,
there on very small bells hung,

gestreut vil schône dart unde hie.
strewn very beautifully there and here.

656 Sîn lîp was in die tyost gestalt:
His person was into the joust shaped:

er moht wol heizen Swendenwalt.
he might well be-called Sweep-the-wood.

sîn orsse er nam vast mit den sporn.
his horse he took fast with the spurs.

ein schœne tyost wart dâ niht vlorn:
a beautiful joust was there not lost:

er stach mir abe dem arme mîn
he thrust me off the arm mine

den schilt, daz al di riemen sîn
the shield, so-that all the straps its

brâsten. als ein donerslac
burst. as a thunderclap

diu tyost erhal: der schilt gelac.
the joust resounded: the shield lay.

657 Mîn sper ûf sîner ahsel brast,
My spear on his shoulder burst,

als der ein dürren grôzen ast
as who a dry great branch

ab einem poume zerret nider.
off a tree tears down.

ich gehôrt dâ vor noch niender sider
I heard there before nor anywhere since

von tyoste nie sô grôzen krach,
from joust never so great crash,

als von der tyost aldâ geschach.
as from the joust there happened.

sîn schellen harte wîte stuben:
his bells very far flew:

di schilde von der tyost sich kluben.
the shields from the joust themselves split.

Sâ dô diu schœne tyost geschach, 658
At-once when the beautiful joust happened,

mit vier rittern ich balde stach
with four knights I quickly thrust

und gap dâ hin fünf vingerlîn.
and gave there away five finger-rings.

si sprâchen: «disiu künegîn
they spoke: «this queen

vert dêswâr ein schœne vart.
goes truly a beautiful journey.

got hât si wol unz her bewart:
God has her well until hither kept:

got der müeze ir fürbaz pflegen
God he may her further take-care

durch sîne güet ûf al ir wegen!»
for his goodness on all her ways!»

Gegen Judenpurc ich dô 659
Toward Judenburg I then

zogt in hôhem muot alsô.
drew in high spirit so.

ich wunschte, daz daz solde sîn,
I wished, that that should be,

daz diu vil werde vrowe mîn
that the very worthy lady mine

erkande gegen ir mînen muot.
knew toward her my spirit.

ich gedâht alsô: «si ist sô guot;
I thought so: «she is so good;

erkande sî den willen mîn,
knew she the will mine,

sî müest mir genædic sîn.»
she must to-me gracious be.»

660 Ze Judenpurc enpfie man mich
At Judenburg received one me

vil vlîziclîch: des danct ouch ich
very diligently: for-it thanked also I

mit zühten willeclîchen sâ.
with courtesies willingly at-once.

ich wart vil wol enpfangen dâ.
I was very well received there.

die naht het ich dâ guot gemach.
the night had I there good ease.

sâ dô der ander tac ûf brach,
at-once when the second day up broke,

zehant ich wâpen mich began:
forthwith I arm me began:

ich wolde niht langer dâ bestân.
I would not longer there stay.

661 Gezimirt ûf daz velt fuor ich.
Crested onto the field went I.

dô heten ouch vil schône sich
then had also very beautifully themselves

gezimirt dâ niun ritter guot:
crested there nine knights good:

die wâren ritterlîch gemuot;
who were knightly spirited;

ûf den ich niun sper dâ verstach:
on whom I nine spears there used-up:

gar sunder vælen daz geschach.
wholly without missing that happened.

mîn ir dâ vervælten drî:
me of-them there missed three:

di wâren dâ von vreuden vrî.
they were there from of-joys free.

Sehs vingerlîn sach man mich geben 662
Six finger-rings saw one me give

dâ hin und al zehant mich heben
there away and all forthwith me raise

gegen Knütelvelde: ich fuor
toward Knittelfeld: I went

ze tal mit vreuden bî der Muor.
to valley with joys by the Mur.

des andern tages daz geschach,
of-the second day that happened,

daz ich dâ wol zwei sper verstach
that I there well two spears used-up

und gab zwei vingerlîn dâ hin.
and gave two finger-rings there away.

ûf hôhen lôn stuont al mîn sin.
on high reward stood all my mind.

Ze Leuben reit ich alzehant, 663
To Leoben rode I forthwith,

dâ ich wol zweinzic ritter vant:
where I well twenty knights found:

die wol gemuoten mîn dâ piten.
the well spirited-ones of-me there waited.

dô ich kom zuo in dar geriten,
when I came to them thither ridden,

ich wart von in enpfangen sâ
I was by them received at-once

dêswâr vil minneclîchen dâ.
truly very lovingly there.

gein mir ir ritterlîch antpfanc
toward me their knightly reception

dâ diente für wâr wol mînen danc.
there served for true well my thanks.

664 In mîn herberge reit ich duo:
Into my lodging rode I then:

dâ was ich biz des morgens fruo.
there was I until of-the morning early.

des morgens, dô diu sunne ûf gie,
in-the morning, when the sun up went,

in den gazzen dort unde hie
in the lanes there and here

hôrt ich holer, floyten dôn.
heard I elder-pipes, flutes' sound.

ich sach die ritter zogen schôn
I saw the knights draw beautifully

ûf daz velt gezimirt gar:
onto the field crested wholly:

ir wâpenkleit was lieht gevar
their coat-of-arms was bright colored

665 Dô ich si für mich zogen sach,
When I them before me draw saw,

mîn munt ûz hôhem muote sprach:
my mouth out-of high spirit spoke:

«die ritter zogent ritterlîch:
«the knights draw knightly:

si mügen vil wol sîn muotes rîch.»
they may very well be of-spirit rich.»

zehant ich wâpen mich began
forthwith I arm me began

in wâpenkleit wîz als ein swan:
in coat-of-arms white as a swan:

ûf daz velt was al mîn ger.
onto the field was all my desire.

man fuort mit mir dâ zehen sper.
one carried with me there ten spears.

Dô ich hin ûf daz velt bequam, 666
When I thither onto the field came,

in mîn hant ein sper ich nam.
into my hand a spear I took.

dô kom gein mir mîn her Dietmâr
then came toward me my sir Dietmar

von Styer gerüeret vaste dar.
of Steyr spurred fast thither.

diu orsse wir vaste zesamen triben.
the horses we fast together drove.

ich sage iu, wie diu sper beliben:
I tell you, how the spears remained:

ze kleinen stucken ûf daz gras
to small pieces on the grass

ietwederz dâ gevallen was.
each there fallen was.

Dô kom gein mir mîn her Sîfrit 667
Then came toward me my sir Siegfried

von Torsiul. der het frumiu lit,
of Torsiul. who had valiant limbs,

dar zuo vil manlîches hertzen rât:
there to very manly heart's provision:

sîn lîp begie nie missetât.
his person committed never misdeed.

er was vil ritterlîch gemuot:
he was very knightly spirited:

des wart sîn tyost dâ gegen mir guot.
therefore became his joust there toward me good.

von unser beider speres krach
from our both spears' crash

man sprîzel hôhe vliegen sach.
one splinters high fly saw.

668 Ich wilz iuch kurzlîch wizen lân.
I will-it you briefly know let.

driuzehen sper ûf mir vertân
thirteen spears on me spent

wurden dâ dêswâr vil wol.
were there truly very well.

sît ich di wârheit sprechen sol,
since I the truth speak shall,

drîer tjost vervælt ich dâ.
three jousts missed I there.

driuzehen vingerlîn ich sâ
thirteen finger-rings I at-once

gap den, der sper man dâ sach
gave to-those, whose spears one there saw

bresten. sâ dô daz geschach,
burst. at-once when that happened,

669 Von Liuben zogt ich dô zetal
From Leoben drew I then downward

hin, dâ diu Murtz hât ir val
thither, where the Mürz has its fall

in di Muore krefticlich.
into the Mur mightily.

daz ist ein wazzer vische rîch:
that is a water of-fish rich:

bî dem reit ich ze berge dô
by it rode I to hill then

under eine burc, diu lît vil hô.
under a castle, which lies very high.

diu ist Capfenperc genant,
it is Kapfenberg named,

in Stîrelande wol bekant.
in Styrian-land well known.

XXV · THE WENDISH WOMAN

Wülfing of Stubenberg has the host sell Ulrich everything for a single penny and jousts with him handsomely. At Kindberg Otto of Buchau, dressed as a Wendish woman, challenges Venus, and their spears pierce both shields. Ulrich strikes Otakar Träge's helmet off onto his spear, jousts with Sibot of Reichenfels, and rides on by Mürzzuschlag to Gloggnitz. From there he steals away for three days to his wife, who receives him gladly.

Dar ûffe gesezzen was ein wirt, 670
There upon settled was a host,

der was des willen unverirt,
who was of-the will unconfused,

swâ mit ein ritter immer sol
where with a knight ever shall

lop erwerben, daz kund er wol.
praise win, that could he well.

er was milte, hôchgemuot,
he was generous, high-spirited,

vor allen schanden gar behuot,
from all disgraces wholly guarded,

er was küene, wol gezogen:
he was bold, well bred:

ich hân iu von im niht gelogen.
I have you of him not lied.

Er schuof nâch êren al sîn dinc. 671
He arranged after honors all his thing.

er hiez von Stubenberc Wülfinc.
he was-called of Stubenberg Wülfing.

er was leute und guotes rîch,
he was of-people and goods rich,

er lebte dêswâr lobelîch.
he lived truly praiseworthily.

dô dem vil êre gernden man
when to-the very honor desiring man

mîn kunft aldar wart kunt getân,
my coming thither was known made,

er sprâch: «diu edel künegîn
he spoke: «the noble queen

sol mir willekomen sîn!»
shall to-me welcome be!»

672 Der hôchgemuote der hiez sâ
The high-spirited-one he bade at-once

den mînen boten künden dâ,
to-the my messengers announce there,

daz sî ir kauffen liezen sîn:
that they their buying let be:

er sprach «diu edel künegîn
he spoke «the noble queen

sol ez nemen von mir hie.»
shall it take from me here.»

dô man si dâ niht kauffen lie,
when one them there not buy let,

die boten mîn die wolden dan:
the messengers mine they would thence:

der biderbe bat si dâ bestân.
the worthy-one bade them there stay.

Er sprach: «sît iwer vrowe guot 673
He spoke: «since your lady good

ist ûf ir vart alsô gemuot,
is on her journey so spirited,

daz sî umb sus niht nemen wil,
that she for nothing not take will,

sô kouffet lützel oder vil:
so buy little or much:

daz ist durch zuht der wille mîn.
that is for courtesy the will mine.

si solde aber hie bî mir wol sîn:
she should however here by me well be:

ich gæb ez ir gern, daz sült ir
I gave it her gladly, that shall you

für wâr wol gelouben mir.»
for true well believe me.»

Mîn schaffer sprach: «des lône iu got! 674
My steward spoke: «for-it reward you God!

herre, ich sage iu âne spot,
lord, I tell you without mockery,

ir muot sô rehte hôhe stât,
her spirit so right high stands,

daz sî mir daz verboten hât
that she me that forbidden has

vil vlîzeclîchen an daz leben,
very diligently on the life,

swer ir umbe sust iht welle geben,
whoever her for nothing anything will give,

daz ich des enpfâhe niht.
that I of-it receive nothing.

mîn munt für wâr iu des giht.»
my mouth for true to-you of-it declares.»

675 Der hôchgemuot hiez an der stunt
The high-spirited-one bade at the hour

daz tuon mînem wirte kunt,
that make to-my host known,

als reht liep im wære daz leben,
as right dear to-him were the life,

daz er den kouf mir solde geben
that he the purchase me should give

sô, swaz wær drîer marke wert,
so, whatever were three marks worth,

daz er dar umbe niht engert
that he there for nothing desires

wan einen pfenninc und niht mêr.
but a penny and not more.

daz schuof der biderbe, muotes hêr.
that arranged the worthy-one, of-spirit lordly.

676 Dô mînem schaffer wart bekant
When to-my steward became known

der kouf alsô, er reit zehant
the purchase so, he rode forthwith

von danne was im harte gâch.
from thence was to-him very haste.

der biderbe sant im aber nâch
the worthy-one sent him again after

und sprach: «sag an, wâ wildu hin?»
and spoke: «tell on, where wilt-thou thither?»

«von hinnen, herre, stât mîn sin.
«from hence, lord, stands my mind.

der kouf ist hie mir alze guot.»
the purchase is here to-me all-too good.»

des smielt der biderbe, hôchgemuot
at-that smiled the worthy, high-spirited-one

Und sprach alsô: «ich sihe daz wol, 677
And spoke so: «I see that well,

durch zuht ich muoz unde sol
for courtesy I must and shall

iu hie gar iwern willen lân,
you here wholly your will leave,

oder ir enwelt niht hie bestân.
or you will not here stay.

nu schaffet, swaz ir welt alhie.»
now arrange, whatever you will here.»

dâ mit er reit, daz er enpfie
there with he rode, so-that he received

mich dêswâr vil ritterlîch.
me truly very knightly.

sîn antfanc der was zühterîch.
his reception it was courtesy-rich.

Dâ mich enpfie der muotes hêr, 678
Where me received the of-spirit lordly-one,

wol drîzic ritter oder mêr
well thirty knights or more

ûf orssen mit im gegen mir riten,
on horses with him toward me rode,

gekleidet wol nâch ritters siten.
clad well after knight's customs.

ir sult für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

ich wart ê nie enpfangen baz,
I was before never received better,

dan mich der tugentrîche enpfie.
than me the virtue-rich-one received.

sâ dô der schœne gruoz ergie,
at-once when the beautiful greeting befell,

679 In mîn herberge ich dô reit,
Into my lodging I then rode,

gar sunder wâpen wol gekleit,
wholly without arms well clad,

dâ ich di naht gemaches pflac.
where I the night of-ease took-care.

sâ dô mir kom der ander tac,
at-once when to-me came the second day,

ich wart gezimirt aber wol.
I was crested again well.

ez was vil hôhes muotes vol
it was very of-high spirit full

daz minnengernde herze mîn:
the love-desiring heart mine:

daz wart dâ vollecl̂ichen schîn.
that became there fully shown.

680 In mîner herberge ich zehant
In my lodging I forthwith

den helm ze houbet vaste bant:
the helmet to head fast bound:

ze velde reit ich ritterl̂ich.
to field rode I knightly.

dâ hielt gezimirt kosterîch
there halted crested costly

der von Stubenberc alsô,
the of Stubenberg so,

daz ich sîn was ze sehen vrô.
that I of-him was to see glad.

sîn kostl̂ichez wâpenkleit
his costly coat-of-arms

mit liehte dâ gegen der sunne streit.
with light there against the sun strove.

Der hôchgemuote, biderbe man 681
The high-spirited, worthy man

gezimirt kom mich alsus an,
crested came me thus on,

als er füer ûz dem paradîs.
as-if he came out-of the paradise.

er hete vil offte hôhen prîs
he had very often high prize

mit sîner ritterschaft bejaget.
with his chivalry won.

der hôchgemuote, unverzaget
the high-spirited, undaunted-one

di tyost mir dâ sô nâhen reit,
the joust me there so near rode,

daz der hurt sich kûme vermeit.
that the charge itself barely avoided.

Von unser beider speres ort 682
From our both spears' point

wart loch durch schilt mit tyost gebort,
was hole through shield with joust bored,

sô daz diu tyost lût erhal
so that the joust loudly resounded

und daz diu drumzûn zetal
and that the splinters downward

vielen und der schilde ein teil.
fell and of-the shields a part.

ûf beiden armen wart dâ meil.
on both arms became there stain.

diu tyost wart ritterlîch geriten
the joust was knightly ridden

und etelîch harnaschrinc versniten.
and some harness-ring cut-through.

683 Alle, die di tyost gesehen
All, who the joust seen

dâ heten, die hôrt man des jehen,
there had, them heard one of-it declare,

si wære geriten ritterlîch.
it were ridden knightly.

von Stubenberc der muotes rîch
of Stubenberg the of-spirit rich

bant dô abe den helm sîn
bound then off the helmet his

und iesch an mich ein vingerlîn.
and asked of me a finger-ring.

daz gab ich im mit willen sâ,
that gave I him with will at-once,

wan erz gedient wol hete dâ.
for he-it served well had there.

684 Dar nâch von spern wart dâ krach,
There after from spears was there crash,

der ich zwelfiu dâ verstach.
of-which I twelve there used-up.

nâch mînem willen ez dâ gie,
after my will it there went,

wan ich tyost gevælt dâ nie.
for I joust missed there never.

die hôchgemuoten dâ ûf mir
the high-spirited-ones there on me

zwelf sper verstâchen, daz dâ ir
twelve spears used-up, that there of-them

deheiner nie gevælte mîn.
none ever missed me.

dô gab ich in zwelf vingerlîn.
then gave I them twelve finger-rings.

Mit urloube reit ich dô von dan 685
With leave rode I then from thence

gein Kinnenberc. dâ saz ein man,
toward Kindberg. there sat a man,

des lîp het hôher tugende vil.
whose person had of-high virtue much.

den biderben ich iu nennen wil.
the worthy-one I you name will.

von Buochowe Otte was er genant.
of Buchau Otto was he named.

von zuht, von manheit wîte bekant
for courtesy, for manliness widely known

was der hôchgemuote degen:
was the high-spirited warrior:

sîn lîp kunde hôher tugende pflegen.
his person could of-high virtue keep.

Er was mit zühten vil gemeit. 686
He was with courtesies very joyful.

sîn bote ein mîle gegen mir reit:
his messenger a mile toward me rode:

er sprach: «vil edeliu künegîn,
he spoke: «very noble queen,

iuch heizet willekomen sîn
you bids welcome be

in ditz lant ein windisch wîp.
into this land a Wendish woman.

diu wil mit ritterscheft ir lîp
who will with chivalry her person

gein iu versuochen ûf dem plân,
toward you try on the plain,

ob ir ez welt für dienest hân.
if you it will for service have.

687 Mîn munt von wârheit iu des giht:
My mouth by truth to-you of-it declares:

in disem tal ist ritter niht
in this valley is knight none

gesezzen, die der tyoste pflegen:
settled, who the joust practice:

dâ von sô hât si sich bewegen
there from so has she herself resolved

gein iu ze komen mit den spern.
toward you to come with the spears.

ir sult si, vrowe, tyostirens wern:
you shall her, lady, of-jousting grant:

durch iwer hôhe werdicheit
for your high worthiness

sol ez ir sîn vil unverseit.»
shall it her be very unrefused.»

688 Ich smielt und hiez dem boten sagen,
I smiled and bade the messenger tell,

swâ ich noch ie bî mînen tagen
wherever I yet ever by my days

getyostirt hete wider diu wîp,
jousted had against the women,

dâ wær gar harnaschblôz mîn lîp
there were wholly harness-bare my person

gegen ir aller tyost gewesen,
toward their all joust been,

«und bin doch vor in wol genesen.
«and am yet before them well recovered.

ir tyost tuot herzenlîchen wol:
their joust does heartily well:

gein in sich niemen wâpen sol.»
toward them himself no-one arm shall.»

689

Der bote sprach: «vrowe, iwer lîp
The messenger spoke: «lady, your person

hât sich gekleidet als ein wîp,
has itself clothed as a woman,

und habt doch drunder harnasch an:
and have yet there-under harness on:

alsô bestât ir manigen man.
so engage you many-a man.

dâ von sô wil diu vrowe mîn
there from so will the lady mine

gein iu niht sunder harnasch sîn:
toward you not without harness be:

si wil mit harnasch iuch bestân
she will with harness you engage

vil ritterlîch als einen man.»
very knightly as a man.»

690

Ich sprach: «her bote, iu sî gesaget,
I spoke: «sir messenger, to-you be said,

ich bin vor allen mannen maget
I am before all men maiden

und bin den wîben bî gelegen:
and am to-the women by laid:

mit den kan ich wol freuden pflegen.
with them can I well joys keep.

ist iwer vrowe für wâr ein wîp,
(if)-is your lady for true a woman,

di sol gar harnaschblôz mîn lîp
her shall wholly harness-bare my person

vil wünneclîche alhie bestân:
very delightfully here engage:

ir hulde ich wol verdienen kan.»
her favor I well earn can.»

691 Dô sprach der bote alzehant:
Then spoke the messenger forthwith:

«iu sol mîn vrowe sô sîn bekant:
«to-you shall my lady so be known:

ez ist ein ritter vil gemeit
it is a knight very joyful

und hât sich als ein wîp gekleit.
and has himself as a woman clad.

ez ist ein minne gernder man
it is a love desiring man

und füert wîbes kleider an.
and wears woman's clothes on.

er hât durch minneclîchiu wîp
he has for lovely women

gewâget offte sînen lîp.»
ventured often his body.»

692 Ich sprach: «sît daz iwer vrowe ein man
I spoke: «since that your lady a man

ist und daz er mich bestân
is and that he me engage

wil hie durch sîne werdicheit
will here for his worthiness

und wîbes kleit hât an geleit,
and woman's clothes has on laid,

des bin ich inneclîchen vrô.
of-it am I inwardly glad.

daz saget im reht von mir alsô:
that tell him rightly from me so:

er wirt hie tyost von mir gewert,
he is here joust by me granted,

sît er ir alsô schône gert.»
since he of-it so beautifully desires.»

Dâ mit der bote dô von mir reit 693
There with the messenger then from me rode

hin, dâ er sînem herren seit,
thither, where he to-his lord told,

daz ich mit tyost in wolde bestân.
that I with joust him would engage.

dô wâpent sich der biderbe man
then armed himself the worthy man

in harnasch, daz gap liehten schîn.
in harness, that gave bright shine.

sîn helm kunde liehter niht gesîn:
his helmet could brighter not be:

dar ûf sô was ein wîte rinc
there upon so was a wide ring

gemachet. hœret fremdiu dinc!
made. hear strange things!

Für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil: 694
For true I you that tell will:

in sînem helm ôrringe vil
in his helmet earrings many

was gemachet meisterlîch:
was made masterfully:

die ôrringe wâren kosterîch
the earrings were costly

und hiengen verre hin zetal.
and hung far thither downward.

er fuort zwên zöpfe, die wâren val,
he wore two braids, which were fallow,

grôz unde volleclîchen lanc:
great and fully long:

ir lenge für den satel swanc.
their length before the saddle swung.

695 Ez hete der hôchgemuote man,
There had the high-spirited man,

seht, eine gôdehsen an.
see, a godehse on.

daz ist ein windisch wîbes kleit:
that is a Wendish woman's dress:

daz hete der biderbe an geleit.
that had the worthy-one on laid.

sîn schilt was kostelîche plâ:
his shield was costly blue:

schapel dar ûf hie unde dâ
chaplets there upon here and there

wâren wünneclîch gestreut.
were delightfully strewn.

der tyost er sich gein mir dâ vreut.
of-the joust he himself toward me there rejoiced.

696 Sîn orsse daz was verdecket wol
His horse that was covered well

mit plâbem zendâl. scapel vol
with blue taffeta. of-chaplets full

was gestreut diu decke gar.
was strewn the covering wholly.

diu schapel wâren lieht gevar
the chaplets were bright colored

von al den pluomen, die uns gît
of all the flowers, which us gives

des wunnen pernden meien zît.
the delights bearing May's time.

er fuort ein sper ze mâzen grôz,
he carried a spear in measure great,

von pluomen rûch und niender blôz.
with flowers rough and nowhere bare.

Sus kom der biderbe gegen mir her. 697
Thus came the worthy-one toward me hither.

dô het ouch ich ein grôzez sper
then had also I a great spear

in mîne hant aldâ genomen.
into my hand there taken.

man sach uns gegen einander komen
one saw us toward one-another come

ûffe zwein snellen örssen sô,
upon two swift horses so,

dâ von die drumzun flugen hô.
there from the splinters flew high.

diu tyost dâ durch die schilde brach,
the joust there through the shields broke,

daz manz ûf beiden armen sach.
so-that one-it on both arms saw.

Diu tyost dâ schôn ein ende nam. 698
The joust there beautifully an end took.

alzehant dô gegen mir quam
forthwith then toward me came

ein ritter, der was wol bekant:
a knight, who was well known:

Ottacker Træge was er genant.
Otakar Träge was he named.

der ritterlîch gemuote man
the knightly spirited man

dâ mit einem sper mich an
there with a spear me on

rant: daz was unmâzen grôz;
charged: that was immeasurably great;

des er vil kleine aldâ genôz,
of-which he very little there enjoyed,

699 Wan ich im nâch dem willen mîn
For I him after the will mine

daz sper dâ durch den helm sîn
the spear there through the helmet his

ab den venstern verre stach.
off the windows far thrust.

den helm man mich dâ füeren sach
the helmet one me there carry saw

an dem sper wol ackers breit.
on the spear well acre's breadth.

iu sî für wâr von mir geseit,
to-you be for true by me said,

daz dâ beliben ganz beidiu sper.
that there remained whole both spears.

ein ander tyost was al mîn ger.
an other joust was all my desire.

700 Dô het ouch im dâ an der stunt
Then had also him there at the hour

der helm betraufet nasen und munt,
the helmet bloodied nose and mouth,

daz er niht moht gestechen mêr.
that he not might joust more.

dô kom gein mich gerüeret her
then came toward me spurred hither

von Rîchenvels der wol bekant:
of Reichenfels the well known:

her Sîbot sô was er genant.
sir Sibot so was he named.

des tyost was dêswâr gegen mir guot:
whose joust was truly toward me good:

er was ein ritter hôch gemuot.
he was a knight high spirited.

Des biderben tyost und ouch diu mîn 701
The worthy-one's joust and also the mine

die kunde dâ schœner niht gesîn.
they could there more-beautiful not be.

dô vande ich dâ tyost niht mêr.
then found I there joust not more.

von Peuchenpach der tegen hêr
of Peuchenbach the warrior lordly

vordert an mir dô sîn golt
demanded of me then his gold

(daz het er ritterlîch geholt):
(that had he knightly fetched):

als tet her Sîbot ouch daz sîn.
as did sir Sibot also the his.

des gab ich in zwei vingerlîn.
for-it gave I them two finger-rings.

Des Trægen ungefüegez sper 702
The Träge's unwieldy spear

wart mir dâ ganz nâch mîner ger:
was to-me there whole after my desire:

daz legt man ûf den wagen mîn.
that laid one on the wagon mine.

ich gab im dâ niht vingerlîn,
I gave him there not finger-ring,

wan er gevælet het mîn dâ.
for he missed had me there.

dar nâch sach man mich zogen sâ
there after saw one me draw at-once

mit freuden an dem selben tage
with joys on the same day

in hôhem muot hin ze Murzuslage.
in high spirit thither to Mürzzuschlag.

703 Dâ het ich dô die naht gemach.
There had I then the night ease.

sâ dô der ander tac ûf brach
at-once when the second day up broke

und daz vil lieht erschein sîn blic,
and that very brightly appeared its glance,

dô zogt ich über den Semernic
then drew I over the Semmering

gegen Glokeniz alzehant,
toward Gloggnitz forthwith,

dâ ich wan sehs ritter vant
where I but six knights found

gezimirt schône tjoste gern:
crested beautifully of-joust desirous:

die sach man mich dâ snelle wern.
them saw one me there swiftly grant.

704 Si riten gewâpent dâ gein mir.
They rode armed there toward me.

ich het ouch mich gewâpent schir
I had also me armed soon

in wâpenkleit vil wunneclîch.
in coat-of-arms very delightful.

von Ringenberc der muotes rîch
of Ringenberg the of-spirit rich

ein sper dâ wider mich wol verstach.
a spear there against me well used-up.

al zehant dô daz geschach,
all forthwith when that happened,

dô stach ich einen ritter nider:
then thrust I a knight down:

der schamte sich des offte sider.
who was-ashamed himself of-it often since.

Von Torsewel Uolrîch er hiez. 705
Of Torsewel Ulrich he was-called.

der wol gemuot des niht enliez,
the well spirited-one of-it not omitted,

ich würde von im dâ an gerant.
I were by him there on charged.

dô stach ouch in mîn zeswe hant
then thrust also him my right hand

hinder daz örss ûf daz gras.
behind the horse onto the grass.

sîn sper ouch dâ verstochen was
his spear also there used-up was

von im dêswâr vil ritterlîch.
by him truly very knightly.

dâ mit gelac er jæmerlîch.
there with lay he woefully.

Dar nâch verstach ich dâ vier sper. 706
There after used-up I there four spears.

dô was der ritter dâ niht mêr
then was of-the knights there not more

gewâpent ûf daz velt bekomen.
armed onto the field come.

mîn helm dâ wart von mir genomen.
my helmet there was by me taken.

ich gab dâ hin sehs vingerlîn:
I gave there away six finger-rings:

dâ mit ich in die herberge mîn
there with I into the lodging mine

fuor, die ich vil schœne vant.
went, which I very beautiful found.

mîn lîp entwâpent sich zehant.
my person unarmed itself forthwith.

707 Dô ich aldâ entwâpent wart,
When I there unarmed was,

diu herberge mîn wart wol verspart.
the lodging mine was well locked.

zuo mir nam ich wan einen kneht,
to me took I but one servant,

der zuo dirre vart was reht.
who to this journey was right.

von danne stal ich mich zehant
from thence stole I me forthwith

und reit mit freuden, dâ ich vant
and rode with joys, where I found

die herzenlieben konen mîn:
the heart-dear wife mine:

diu kunde mir lieber niht gesîn.
she could to-me dearer not be.

708 Diu guot enpfie mich alsô wol,
The good-one received me so well,

alsô von reht ein vrowe sol
as by right a lady shall

enphâhen ir vil lieben man.
receive her very dear man.

ich het ir liebe dran getân,
I had her love thereon done,

daz ich zuo ir was dar bekomen:
that I to her was thither come:

mîn kunft ir trûren het benomen.
my coming her sadness had taken.

si sach mich gern: als tet ich sie.
she saw me gladly: as did I her.

mit küssen mich diu guot enpfie.
with kisses me the good-one received.

Diu reine mich vil gerne sach. 709
The pure-one me very gladly saw.

mit freuden het ich dâ gemach
with joys had I there ease

und wunne unz an den dritten tac.
and delight until to the third day.

diu guote mîn güetlîchen pflac.
the good-one of-me kindly took-care.

sâ dô der dritte tac bequam,
at-once when the third day came,

eine messe ich dô vernam:
a mass I then heard:

ich bat got mîner êren pflegen.
I bade God of-my honors take-care.

mir wart dâ güetlîch friundes segen.
to-me was there kindly friend's blessing.

XXVI · THE ROSES IN THE BATH

At Neunkirchen Ortolf of Graz wounds Ulrich in the breast, and he hides the wound and walks to church to show he is unhurt. He jousts with Berthold at the Kehrbach and bathes secretly outside the Neustadt. A strange squire covers the bath with roses and leaves women's clothes, jewels, and a letter. Ulrich angrily refuses them, but his chamberlain keeps them, and the unknown lady's letter is read.

Alzehant ich urloup nam 710
Forthwith I leave took

minneclîch, als mir daz zam.
lovingly, as me that befitted.

in hôhem muot reit ich zehant
in high spirit rode I forthwith

hin, dâ ich mîn gesinde vant.
thither, where I my household found.

dô ich ze Glokentz kom geriten,
when I to Gloggnitz came ridden,

die mînen mîn dâ schône piten.
the mine of-me there beautifully waited.

die wâren ûf die vart bereit:
they were for the journey ready:

alzehant ich danne reit.
forthwith I thence rode.

711 Hin ze Niwenkirchen ich
Thither to Neunkirchen I

vil schône fuor. dô enpfie man mich
very beautifully went. then received one me

mit willen dêswâr ritterlîch.
with will truly knightly.

si wâren hôher zühte rîch,
they were of-high courtesy rich,

die mîn durch tyostiren biten.
who of-me for jousting waited.

dô ich kom zuo in dar geriten,
when I came to them thither ridden,

si wurden alle schier bereit,
they were all soon ready,

gezimirt in ir wâpenkleit.
crested in their coats-of-arms.

712 Ir wâren neune, für wâr niht mêr,
Of-them were nine, for true not more,

die mîn dâ biten mit tyoste ger.
who of-me there waited with joust's desire.

dô ich si dô bereite vant,
when I them then ready found,

dô wâpent ouch ich mich zehant.
then armed also I me forthwith.

der dâ des êrsten kom gein mir,
he-who there of-the first came toward me,

der het gein vrowen minne gir.
he had toward ladies love's desire.

der biderbe Ortolf was genant
the worthy Ortolf was named

von Grætz, ein ritter wol bekant.
of Graz, a knight well known.

Er het gezimirt schône sich, 713
He had crested beautifully himself,

der biderbe man der wundet mich
the worthy man he wounded me

durch schilt, durch al daz harnasch mîn
through shield, through all the harness mine

mit der schœnen tyoste sîn
with the beautiful joust his

in die brust. dô daz geschach,
into the breast. when that happened,

und ich die wunden pluoten sach,
and I the wound bleed saw,

dô dacte ich mit dem röckelîn
then covered I with the little-skirt

daz pluot und ouch die wunden mîn.
the blood and also the wound mine.

714 Von Puten her Offe und her Heinrîch,
Of Pitten sir Otto and sir Heinrich,

die brüeder bêde ritterlîch
the brothers both knightly

ir sper verstâchen wider mich.
their spears used-up against me.

ir beider niht vermiste ouch ich:
of-them both not missed also I:

ich verstach ûf in zwei sper.
I used-up on them two spears.

dô kômen gein mir sehs ritter her,
then came toward me six knights hither,

der aller tyost geriet alsô,
of-whom all joust succeeded so,

daz dâ ir drumzun flugen hô.
that there their splinters flew high.

715 Dô ich niun sper aldâ verstach,
When I nine spears there used-up,

ze herberge fuor ich durch gemach:
to lodging went I for ease:

des was mir zuo der wunden nôt.
of-that was to-me for the wound need.

niun vingerlîn von golde rôt
nine finger-rings of gold red

sant ich in mit willen sâ,
sent I them with will at-once,

wan sîs verdienet wol heten dâ.
for they-them deserved well had there.

die wunden mîn mir dô verbant
the wound mine to-me then bound

mit kunst eines guoten meisters hant.
with skill a good master's hand.

Daz mære wart dô wîten kunt, 716
The tidings became then widely known,

ez wære diu küneginne worden wunt
it were the queen become wounded

mit einer tyost sô rehte sêr,
with a joust so right sorely,

daz sî niht möhte stechen mêr.
that she not might joust more.

daz was den biderben allen leit.
that was to-the worthy-ones all sorrowful.

dô mir daz mære wart geseit,
when to-me the tidings was told,

ich sprach: «ich wil ze kirchen gên
I spoke: «I will to church go

morgen, sô lange hie bestên.
tomorrow, so long here stay.

Ich sol die leute hie lâzen sehen, 717
I shall the people here let see,

an mir die wârheit rehte spehen,
on me the truth rightly espy,

daz mîn lîp ist vil wol gesunt.
that my person is very well healthy.

waz danne, bin ich ein lützel wunt?
what then, am I a little wounded?

daz sol ich vor den leuten heln,
that shall I from the people hide,

mit fuoge sô ritterlîchen steln,
with propriety so knightly steal,

daz sîn hie niemen wirt gewar
that of-it here no-one becomes aware

an mir als grôz als umbe ein hâr.
on me as great as by a hair.

718 Gemach het ich aldâ die naht,
Ease had I there the night,

sâ dô der ander tac mit maht
at-once when the second day with might

und ouch diu sunne lieht erschein,
and also the sun brightly appeared,

dô was ich warden des enein,
then was I become of-it agreed,

daz ich sô kleite mînen lîp
that I so clothed my person

vil wunneclîchen als ein wîp.
very delightfully as a woman.

mîn wîbes kleit was lieht gevar.
my woman's clothes was brightly colored.

ich gie ze kirchen offenbâr.
I went to church openly.

719 Swer mich sô hôchgemuoten sach
Whoever me so high-spirited saw

ze kirchen gên, zehant er sprach:
to church go, forthwith he spoke:

«dêswâr diu küneginne ist gesunt.
«truly the queen is healthy.

si ist freudenrîch und niender wunt:
she is joy-rich and nowhere wounded:

ir stât vil hôch noch ir gedanc.»
her stands very high still her thought.»

ez wart umbe mich sô grôz gedranc,
there was around me so great throng,

daz sî die kirchtür drungen nider,
that they the church-door pressed down,

dô ich gie ûz der kirchen wider.
when I went out-of the church back.

Ez het für wâr mîn minne ger 720
There had for true my love's desire

vil gerne dâ gestochen mêr,
very gladly there jousted more,

wan daz ichs niht mêr dâ vant.
except that I-it not more there found.

dô zogt ich schône sâ zehant
then drew I beautifully at-once forthwith

mit freuden hin ze der Niwenstat.
with joys thither to the Neustadt.

mîn gesinde ich schône bat
my household I beautifully bade

rîten und sîn hôchgemuot.
ride and be high-spirited.

ich sprach: «zuht ist bî freuden guot.»
I spoke: «courtesy is by joys good.»

Sus reit ich unz an den Kerebach, 721
Thus rode I until to the Kehrbach,

dâ ich gein mir her füeren sach
where I toward me hither carry saw

ein banir, und wol zehen sper
a banner, and well ten spears

fuort man die strâze gegen mir her.
carried one the street toward me hither.

diu banir diu was silberwîz;
the banner it was silver-white;

dar in ein ember wol mit flîz
there in a bucket well with diligence

was gesniten, der was plâ.
was cut, which was blue.

dar nâch sô reit ein ritter sâ,
there after so rode a knight at-once,

722 Der was genant mîn her Bertholt.
He was named my sir Berthold.

dem wâren die biderben alle holt
to-him were the worthy-ones all devoted

durch sîn vil hôhe werdicheit.
for his very high worthiness.

gezimirt schône er gegen mir reit
crested beautifully he toward me rode

und gruozte mich vil ritterlîch.
and greeted me very knightly.

der biderbe man was tugende rîch
the worthy man was of-virtue rich

und gar an êren unverzagt:
and wholly in honors undaunted:

er hete vil offte brîs bejaget.
he had very often prize won.

723 Des selben er sich dâ versach.
Of-the same he himself there expected.

dô ich den man gezimirt sach,
when I the man crested saw,

dô wâpent ouch ich mich zehant:
then armed also I me forthwith:

den helm ich ze houbet bant
the helmet I to head bound

und nam in mîne hant ein sper.
and took into my hand a spear.

dô kom ouch er gerüeret her
then came also he spurred hither

als ein minne gernder man,
as a love desiring man,

der vrowen lôn verdienen kan.
who ladies' reward earn can.

Der buneiz wart schœn unde lanc. 724
The charge became beautiful and long.

daz fiwer ûz beiden helmen spranc,
the fire out-of both helmets sprang,

alsô daz man ez verre sach.
so that one it far saw.

diu tyost dâ beidiu sper zebrach.
the joust there both spears broke.

er stach mir mit der tyoste sîn
he thrust me with the joust his

den helm dâ an daz kinne mîn,
the helmet there onto the chin mine,

daz mir daz kinne wart bluotes naz.
that to-me the chin became of-blood wet.

ez wart nie tyost geriten baz.
it was never joust ridden better.

Dô bant ich baz den helm mîn. 725
Then bound I better the helmet mine.

des was im nôt: die riemen sîn
of-it was to-it need: the straps its

wâren drûz gebrosten gar.
were there-out burst wholly.

dô kom gein mir der schanden bar
then came toward me the of-disgraces bare-one

von Horschendorf mîn her Wülfinc
of Horschendorf my sir Wülfing

vil ritterlîchen ûf den rinc;
very knightly onto the ring;

ûf dem ich driu sper dâ verstach.
on whom I three spears there used-up.

der tyost man in dâ vælen sach.
the joust one him there miss saw.

726 Dar nâch sâ fünf ritter guot
There after at-once five knights good

mich bestuonden durch hôhen muot,
me engaged for high spirit,

der aller tyost dâ wol geriet.
of-whom all joust there well succeeded.

dâ mit ich abe dem velde schiet
there with I off the field parted

und gab dâ hin sehs vingerlîn.
and gave there away six finger-rings.

her Wülfinc het gevælet mîn:
sir Wülfing had missed me:

des wart mîn golt im dâ verseit:
therefore was my gold to-him there refused:

daz was dem hôchgemuoten leit.
that was to-the high-spirited-one sorrowful.

727 Dâ mit sô zogt ich in die stat.
There with so drew I into the town.

mînen kameræ r ich bat,
my chamberlain I bade,

daz er mir hiez ein wazzerbat
that he me bade a water-bath

bereiten ûzerhalp der stat,
prepare outside the town,

sô daz sîn niemen würde gewar.
so that of-it no-one became aware.

vil gar verholne kom ich dar.
very wholly secretly came I thither.

mîn lîp dâ in daz bat gesaz,
my person there into the bath sat,

dâ von ich müede vil vergaz.
there from I weariness much forgot.

Mîn lîp mit freuden batte sich. 728
My person with joys bathed itself.

die bader, die dâ badeten mich,
the bathers, who there bathed me,

der einer mich erkande niht.
of-them one me recognized not.

dar nâch ein wunderlîch geschiht
there after a wondrous happening

in dem bade mir geschach.
in the bath to-me happened.

mit vreuden liep, leit, ungemach
with joys love, sorrow, discomfort

wart mir dâ von wîbe kunt:
was to-me there by woman known:

dâ von sô wart mîn hertze wunt.
there from so became my heart wounded.

Sus saz ich in dem bade alhie. 729
Thus sat I in the bath here.

mîn kamerære dô von mir gie
my chamberlain then from me went

in die herberge mîn zehant:
into the lodging mine forthwith:

er wolt mir bringen mîn gewant.
he would me bring my garment.

ir sult für wâr gelauben daz:
you shall for true believe that:

gar mînes gesindes ich eine saz.
wholly of-my household I alone sat.

dâ von wil ich gelauben wol,
there from will I believe well,

sich füeget schiere, swaz wesen sol.
itself arranges soon, whatever be shall.

730 Ich hab ouch dar an zwîvel niht:
I have also there on doubt not:

swaz sô geschehen sol, daz geschiht.
whatever so happen shall, that happens.

des wart mir dâ ein teil bekant;
of-that became to-me there a part known;

ich sage iu, wâ mit ichz ervant:
I tell you, where with I-it found:

dô ich saz aleine hie,
when I sat alone here,

ein fremder kneht dô zuo mir gie,
a strange servant then to me went,

vil wol gekleit, höfsch unde kluoc.
very well clad, courtly and clever.

ich sage iu, waz der knappe truoc:
I tell you, what the squire carried:

731 Einen tepich, der was guot.
A carpet, which was good.

den nam der kluoge, hôchgemuot,
that took the clever, high-spirited-one,

für daz bat er in dâ leit:
before the bath he it there laid:

dar ûf sô legt er vrowen kleit,
there upon so laid he lady's clothes,

ein rîsen und ein röckelîn
a veil and a little-skirt

(die kunden bezer niht gesîn),
(they could better not be),

ein gürtel (der was kosterîch),
a girdle (which was costly),

dar zuo ein heftel wunneclîch,
there to a brooch delightful,

Ein tschapel und ein vingerlîn. 732
A chaplet and a finger-ring.

des vingerls stein was ein rubîn,
the finger-ring's stone was a ruby,

rôt als ein vrowen süezer munt,
red as a lady's sweet mouth,

der manlîch hertze machet wunt.
which manly heart makes wounded.

dar zuo er einen brief dar leit.
there to he a letter thither laid.

der brief mit süezen worten seit,
the letter with sweet words told,

wer mir diu kleinôt het gesant:
who me the jewels had sent:

daz tet er teuticlîch bekant.
that made it plainly known.

Dô ich daz kleinôt dô gesach, 733
When I the jewel then saw,

mîn munt ûz grôzem zorne sprach:
my mouth out-of great anger spoke:

«sagt an, wem habt ir ditz her brâht?
«tell on, to-whom have you this hither brought?

jâ ist mir des vil ungedâht,
yes is to-me of-it very unthought,

daz ichs iht nem als umb ein hâr.
that I-it anything take as by a hair.

daz sült glauben ir für wâr.
that shall believe you for true.

nu tragt ez ûz: daz ist iu guot.
now carry it out: that is to-you good.

ich bin gein iu niht wol gemuot.»
I am toward you not well spirited.»

734 Der knape sweic und gie zehant,
The squire was-silent and went forthwith,

dâ er zwên ander knehte vant:
where he two other servants found:

die truogen nâch im rôsen dar,
who carried after him roses thither,

gepletert vrisch und wol gevar.
plucked fresh and well colored.

der streut er dar ûf mich sô vil,
of-them strewed he there upon me so many,

für wâr ich iu daz sagen wil,
for true I you that tell will,

daz mich noch daz bat niemen sach;
that me nor the bath anyone saw;

dar zuo der knappe nie wort gesprach.
there to the squire never word spoke.

735 Swaz ich gezürnt, swaz ich gebat,
Whatever I raged, whatever I bade,

er streut die rôsen umb daz bat
he strewed the roses around the bath

sô vil, daz al diu dille gar
so many, that all the floor wholly

wart wünneclîch nâch rôsen var.
became delightfully after roses colored.

dar nâch er mir mit zühten neic:
there after he me with courtesies bowed:

swaz ich gesprach, vil stille er sweic.
whatever I spoke, very still he was-silent.

er was für wâr mir unbekant:
he was for true to-me unknown:

von mir sô gienc er alzehant.
from me so went he forthwith.

In grôzem zorne er mich lie. 736
In great anger he me left.

mîn kamerære dô zuo mir gie
my chamberlain then to me went

und brâht mir al mîn badgewant.
and brought me all my bath-garment.

dô er ditz kleinôt bî mir vant,
when he this jewel by me found,

er sprach: «vil edeliu künegîn,
he spoke: «very noble queen,

wie nu? waz sol ditze sîn?
how now? what shall this be?

ir sît bestreut mit rôsen gar:
you are strewn with roses wholly:

ez ist hinne allez rôsen var.»
it is in-here all rose colored.»

Ich sprach: «dâ hâstu missetân, 737
I spoke: «there hast-thou misdone,

daz dû mich eine hâst verlân.
that thou me alone hast left.

daz muoz ich wol von schulden clagen.
that must I well by rights lament.

ditz hât ein knappe gar her getragen,
this has a squire wholly hither carried,

rôsen, kleinôt und gewant:
roses, jewel and garment:

der ist mir leider unbekant.
he is to-me alas unknown.

des muoz ich von der wârheit jehen,
of-it must I from the truth declare,

daz ich in niemêr hân gesehen.
that I him never-more have seen.

738 Dâ von muoz ich zornic sîn.
There from must I angry be.

er hât ez âne den willen mîn
he has it without the will mine

allez zuo mir her geleit.
all to me hither laid.

daz ist mir inneclîchen leit:
that is to-me inwardly sorrowful:

solhe unfuoge ich nie bekant.
such impropriety I never knew.

nu reiche mir mîn badgewant:
now hand me my bath-garment:

ich wil alsô ungebat ûz gân
I will so unbathed out go

und ditz allez lâzen hie bestân.»
and this all let here remain.»

739 Dô sprach der kamerære mîn:
Then spoke the chamberlain mine:

«nein, vrowe guot, des sol niht sîn.
«no, lady good, that shall not be.

ez wære vil sêre missetân,
it were very sorely misdone,

wolt ir ditz kleinôt hie verlân.
would you this jewel here leave.

die bader nement ez zehant:
the bathers take it forthwith:

dâ bî sô wurde si bekant,
there by so would-become she known,

diu iuz durch liebe gesant her hât.
who you-it for love sent hither has.

dâ von wære ez ein missetât.
there from were it a misdeed.

Si ist lîht sô gefriunt ein wîp, 740
She is perhaps so befriended a woman,

daz ez iu gên möht an den lîp,
that it you go might on the life,

daz ir sîn müestet schaden hân,
that you of-it must harm have,

ob ir ez wolt hie verlân.
if you it would here leave.

dâ von lâtz behalten mich:
there from let-it keep me:

bî mînen triuwen daz rât ich.
by my faithfulness that counsel I.

und wizet daz, ez ist iu guot,
and know that, it is to-you good,

ob ir hie mit wîslîch tuot.
if you here with wisely do.

Dâ mit ir sî und iuch bewart, 741
There with you her and you keep,

biz daz ir endelîch ervart,
until that you truly learn,

wie sî vil guote sî genant,
how she very good-one be named,

di ez iu ze liebe hât her gesant.
who it you for love has hither sent.

sô sendet ez hin wider ir:
so send it thither back her:

ob ir welt, des volget mir.
if you will, of-it follow me.

si ist iu holt, daz seht ir wol:
she is to-you devoted, that see you well:

dâ von man sî behüeten sol.»
there from one her guard shall.»

742 «Ich wil ez dich behalten lân
«I will it thee keep let

durch anders niht wan ûf den wân,
for else nothing but on the hope,

sô mir diu vrowe wirt bekant,
when to-me the lady becomes known,

diu mirz verholn hât her gesant,
who me-it secretly has hither sent,

daz ichz sô sende hin wider ir.
that I-it so send thither back her.

daz soltu wol gelouben mir,
that shalt-thou well believe me,

ich nimes von ir fürnamens niht:
I take-it from her truly not:

dâ würde mîn stæte von enwiht.
there would-become my steadfastness from nothing.

743 Ich hân gehœret her al mîn leben,
I have heard hitherto all my life,

daz iemen dem andern müge geben
that anyone to-the other may give

iht guotes under sînen danc.
anything good against his will.

ez wæren mîne sinne kranc,
it were my senses weak,

næm ich von anders iemen iht
took I from else anyone anything

wan von ir, der mîn herze giht
but from her, whom my heart declares

ze vrowen und der ich wil leben:
as lady and to-whom I will live:

der dien ich immer umb ir geben.»
her serve I ever for her gift.»

Mîn lîp sâ ûz dem bade trat 744
My person at-once out-of the bath stepped

und fuor verholn sâ in die stat
and went secretly at-once into the town

in mîne herberge durch gemach.
into my lodging for ease.

des tages ich nie ûz gesach:
of-the day I never out looked:

man sach mich lachen doch niht vil;
one saw me laugh yet not much;

wan zornic muot niht lachen wil.
for angry spirit not laugh will.

daz wart vil vollecl îchen schîn
that became very fully shown

des tages an al den freuden mîn.
of-the day in all the joys mine.

Man sach mich lützel wunne heben. 745
One saw me little delight raise.

mir was leit, daz man mir gegeben
to-me was sorrowful, that one me given

het klênôt âne den willen mîn:
had jewel without the will mine:

dâ von sach man mich trûric sîn.
there from saw one me sad be.

ich trahte hin, ich trahte her,
I pondered thither, I pondered hither,

ich gedâht alsô: «jâ herre, wer
I thought so: «yes lord, who

mac mir ditz kleinôt hân gesant?
may me this jewel have sent?

diu ist mir leider unbekant.»
she is to-me alas unknown.»

746 Ich gedâht: «ich sol den brief wol mir
I thought: «I shall the letter well to-me

hie heizzen lesen. waz ob ir
here bid read. what if her

nam geschriben dar an stât?»
name written there on stands?»

den brief ich mir dô lesen bat.
the letter I me then read bade.

der was geschriben meisterlîch,
it was written masterfully,

er gruozte mich vil minneclîch.
it greeted me very lovingly.

sîn gruoz der huob mich vil unhô.
its greeting it lifted me very little.

nu hœrt den brief! der sprach alsô:
now hear the letter! it spoke so:

e Kunde ich mit worten süezen
Could I with words sweet

iuch, vrowe, wol gegrüezen,
you, lady, well greet,

daz tæt ich ûf die triwe mîn.
that did I on the faithfulness mine.

Vênus, vil edeliu künegîn,
Venus, very noble queen,

ich wil durch iwer werdicheit
I will for your worthiness

iu immer dienstes sîn bereit.
to-you ever of-service be ready.

daz hât verdienet wol iwer lîp,
that has deserved well your person,

daz iuch süln elliu werden wîp
that you shall all worthy women

grüezen und ouch êren,
greet and also honor,

iwer êre mêren.
your honor increase.

ir habt den muot an êre gewant.
you have the spirit on honor turned.

ich hân iu mîn kleinôt gesant
I have you my jewel sent

durch unser beider êre
for our both honor

und bitte iuch, vrowe hêre,
and bid you, lady noble,

daz ir ez nemt von mir für guot
that you it take from me for good

durch iwern tugentrîchen muot.
for your virtue-rich spirit.

ich hânz iu wan durch êre gesant
I have-it you but for honor sent

und wil iu wesen unbekant
and will to-you be unknown

durch niht wan durch mîn werdicheit:
for nothing but for my worthiness:

daz lât iu, vrowe, niht wesen leit.
that let to-you, lady, not be sorrowful.

sô diu sælde mir geschiht,
when the bliss to-me happens,

daz iuch mîn ouge schierest siht,
that you my eye soonest sees,

sô tuon ich iu selbe daz bekant,
so make I you self that known,

war umb ich iu hân gesant
where for I you have sent

mîn kleinôt, liebiu vrowe mîn.
my jewel, dear lady mine.

dar nâch müezet ir bevolhen sîn
there after may you commended be

dem, der al der werlde pfliget
to-him, who all the world takes-care

und dem tîfel an gesiget
and the devil on conquered

hât gewalticlîche:
has mightily:

der nem iuch in sîn rîche
he take you into his kingdom

und gebe iu hie êren vil.
and give you here honors many.

mit triwen ich des wünschen wil
with faithfulness I of-it wish will

mit hertzen und mit munde.
with heart and with mouth.

von getriwes hertzen grunde
from faithful heart's ground

wünsch ich, daz ir wol gevart
wish I, that you well fare

ûf iwerr êre bernden vart!
on your honor bearing journey!
